

ED267593

Title VI, HEA
G00-83-2151
(1984)

YEMENI ARABIC

I

HAMDI A. QAFISHEH

DEPARTMENT OF ORIENTAL STUDIES
UNIVERSITY OF ARIZONA
Tucson, Arizona

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION
NATIONAL INSTITUTE OF EDUCATION
EDUCATIONAL RESOURCES INFORMATION
CENTER (ERIC)

This document has been reproduced as
received from the person or organization
originating it.

Minor changes have been made to improve
reproduction quality

• Points of view or opinions stated in this docu-
ment do not necessarily represent official NIE
position or policy.

FLO15486

The research reported herein was performed pursuant to a contract with the United States Department of Education, under the provisions of Educational Amendments of 1980, P.L. 96-374, Title VI.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to express my thanks and appreciation to all those who helped in the preparation of this book. First, to the administrators of the U.S. Department of Education, Title ~~VI~~ Postsecondary Education Branch, for the grant that made the present study possible. To Professor Ernest N. McCarus, Department of Near Eastern Studies, the University of Michigan goes my deepest appreciation for having carefully made a number of corrections and invaluable suggestions. Thanks are also due to Ms. Bonnie Glover, UCLA, for her interest and comments on stress in Sanaani Arabic; to my research assistants, Mr. Lee Samore and Mr. Mutahhar Abdulkadir of this University, for their assistance and patience throughout; to my language informants, Mutahhar Abdulkadir, Abdulkadir Bin Abdalla, Zaid Anan, and Eddi Ismail Al-Akwa' of Sanaa; to Mr. Samore for his assistance in preparing the table of contents, index of grammatical terms, and help in other ways too many to mention; to Ms. Barbara Cook for an efficient production of the final copy of the manuscript; to Dr. Abdul-Aziz Al-Magalih, Rector of Sanaa University and Director of the Yemeni Center for Research and Studies, and Dr. Mahmoud Daoud, Director of the Language Center of Sanaa University, for their assistance in facilitating my work in Yemen. Last, but not least, my hearty thanks go to the administrators of the University of Arizona, Dr. Myles Brand, Dean of the Social and Behavioral Sciences Faculty, and Dr. Robert M. Gimello, Head of the Department of Oriental Studies, for their unfailing support and interest.

Tucson, Arizona

H.A.Q.

T A B L E O F C O N T E N T S

<p>UNIT 1</p> <p>I. TEXT : I and You</p> <p>II. TRANSLATION</p> <p>III. VOCABULARY</p> <p>IV. PRONUNCIATION</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. Short and Long Vowels</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2. Stress</p> <p>V. GRAMMAR</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. Suffixed Pronouns</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2. Equational Sentences</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">3. The Conjunction <u>wa</u></p> <p>VI. DRILLS</p> <p>UNIT 2</p> <p>I. TEXT : Who are You?</p> <p>II. TRANSLATION</p> <p>III. VOCABULARY</p> <p>IV. PRONUNCIATION</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. Short and Long Vowels</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><u>r</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;"><u>k</u> vs. <u>x</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2. Stress</p> <p>V. GRAMMAR</p> <p>VI. DRILLS</p> <p>UNIT 3</p> <p>I. TEXT : Good Evening</p> <p>II. TRANSLATION</p> <p>III. VOCABULARY</p> <p>IV. PRONUNCIATION</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. Doubled Consonants</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">Velarized <u>L</u></p>	<p>V. GRAMMAR</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. Suffixed Pronouns</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2. Gender in Nouns and Pronouns</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">3. Gender in Adjectives</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">4. The Article Prefix '<u>al-</u></p> <p>VI. DRILLS</p> <p>VII. CONVERSATIONS</p> <p>UNIT 4</p> <p>I. TEXT : My Brother and My Sister</p> <p>II. TRANSLATION</p> <p>III. VOCABULARY</p> <p>IV. PRONUNCIATION</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. <u>ḍ</u> vs. <u>ḡ</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2. <u>G</u></p> <p>V. GRAMMAR</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. Equational Sentences</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2. Noun Constructs</p> <p>VI. DRILLS</p> <p>VII. CONVERSATIONS</p> <p>UNIT 5</p> <p>I. TEXT : This (m.) and this (f.).</p> <p>II. TRANSLATION</p> <p>III. VOCABULARY</p> <p>IV. PRONUNCIATION</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. <u>t</u> vs. <u>ṭ</u></p> <p>V. GRAMMAR</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">1. The Vocative Particle <u>ya</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">2. Demonstratives</p> <p>VI. DRILLS</p> <p>XII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION</p>
--	---

UNIT 6

- I. TEXT : Tom and His Wife
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. PRONUNCIATION
 - 1. s vs. S
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Proper Names
 - 2. Nisba Adjectives
 - 3. Suffixed Pronouns
- VI. DRILLS
- VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 8

- I. TEXT : An Appointment
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. PRONUNCIATION
 - 1. h and 9
- VI. GRAMMAR
 - 1. 9ind- as a Verb
 - 2. Telling Time
 - 3. ma9 'with'
 - 4. Note
- VII. DRILLS
- VIII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 9

- I. TEXT : The Director Is Busy
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. PRONUNCIATION
 - 1. H

V. GRAMMAR

- 1. Imperatives
- 2. Telling Time

VI. DRILLS

VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 10

- i. TEXT : The Weather
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. PRONUNCIATION

- 1. h and H
- x and H

VI. GRAMMAR

- 1. Proper Names
- 2. The Negative Particle maaf
- 3. The Intensifier kaθiir
- 4. Topical Sentences

VII. DRILLS

VIII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 11 REVIEW

UNIT 12

- I. TEXT : Do You Speak Arabic?
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 13

- I. TEXT : Taxi (i)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
 - 2. The Double Imperfect Construction
 - 3. The Dual
 - 4. Cardinal Numerals
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 14

- I. TEXT : Taxi (ii)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
 - 2. Ordinal Numerals
 - 3. Special Constructions
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 15

- I. TEXT : Muhammad Is Ill
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Imperatives
 - 2. Telling Time
 - 3. Cardinal Numerals

VI. DRILLS

VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 16

- I. TEXT : At the Marketplace (i)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Cardinal Numerals
 - 2. Collective Nouns
 - 3. The Negative Particle ma
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 17

- I. TEXT : At the Marketplace (ii)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Collective Nouns
 - 2. Color Adjectives
 - 3. The Future Tense
 - 4. The Verb -gdar-
 - 5. Imperatives
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 18

- I. TEXT : Haj Ahmad
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
2. Plurals of Nouns
3. Noun-Adjective Concord
4. Object Pronouns
5. Demonstratives
6. maHHad 'no one, nobody'

VI. DRILLS

VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 19

- I. TEXT : At the Gas Station
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 20

- I. TEXT : At the Garage
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
 2. Verbs--Perfect Tense
 3. The Particle Hagg
 4. Negative Commands
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 21 REVIEW

UNIT 22

- I. TEXT : At the Airport (i)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 1. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
 2. laazim 9ala-
 3. θaani 'another, other'
 4. kull 'each, every'
 5. Elative Adjectives
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 23

- I. TEXT : At the Airport (ii)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 1. Elative Adjectives
 2. The Conjunction Hiin
 3. Verbs--Imperfect Tense
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 24

- I. TEXT: My House
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 1. fii as a Verb
 2. Telling Ages

- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

- UNIT 25
- I. TEXT : A House for Rent
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Verbs--Imperatives
 - 2. The Triple Imperfect Construction
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

- UNIT 26
- I. TEXT : At the Restaurant
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

- UNIT 27
- I. TEXT : On the Telephone (i)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. The Negative Particle Gayr
 - 2. 'ab and 'ax
 - 3. f-ayy Hiin?
 - 4. tagriib
- VI. DRILLS

- VII. CONVERSATIONS
- UNIT 28
- I. TEXT : On the Telephone (ii)
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Imperatives
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

- UNIT 29
- I. TEXT
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
 - 2. Notes
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

- UNIT 30
- I. TEXT: At Bilgis Airport
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
 - 2. kaan fii
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

- UNIT 31 REVIEW

UNIT 32

- I. TEXT : Welcome Back
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
 - 2. Perfect Tense with Suffixed Pronouns
 - 3. The Verb 'i9jab
 - 4. Notes
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 33

- I. TEXT : SaliH is Ill
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. maa l-
 - 2. SaHH
 - 3. 'inna
 - 4. Perfect Tense
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 34

- I. TEXT : Where is the American Embassy?
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
 - 2. Imperatives

3. Note

- V. DRILLS
- VI. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 35

- I. TEXT : Where is the Post Office?
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
 - 2. ya9ni
 - 3. SaHi iH
 - 4. 9ind-
- VI. DRILLS

UNIT 36

- I. TEXT : The Ramadhan Feast
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
 - 2. The Negative Particle ma
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

UNIT 37

- I. TEXT : Feasts and Holidays
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
 - 2. Adjective Agreement with Dual Nouns

- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 38

- I. TEXT : At the Post Office
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 39

- I. TEXT : At the Laundry
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY

- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Perfect Tense

- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

UNIT 40

- I. TEXT : Proverbs and Sayings
- II. TRANSLATION
- III. VOCABULARY
- IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY
- V. GRAMMAR
 - 1. Conditionals
 - 2. Perfect Tense
 - 3. Relative Clauses
- VI. DRILLS
- VII. CONVERSATIONS

GLOSSARY : YEMENI ARABIC - ENGLISH
 ENGLISH - YEMENI ARABIC

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

I N T R O D U C T I O N

1. The Arabic Language

In the Arab world, colloquial dialects vary not only from country to country and town to town, but even from village to village. Strictly speaking, we cannot speak of the colloquial dialect of a particular country or town or village, because speakers of a particular dialect differ among themselves, mainly due to their educational and cultural backgrounds. In addition to these colloquial dialects, there is a superposed standard language commonly referred to as Classical Arabic, the revered language of the Quran, pre-Islamic poetry, and the medieval classics of Arabic literature. Modern Standard Arabic (MSA), as used nowadays, refers to the language learned by Arab students after their initial acquisition of a colloquial dialect of spoken Arabic. It is used on formal occasions -- speeches, discussions, debates, news broadcasts, and in schools and universities, being the medium of instruction. Furthermore, newspapers and textbooks all over the Arab world are written almost exclusively in MSA. Other names currently used are "Contemporary Arabic", "Modern Literary Arabic", "Modern Written Arabic", etc. The name abbreviated MSA, however, is intended to represent the literary language in both its spoken and written forms.

Differences between MSA and the colloquials are apparent in phonology and morphology, for the most part a matter of deletion of MSA inflections; e.g., case inflections, dual forms for pronouns and verbs, and feminine plural inflections of personal pronouns and verbs of MSA are not present in most of the colloquials. Syntactic features of MSA and most colloquial dialects, however, are similar.

2. The Language of the Text

The language which this book utilizes is Sanaani Arabic, the language used by unsophisticated Sanaanis for oral communication. The dialogs, narratives, conversations, and listening comprehension passages are based on

recordings of spontaneous conversations of unsophisticated Sanaanis in different situations, such as greetings, telephone conversations, comments, interviews, etc. In checking with language informants, the question, "How do you say ...?" was avoided as much as possible for the sake of authenticity. (See continued)

3 Relevant Works

Much has been written on the history and politics of the Yemen Arab Republic; only a few linguistic studies have been published, but almost nothing of the scope of YAI has been published or attempted. Emerson's and Muhammad Abdu Ghanim's (1943) book of exercises, based on a companion volume Aden Arabic are of limited scope and require a knowledge of MSA. Rossi's L'arabe parlato a San'â' (1959) is a classic study but it lacks a modern linguistic treatment and reflects theory and practice of some twenty-five years ago. In An Introduction to Yemeni Spoken Arabic (mimeographed) by Etienne Renaud (1977), parts of which have been revised by Roman Stager (1980), an attempt has been to use the direct method, but the sound system is neglected, the grammar is fragmented and sketchy, and the drills are inadequate. It does contain a good variety of texts. Yemeni Arabic (1979) by David Critchfield, designed primarily for the use of Peace Corps volunteers in the Y.A.R., is not based on a particular dialect of Yemen. It is to be credited for its short dialogs and narratives, which makes it easy for students to commit them to memory, but it neglects the sound system and the presentation of the grammar is sketchy and unsystematic.

4. Arrangement of the Materials

A typical unit in this textbook is divided into the following:

a. TEXT

There is a total of forty texts:

The dialogs cover a wide variety of subjects of interest, such as greetings, getting acquainted, appointments, telephone conversations,

shopping, education, mailing letters, telling time, directions, holidays, festivals, etc. The content of the dialogs is determined mainly by the word frequency list and the feedback the writer has obtained in the Y.A.R. from prospective users of the book. The narratives are in the form of short passages suited to the particular needs of prospective students. The first ten lessons are short because emphasis in those lessons is placed on mastery of the sound system of YA.

b. VOCABULARY

This section contains the new vocabulary items that occur in the text. The vocabulary items are selected from a frequency word list of about 3,000 items of Yemeni Arabic which the writer has initially compiled for this course. The average number of vocabulary items in this section is about twenty.

c. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

Additional vocabulary items related to vocabulary are included in this section. The average number is about ten items per lesson. Students are held responsible for the meanings of these words. An attempt has been made to keep tight control over the vocabulary items in both sections. Each new vocabulary item in a lesson is repeated at least five times in subsequent lessons.

d. PRONUNCIATION

Sounds that are similar in SA and American English are not presented. Those sounds are represented by the following symbols: b, d, f, g, h, j, k, m, n, s, *ʃ*, t, w, y, z, *θ*, and *δ*. No lesson in the first ten lessons contains more than two difficult sounds. Stress patterns are described in the first four lessons, and irregularities are pointed out as the need arises. Two detailed pronunciation lesson plans have been worked out in

UNIT 1 and in UNIT 2. They are model plans; reference is made to them in the subsequent eight units.

e. GRAMMAR

An attempt has been made to present grammar in a systematic way, so that by the end of the book the student will have acquired a virtually complete description of the basic structures of YA. The new grammatical structures that occur in a TEXT are explained to the students so that they might understand the particular structure involved. The student is warned against ungrammatical phrases or structures, which are starred. Examples illustrating new grammatical structures are cited from the lesson or previous lessons. There are not more than two major grammatical structures in any one unit.

f. DRILLS

In addition to providing practice in using the items in a lesson, drills illustrate the phonological and grammatical points. The drills are not limited in number or type. The average number in each lesson is ten. There are at least five types, the most frequent being substitution and transformation drills. If a certain drill contains too many items, an adequate number of items could be done in class and the rest assigned as homework or done the following day in class. There are three REVIEW units, the purpose of each of which is to review previous vocabulary and grammar.

g. CONVERSATIONS AND LISTENING COMPREHENSION

There are conversations and listening comprehension passages throughout the book. The conversations and the listening comprehension passages occur at the end of the lesson and utilize familiar vocabulary in a new or related setting. Students are encouraged to tell short stories or describe events of daily occurrence in class.

5. How to Use the Materials

In order to achieve the best results, it is suggested that the course be taught by a language specialist trained in contrastive analysis, preferably a native speaker of any variety of Arabic and an informant. Such a language specialist is cognizant of the implications of contrastive analysis for different types of teaching programs and is better equipped to better guide his students, for if an error is made, he will understand the cause, and will be able to construct illustrative examples, and present corrective drills, Lectures concerning the differences between the target language and the native language and should not replace drill in the patterns or structures in the language. But the simplicity (or complexity) of the rules to be learned in the target language is an important factor. For example, a student coming from English, in which adjectival modifiers almost always precede the noun-head, will have some difficulty learning a language like Arabic where they always follow the noun-head, but he will have more difficulty learning the structure Cardinal numeral + N in MSA, where the cardinal changes according to the gender of the noun counted (switch gender) and the cardinal numeral is sometimes singular and sometimes plural, thereby creating a split in the branching properties of the modifiers. It has been found that a split, involving a part similarity between corresponding structures of the target language and the native language, is likely to be more difficult than a straightforward reversal where there is no similarity at all.

The following recommendations are offered to the teacher:

- a. Read the TEXT slowly, clearly, and carefully twice. Students listen.
- b. Break the passage into short phrases, and have students repeat after you. If the short phrase contains a new grammatical point, explain it and do the relevant drills. Encourage students to take turns and act the passage out. Do not spend too much time on the passage at this stage.

c. For the following day ask students to listen to the tape and try to commit the TEXT to memory. Memorization is very useful in foreign language learning.

d. In DRILLS, put the pattern sentence or phrase on the board. Draw students' attention to it. Explain the grammatical point involved. It is recommended that books be shut throughout. If a student makes an error, do not stop him but lead him to the correct answer.

e. At the beginning of each teaching period, begin the lesson by asking questions of a general nature. These questions can be taken from previously learned materials. Examples of such questions are: What's your name? How are you? What's today? What time is it? Do you study Arabic every day? ... etc. Beginning a lesson in this manner gives the students a sense of continuity in the lessons, organizes and enlivens the students' attitude to the whole subject, and gives the students further practice in many useful structures, words, and everyday expressions.

f. Do not use English unless needed. Translation is a means and not a method. While translation might be used only for some content-words, it should never be used for structures, which should be taught in context and practiced.

TRANSCRIPTION

CONSONANTS

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Approximate Sound</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Approximate Sound</u>
'	(glottal stop)	r	<u>r</u> in Spanish <u>caro</u>
b	<u>b</u> in <u>big</u>	s	<u>s</u> in <u>sip</u>
d	<u>d</u> in <u>dog</u>	S	<u>s</u> in <u>sauce</u>
f	<u>f</u> in <u>fat</u>	ʃ	<u>sh</u> in <u>ship</u>
g	<u>g</u> in <u>God</u>	t	<u>t</u> in <u>still</u>
G	<u>r</u> in French <u>Paris</u>	T	<u>t</u> in <u>tot</u>
h	<u>h</u> in <u>hat</u>	w	<u>w</u> in <u>win</u>
H	- - - - -	x	<u>ch</u> in German <u>nacht</u>
j	<u>j</u> in <u>Jim</u>	y	<u>y</u> in <u>yet</u>
k	<u>k</u> in <u>skim</u>	z	<u>z</u> in <u>zeal</u>
l	<u>l</u> in <u>lathe</u>	θ	<u>th</u> in <u>thin</u>
L	<u>l</u> in <u>bell</u>	ð	<u>th</u> in <u>this</u>
m	<u>m</u> in <u>mat</u>	δ	- - - - -
n	<u>n</u> in <u>nap</u>	9	- - - - -

VOWELS

<u>Short</u>		<u>Long</u>	
i	<u>i</u> in <u>sit</u>	ii	<u>ea</u> in <u>seat</u>
a	- - - - -	aa	<u>a</u> in <u>hat</u>
e	- - - - -		<u>a</u> in <u>hard</u>
u	<u>u</u> in <u>put</u>	ee	- - - - -
o	- - - - -	uu	<u>oo</u> in <u>food</u>

DIPHTHONGS

aw	<u>ou</u> in <u>house</u>	ay	<u>i</u> in <u>night</u>
----	---------------------------	----	--------------------------

A B B R E V I A T I O N S A N D S Y M B O L S

<u>Abbreviation</u>	<u>Word</u>	<u>Abbreviation</u>	<u>Word</u>
act. part.	active participle	n.	noun
adj.	adjective	neg.	negative
adv.	adverb	opp.	opposite
coll.	collective	p.	plural
conj.	conjunction	part.	particle
def.	definite	preced.	preceding
dem.	demonstrative	prep.	preposition
elat.	elative	pron.	pronoun
f.	feminine	s.	singular
fol.	following	s.o.	someone
imp.	imperative	s.th.	something
indef.	indefinite	syn.	synonym
inter.	interrogative	tran.	transitive
intran.	intransitive	un.	unit noun
lit.	literally	var.	variant
m.	masculine	v.n.	verbal noun

<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
C	consonant	SA	Sanaani Arabic
C ₁	first consonant	S	student
C ₂	second consonant	T	teacher
MSA	Modern Standard Arabic		
()	item enclosed is optional or explanatory		
*	indicates an ungrammatical utterance		

U N I T 1

I. TEXT

'ana wa 'ant
daawuud : 'ismi daawuud. maa 'ismak ?
zayd : 'ismi zayd.
daawuud : min 'ayn 'ant ?
zayd : 'ana min al-yaman. wa 'ant min 'ayn ?
daawuud : 'ana min al-'imaaraat.

II. TRANSLATION

I and You

David : My name is David. What is your name ?
Zaid : My name is Zaid.
David : Where are you from ?
Zaid : I am from Yemen. And where are you from ?
David : I am from the Emirates.

III. VOCABULARY

'ant	you (m.s.)	min	from
'ana	I	'ayn ?	where ?
daawuud	David	'al-yaman	Yemen
maa ?	what ?	wa	and
'ism	name (m.)	'al-'imaaraat	the Emirates,
zayd	Zaid		the U.A.E.

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. Short and Long Vowels

SA has in its sound system five short and five corresponding long vowels: a - aa, i - ii, e - ee, u - uu, and o - oo. A long vowel is twice as long as a short vowel. Long aa in SA is pronounced more or less like the a in English bad; short a is half as long, and it is like u in but.

In the following exercise exaggerate, for the time being, long aa and make short a short and abrupt in production; otherwise you will fall into the pitfall of confusing short and long vowels.

Drill 1

short a and long aa

a. Listen; do not repeat.

baab → bab	waan → wan	kaan → kan
daan dan	faat fat	maad mad
kaaf kaf	faan fan	baat bat
gaam gam	haam ham	maan man

b. Listen and repeat after the model : baab bab, daan dan, etc.

c. Teacher makes a random selection of words from the above. Students are asked to indicate under aa and a words that have those vowels, e.g., teacher says baab; students write 1 under aa; teacher says bat; students write 2 under a, etc.

d. Teacher says, e.g., a word with long aa; individual students give the corresponding word with short a, etc.

e. Listen and repeat. Do the same words again in pairs.

Drill 2

short i and long ii

SA short i is similar to English i in sit. The long vowel ii is a little different from English, e.g., ee in seed. In English seat, ea

is a little shorter and has a glide quality; SA 's is a monophthong without any glide quality. Listen:

min → miin	sif → siif	zin → ziin
kif kiif	sin siin	rig riig
lif liif	jīn jiin	fit fiit

Follow the same procedure as in Drill 1 above.

Drill 3

short e and long ee

SA short e is similar to English e in pen; ee is twice as long as e. Keep in mind that ee does not have any glide quality. Listen:

bet → beet	def → deef	sek → seek
kef keef	det deet	zen zeen
wen ween	wet weet	sed seed

Follow the same procedure as in Drill 1 above.

2. Stress

A stressed syllable in a given word is the one that is pronounced the loudest. In SA stress is generally predictable, i.e., you can deduce which syllable in a word is stressed from the consonant-vowel sequence in that word. (There are some exceptions, which will be pointed out as they arise.) You should note the following general comments on syllable structure in SA:

1. Every syllable should have a vowel, short or long.
2. If a word has two consonants or a doubled consonant (identical consonants) in the middle, syllable division is between these two consonants.

Each word in UNIT 1 has either one or two syllables, except 'al-yāman (or 'al-yamān) 'Yemen' and 'al-'imāaraat 'the U.A.E.'.

There are two kinds of syllables in SA: short and long. A short syllable is made up of a consonant followed by a short vowel (CV) or a consonant followed by a vowel followed by another consonant (CVC). A long syllable could be any of the following sequences: CVV, CVVC, CCVC, CVCC, or CVCCC.

In two-syllable words in SA stress falls on the last syllable if it is long and if the first syllable is short; otherwise the first syllable is stressed. Examples:

'īsmi	'my name'	'īsmak	'your name'
māra	'woman'	'al-yāman	'Yemen'
dāawuud	'David'	bāytayn	'two houses'
rajjāal	'man'	finjāan	'cup'

It should be pointed out that if both syllables are short, the second syllable may be stressed. Thus: 'īsmi or 'ismī 'my name', 'al-yāman or 'al-yamān 'Yemen', etc. 'al-, the article prefix, is not usually stressed.

V. GRAMMAR

1. Suffixed Pronouns

Nouns in SA can have pronominal suffixes attached to them. These pronominal suffixes, or suffixed pronouns, as they are sometimes called, indicate possession:

'ism(-i)	'(my) name'	'ism(-ak)	'your (m.s.) name'
----------	-------------	-----------	--------------------

Other suffixed pronouns will be presented later.

2. Equational Sentences

'ismi daawuud.	'My name is David.'
'ana min 'al-yaman.	'I am from Yemen.'

The two sentences above are examples of equational sentences, containing a subject and a predicate. The subject in the first sentence is the phrase 'ismi 'my name' and in the second sentence, the pronoun 'ana 'I'. The predicate is either a proper noun daawuud 'David' or a prepositional phrase min al-yamān 'from Yemen'.

3. The Conjunction wa

wa is a coordinating conjunction corresponding to English 'and'. It has two less commonly used variants: wu and 'uu. In normal speech it is sometimes reduced to w. Examples:

'ana w-'ant	'I and you'	or:
'ana w-ant		
'ant wu zayd	'you and Zaid'	or:
'ant 'uu zayd		or:
'ant uu zayd		

In phrases that are primarily borrowed from literary Arabic only wa is used, e.g.: 'ahlan wa sahan! 'Welcome!' (see Unit 2).

In the following units only hyphenated w- will be used and should be pronounced wa.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

Each student repeats the sentence: 'ismi (zayd). 'My name is (Zaid)' in turn, substituting his or her name for the name in parenthesis.

Example: 'ismi zayd. 'ismi Nancy, etc.

Drill 2 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 by making a statement and then asking a question (Male students only.)

Example: 'ismi zayd. maa 'ismak?

Drill 3 Chain

Repeat Drill 2 by making a statement and then asking a question. (Male students only.)

Example: 'ana min al-yaman. wa 'ant min 'ayn?
'I am from Yemen. And where are you from?'

Drill 4 Chain

Each male student gives two statements and then asks a question.

Example: 'ismi zayd. 'ana min al-yaman. wa 'ant?
'My name is Zaid. I am from Yemen. And you?'

Drill 5 Translation

1. David is from Yemen.
2. I am from the Emirates.
3. What's your (m.s.) name?
4. Where are you (m.s.) from?
5. I am from Canada.
6. David and Nancy
7. Where is Miriam from?
8. And where is Zaid from?

UNIT 2

I. TEXT

man 'ant ?

'ibraahiim : 'ismi 'ibraahiim. 'ana min 'ibb. man' ant ?

kariim : 'ismi kariim. 'ana min al-maxa.

'ibraahiim : 'ahlan wa sahan! kayf ant ?

kariim : naahi. w-'ant ?

'ibraahiim : bi-xayr. sukran.

II. TRANSLATION

Who Are You ?

Ibrahim My name is Ibrahim. I am from Ibb. Who are you ?

Karim : My name is Karim. I am from Mocha.

Ibrahim : Nice meeting you! How are you?

Karim : Fine. And you ?

Ibrahim : Fine. Thank you.

III. VOCABULARY

man ?

'ibraahiim

'ibb

'al-maxa

'ahlan wa sahan!

kayf ?

kayf 'ant ?

naahi

xayr

bi-xayr

sukran

who ?

Abraham

Ibb

Mocha

Welcome! Nice meeting you !

how ?

How are you (m.s.) ?

fine, good (m.s.)

goodness; benevolence

fine, all right

Thanks. Thank you.

IV. PRONUNCIATION

Drill 1short u and long uu

SA u and English u as in put are similar. SA uu as in daawuud 'David' is a monophthong. In the production of this long vowel the lips are rounded throughout. In the English word food, however, the position of the lips changes to a more rounded position. Again, in SA it is vowel length as opposed to vowel quality in English.

dug → duug	kuḷ → kuul	ru → ruu
mut muut	tub tuub	zu zuu
bud buud	gum guum	ʃu ʃuu
luf luuf	zur zuur	nu nuu

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

Drill 2short o and long oo

SA o occurs in only a few words; it is used in free variation with u : 9omaan 'Oman', Hodayda 'Hudaida', gult-lo 'I told him', gomaaf 'cloth, material', 'ittasil-bo 'Contact him!', HoSaan 'horse', etc. oo is twice as long as o and it is a monophthong with no off-glide quality. It is close to the American English oo sound in door.

SA oo is often used in free variation with the diphthong ow or the diphthong aw. Examples :

mootar ~ mowtar ~ mawtar	'car'
talafoon ~ talafown ~ talafawn	'telephone'
yoom ~ yowm ~ yawm	'day'
9aadooh ~ 9aadowh ~ 9aadawh	'he is (still)'

loon ~ lown ~ lawn	'color'
hoonaak ~ hownaak ~ hawnaak	'over there'

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1, a, b.

Drill 3

r

SA r is not like American English r; the former is a consonant, while the latter is more of a vowel than a consonant. For the production of r, most Americans curl the tongue up toward the roof of the mouth as in car, far, etc., and round their lips when the r sound is word-initial or syllable initial, as in ream, rock, marry, etc. SA r is a tongue-flap. It is produced by striking the tip of the tongue against the roof of the mouth. It is like the r sound in Spanish or Italian caro 'dear'. In the speech of some Americans intervocalic t sounds like SA r: city, Betty, pity, water, etc.

Unlike most other dialects of Arabic, SA r is always the plain r sound, except in the vicinity of a velarized sound (see UNITS 3 and 4).

In the following exercise the first word in each pair is a meaningful English word, and the second one is an approximation of the pronunciation of that same English word by a native speaker of SA. Pay special attention to this second pronunciation.

a. Listen; do not repeat :

ream → riim	berry → beri	bar → baar
rub rab	Arizona 'arizoona	four foor
rough raf	marry mari	bear beer
run ran	carry kari	beer biir

b. Listen and repeat after the model : ream - riim, rub - rub, etc.

c. Teacher makes a random selection of words from the above. Students indicate under English r and SA r words that have these sounds, e.g., teacher says ream; students write 1 under English r; teacher says mari; students write 2 under SA r, etc.

d. Teacher gives, e.g., a word with English r; students give the corresponding word with SA r.

e. Listen and repeat. Do the same words again in pairs.

Drill 4

k versus x

SA k and American English k are similar. SA x is different and needs a little practice to master. It is a voiceless fricative and it is velar. It is like Scottish ch in loch and German ch in nacht. For the production of x, put your tongue in the same position as for k and move it down just a little bit in order to let the air pass through. A helpful hint: try clearing your throat to spit:

keer → xeer	daktoor → daxtoor	laak → laax
kaaz xaaz	bakbak baxbax	ʃiik ʃiix
keemeh xeemeh	dikan dixan	ʃeek ʃeex

2. Stress: Stress rules for three-syllable words

a. If the second syllable is short, stress falls on the first syllable. Examples:

māktaba	'library'	māadrasa	'school'
ʃījara	'tree'	mārati	'my wife'
zāwjatayn	'two wives'	9āllamayn	'they (f.) taught'
wāahida	'one (f.)'	māasathum	'their table'
zāarathiin	'sometimes'	māasatayn	'two tables'

b. If the second syllable is long, stress falls on this syllable.

Examples:

dakāakiin	'shops'	basāatiin	'orchards'
sawāariq	'streets'	'ibrāhiim	'Abraham'
siigāara	'cigarette'	gaarūura	'bottle'

Drill 1

Divide the following words into syllables and stress them:

kariim	naahi	'ibraahiim	sukran
'ismi	daawuud	'al-yaman	'ahlan
sahlan	sukran	'amriika	basaatiin

Drill 2

Listen and repeat :

'āna	'ismi	dāwuud	yūusif
'ibrāc'im	'al-yāman	sāhlan	'āhlan
basāatiin	mādrasa	māktaba	wāalideh

V. GRAMMAR

There are no new grammatical points in this lesson.

NOTES ON TEXT

1. naahi 'fine, good' is an adjective and is inflected for gender and number (this will be discussed later), whereas bi-xayr is an adverbial phrase and literally means 'in a good state of affairs'. It is not inflected for gender or number.

2. 'ahlan wa sahan! is a useful polite formula. Its general literal meaning is 'You (m. or f.) are among your folks and you tread upon plane (i.e., not bumpy) land.' It is used on the following occasions:

- a. As a courtesy expression, as in this lesson.
- b. As a welcoming expression in the context of a host greeting a guest, e.g., at home or in the office. It is used only by the host.
- c. As a response, especially in some other Arab countries, to shukran 'Thank you'.
- d. As a response after someone has been introduced to you, in which case it is used for 'nice meeting you!'

3. bi is a preposition and has a range of meanings, depending on the word it governs. In this lesson it is prefixed to xayr 'goodness, benevolence', and the whole phrase means 'in a state of' Other meanings of bi will be given in other lessons. Only hyphenated b- will be used in the following units and it should be pronounced bi.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

Example: kayf ant ? naahi.

'How are you (m.s.) ?' 'Fine (m.s.).'

Drill 2 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with the following:

kayf ant ? naahi bi-xayr. 'How are you ? Fine.'

Drill 3 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with the following:

kayf ant ? naahi bi-xayr. w-ant ? bi-xayr. sukran.

'How are you? Fine. And you? Fine, thanks.'

Drill 4 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with the following:

S₁ : 'ismi 'ibraahim. 'ana min 'ibb.

'My name is Ibrahim. I am from Ibb.'

S₂ : 'ahlan wa sahan! kayf ant ?

'Welcome! How are you?'

S₃ : bi-xayr sukran. 'Fine, thanks.'

Drill 5 Translation

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. My name is Kariim. | 9. What's your name? |
| 2. I'm from Yemen. | 10. Are you from Ibb? |
| 3. David is from Ibb. | 11. Is Ibrahim from Yemen? |
| 4. How are you (m.s.)? | 12. I'm fine, Thanks. |
| 5. Welcome! | 13. Nice meeting you! |
| 6. My name is Karima. | 14. Thank you. |
| 7. I'm from Mocha. | 15. Where are you from? |
| 8. Zayd is from the U.A.E. | 16. What's your name? |

U N I T 3

I. TEXT

massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr

jamila : massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr!
 najla : massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr! 'ahlan wa sahan.
 jamila : kayf anti ?
 najla : naahiya. w-anti ?
 jamila : laa ba's. sukran. kayf al-'ahl ?
 najla : kulluna b-xayr.
 jamila : fi 'amaan-i-llaah!
 najla : fi 'amaan-i-llaah.

II. TRANSLATION

Good Evening

Jamila : Good evening!
 Najla : Good evening! You are welcome!
 Jamila : How are you?
 Najla : Fine. And you?
 Jamila : Not bad. Thanks. How is the family?
 Najla : We are all fine.
 Jamila : Goodbye!
 Najla : Goodbye!

III. VOCABULARY

'aLLaah/'aLLa	God (m.)	kull	(with foll. n. or pron.
'anti	·you (f.s.)		suffix) all of
naahiya	fine, good (f.s.)	fi	in
'ahl	folks; family (m.p.)	'amaan	safety; security

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. Doubled Consonants

Clusters of two identical consonants, traditionally known as geminates, occur frequently in SA. Doubled consonants in English occur across word boundaries, e.g., straight to, hot tea, guess so, etc., and occasionally within compound words and words with prefixes and suffixes, e.g., cattail, unnamed, thinness, etc. Doubled consonants in SA occur medially, finally and, in a few cases, initially. Native speakers of English encounter no difficulty in producing doubled consonants in such words as hot tea, cattail, thinness, etc., but they fail to produce doubled consonants that are differently distributed in Arabic. They either prolong the vowel following the doubled consonants or, simply, produce the word with one consonant, especially if the following vowel is short.

The following drill compares and contrasts words with single and doubled consonants. In order to help you produce words with doubled consonants correctly, think of the word that has doubled consonants as being made up of two words (but don't pause between them) thus:

massaaʃ → mas-saaʃ
 kulluna ʃ kul-luna
 'allaah → 'aL-Laah
 Tayyiba → Tay-yiba

Keep in mind that doubled consonants mark syllable boundaries.

Drill 1

masaaʃ → massaaf	samar → sammar
mareh marreh	salaam sallaam
'ala 'alla	saba sabba
'ama 'amma	haya hayya
daras darras	hanaak hannaak

The procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1 is to be followed.

Drill 2

Velarized L

SA L is relatively easy compared to the SA plain l, which is like English l before vowels (leaf, lore, lap, etc.). L is similar to the American English dark l in peel, tell, ball, etc.

Listen and repeat:

'aLLa waLLa yaLLa gaLaS

V. GRAMMAR

1. Suffixed Pronouns

-iṣ (-ṣ after vowels) and -ana (-una after a doubled consonant) and -na after a vowel signal possession:

'ismiṣ 'your (f.s.) name'
'ahliṣ 'your (f.s.) folks'
'ahlana 'our folks'
'ismana 'our name'

Suffixed pronouns can also be added to particles and prepositions, in which case they function as objects of particles or prepositions, e.g., kulluna, 'all of us', minni 'from me'. min 'from' becomes minni- before a suffix beginning with a vowel: minniṣ 'from you (f.s.)', minna 'from him', etc.

2. Gender in Nouns and Pronouns

Nouns in SA have gender, masculine or feminine. Nouns, including personal names, that refer to males are masculine, and those referring

to females are feminine. Thus, 'ibraahiim, zayd, kariim and 'aLLa are masculine, while jamiila, najla and maryam are feminine. This distinction is important in grammar, since the choice of pronoun depends on the gender of the noun or person involved: 'ant for masculine and 'anti for feminine.

Nouns referring to non-living things also have gender. As a rule nouns ending in -a or sometimes eh are feminine, e.g., suuriyya 'Syria', mareh 'woman', Taageh 'window', etc., while all others are masculine, e.g., 'ism 'name', 'ahl 'folks, family', etc. There are some exceptions, e.g., masa 'evening, night' and 'aLLa 'God', which are masculine, though they end with -a. Gender of nouns will be identified in the vocabulary section through UNIT 10. Thereafter, only the gender of nouns like masa will be identified.

3. Gender in Adjectives

Adjectives in SA, as in some other dialects of Arabic, agree with the noun they modify in gender (masculine or feminine), number (singular or plural), and definiteness. Gender will be dealt with in this section; the other points will be discussed in later lessons.

Note:

kariim naahi.	but	najla naahiya.
'Karim is fine.'		'Najla is fine.'
zayd naahi.		jamiila naahiya.
'Zaid is fine.'		'Jamila is fine.'

4. The Article Prefix 'al-

'al- in SA and in most other dialects of Yemen (e.g., on the west coast 'am ~ m-, b-) is a prefix. It defines nouns and adjectives. While its basic form is 'al-, it has other forms, depending upon its environment, i.e., the sound that precedes it and that which follows it:

a. If the word to which the article is prefixed begins with any of the following consonants: ' , b, j , H, x, 9, G, f, g, k, m, h, w, y, then its form is 'al-. Examples:

'ahl	'folks, family'	'al-'ahl	'the folks'
'ism	'name'	'al-'ism	'the name'
xayr	'good thing'	'al-xayr	'the good thing'
masa	'evening'	'al-masa	'the evening'

b. If the word begins with any of the following consonants (the rest of the consonant sounds of SA), the l of the article prefix is assimilated, i.e., it changes to the same consonant as the initial consonant of the word to which it is prefixed: t, θ, δ, r, z, s, f, S, I, ḡ, l, L, n. Examples:

naahi	'fine, good (one)'	'an-naahi	'the fine one'
dikkaan	'shop, store'	'ad-dikkaan	'the shop'
θawr	'bull'	'aθ-θawr	'the bull'

c. (1) If the word preceding 'al ends with a consonant, the ' sound is dropped in normal speech, and (2) if it ends with a vowel, the 'a drops. Examples:

kayf al-'ahl ?	'How is the family?'
kull al-xayr	'all of the good things'
min al-yaman	'from Yemen'
fi l-yaman	'in Yemen'
fi l-Hodayda	'in Hudaida'

NOTES ON TEXT

1. Arabs, including Yemenis, are prolific in their use of greetings and polite formulas on social occasions. On meeting someone such greetings as "Welcome!", "How are you?", "How is the family?", and "I

hope you are all fine" are practically indispensable polite expressions. It is difficult, sometimes impossible, to give a literal translation of a polite formula. It is important, however, to know what the polite formula corresponds to in English and how it is used, as well as the expected response. In this lesson massaaf aLLa b-l-xeer corresponds to English 'Good evening!' said to a female and massaak aLLa b-l-xeer to a male. It literally means, "may Good grant you an evening of well-being". Note that the response is the same.

2. b-xayr expresses the same meaning of 'fine, in a good state of affairs'.

3. fi 'amaan-i-llaah 'in God's safety (protection)' is a leave-taking formula, the response to which is the same. It is similar to English 'Goodbye! Bye!'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

S₁ (f.): massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr! 'Good evening (afternoon)!'

S₂ (f.): massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr! 'Good evening (afternoon)!'

Drill 2 Chain

S₁ (f.): kayf anti ? 'How are you?'

S₂ (f.): naahiya. 'Fine.'

Drill 3 Chain

S₁ (f.) : kayf ant ? 'How are you (m.s.)?'

S₂ (m.) : laa ba's sukran. 'Not bad, thanks.'

S₁ : kayf al-'ahl ? 'How is the family ?'

S₂ : kulluna b-xayr sukran 'We are all fine, thanks.'

Drill 4 Transformation: m. → f.

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. maa 'ismak ? | 5. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr! |
| 2. kayf 'ahlak ? | 6. min 'ayn ant ? |
| 3. naahi b-xayr. | 7. kayf ant ? |
| 4. man 'ant ? | 8. 'ant b-xayr ? |

Drill 5 Translation

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. How is the family? | 7. We are all fine. |
| 2. How are you (f.s.)? | 8. I'm fine, thanks (m.s.). |
| 3. Is your (f.s.) name Najla ? | 9. You (f.s.) are welcome! |
| 4. Where are you (f.s.) from? | 10. Jamil is in Ibb. |
| 5. We are all fine, thanks. | 11. I'm fine, thanks (f.s.). |
| 6. Good evening (m.s.)! | 12. Good afternoon (f.s.)! |

VII. CONVERSATIONS

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. S ₁ : man 'ant ? | 2. S ₁ : maa 'ismi f ? |
| S ₂ : 'ana zayd. | S ₂ : 'ismi maryam. |
| S ₁ : min ayn ant ? | S ₁ : min 'ayn anti ? |
| S ₂ : 'ana min 'ibb. | S ₂ : min 'ibb. |
| S ₁ : 'ayn 'ibb | S ₁ : kayf al-'ahl ? |
| S ₂ : 'ibb fi l-yaman. | S ₂ : kulluna b-xayr. |

UNIT 4

I. TEXT

'axi w-'uxti

Ganim min ar-rawṣa fi l-yaman. huw daktoor fi l-mustafsa. 'ana suḡli muhandis fi wazaarat al-'aḡGaal fi l-maxa. 'uxti mumarriṣa fi mustafsa l-kuwayt w-'axi sikirteer fi bank ar-riyaaḡ.

II. TRANSLATION

My Brother and My Sister

Ganim is from Roda in Yemen. He is a doctor in the hospital. My work is an engineer in the Ministry of Public Works in Mocha. My sister is a nurse at the Kuwait Hospital and my brother is a secretary at the Bank of Riyadh.

III. VOCABULARY

'ar-rawṣa	Rawda (f.)	'uxt	sister (f.)
huw	he	mumarriṣa	nurse (f.)
daktoor	doctor (m.)	'al-kuwayt	Kuwait
mustafsa	hospital (m.)	'ax	brother (m.)
suḡli	work, job (m.)	sikirteer	secretary (m.)
muhandis	engineer (m.)	bank	bank (m.)
wazaara	ministry (f.)	'ar-riyaaḡ	Riyadh (f.)
'aḡGaal	works; jobs		

IV. PRONUNCIATION

1. ḡ versus ḡ

ḡ should cause no problems since it is similar to the English sound th in this. It is a voiced interdental spirant. The dot below ḡ represents pharyngealization, traditionally known as "emphasis". A pharyngealized sound (e.g., ḡ in UNIT 3) is pronounced with the tongue

farther back and farther down in the mouth; the lips are rounded or protruded slightly. In producing the plain non-pharyngealized δ the tongue is relaxed and its tip protrudes a little beyond the edges of the upper and the lower teeth. For the pharyngealized δ , on the other hand, the tongue is tense, lower in the middle, and more raised toward the back part. Note that this will change the quality of adjacent vowels, especially a and aa, and give a 'hollow' or 'backed' effect. (The aa in ḍaad, for instance, is similar to the a sound in that; but in ḍaad it changes to a sound similar to a in hard.)

In the following drill listen carefully to the pronunciation of δ (as well as the quality of the vowel) and imitate as faithfully as possible.

baaḍ → baaḍ	ḍabb → ḍabb	haaḍa → haaḍa
laaḍ laaḍ	ḍamm ḍamm	yḍimm yḍimm
bayḍ bayḍ	ḍabi ḍabi	naḍiif naḍiif
biiḍ biiḍ	ḍayl ḍayl	waḍḍaf waḍḍaf
buuḍ buuḍ	ḍuul ḍuul	buuḍi buuḍi

Follow the same procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

Drill 2

2. G

If you have mastered the production of x in UNIT 2, it will be easy for you to produce G (which is a voiced velar spirant) since the only difference between the two is voicing. Note that this sound is produced when gargling. G is close in quality to the Parisian r, as in Paris, rien, etc. Practice this sound in the following:

xxxxxxx	→	GGGGGGGG		GGGGGGGG	→	xxxxxxx
xaa xaa xaa		Gaa Gaa Gaa		xoo xoo xoo		Goo Goo Goo
xuu xuu xuu		Guu Guu Guu		xee xee xee		Gee Gee Gee
xii xii xii		Gii Gii Gii		xuxuxux		Gux Gux Gux

Contrast between x and G

xaali → Gaali	naxal → naGal	daax → daaG
xoox GooG	taxayyar taGayyar	ʃayx ʃayG
xiib Giib	baxxa baGGa	liix liiG
xuur Guur	baxeet baGeet	juux juuG

3. Stress

In four-syllable words the fourth syllable is never stressed. If the second to the last syllable is short, stress falls on the third to the last syllable; if the second to the last syllable is long, stress falls on it. Examples:

mumārriḡa	'nurse (f.)'	madrāsathum	'their school'
takāllamu	'they talked'	'aʃGāalahum	'their jobs'
basaatīnak	'your orchards'	sikirtēera	'secretary (f.)'
mustaʃfāahum	'their hospital'	Hawaanītak	'your shops'

V. GRAMMAR

1. Equational Sentences

In UNIT 1 it was pointed out that the subject of an equational sentence could be a personal pronoun, e.g., 'ana 'I', 'ant 'you (m.s.)' or a noun with a suffix, e.g., 'ismi 'my name' and the predicate could be a personal noun, e.g., daawuud or a prepositional phrase, e.g., min al-yaman 'from Yemen'. In this lesson we learn that the predicate of an equational sentence can also be a common noun. Examples:

huw daktoor.	'He is a doctor.'
'ana muhandis.	"I am an engineer.'
'uxti mumarriṣa.	"My sister is a nurse.'

2. Noun Constructs

A noun construct in Arabic is a construction composed of two nouns or noun phrases syntactically bound together. The first element consists of a noun which must always be indefinite in form, i.e., it can never take the article prefix 'al- 'the'. The entire construction is definite or indefinite in accordance with the second element. The second element can be a single noun or a noun phrase. Thus:

daktoor mustajfa	'a hospital doctor'
daktoor al-mustajfa	'the hospital doctor'
'ism bank	'the name of a bank'
'ism as-sikirteer	'the secretary's (m.) name'

The second element can itself be a phrase:

sikirteer bank ar-riyaaṣ	'the secretary of the bank of Riyadh'
'ism daktoor al-mustajfa	'the hospital doctor's name'

If the first element of a noun construct has the feminine ending -a, -t must be added to it:

sikirteerat al-bank	'the bank secretary (f.)
sikirteerat bank	'a bank secretary (f.)
* <u>sikirteera</u> 'al-bank	is ungrammatical.

The noun construct, i.e., N + ('al-) N, is equivalent in meaning to any of the following English constructions:

- a. NN : 'the hospital doctor' daktoor al-mustaffa
 b. N's N : 'Zaid's sister' 'uxt zayd
 c. N of N : 'the ministry of public works' wazaarat al-'a/Gaal

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

Each student is asked to say: 'ana min _____ fi _____ 'I am from _____ in _____', supplying the names of the city and the state (country) he or she comes from.

Drill 2 Substitution

Base Question: kayf Gaanim ? "How is Ghanim?"

- | | | |
|--------------|------------------|------------|
| 1. yuusif | 5. 'al-mustaffa | 9. suGlak |
| 2. zayd | 6. 'af-suGI | 10. suGlij |
| 3. 'al-'ahl | 7. daawuud | 11. 'uxtij |
| 4. 'al-yaman | 8. 'al-'imaaraat | 12. 'uxtak |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'ana muhandis min al-maxa.
'I am an engineer from Mocha.'

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. 'ant | 6. maryam | 11. 'ant |
| 2. huw | 7. daktoora | 12. ana |
| 3. daktoor | 8. 'uxti | 13. 'al-'imaaraat |
| 4. 'anti | 9. sikirteera | 14. 'uxti |
| 5. Gaani | 10. mumarrija | 15. 'axi |

Drill 4 Substitution

Attach the suffixed pronouns: -i, -ak, -iſ, -ana/-una to the following nouns:

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. 'ism | 5. daktoora | 9. daktoor |
| 2. muhandis | 6. sikirteera | 10. 'aſGaal |
| 3. 'ahl | 7. ſuGl | 11. sikirteer |
| 4. 'uxt | 8. bank | 12. wazaara |

Drill 5 Repetition

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. wazaarat al-'aſGaal | 6. sikirteerat al-bank |
| 2. bank al-kuwayt | 7. sikirteerat al-mustafſa |
| 3. bank ar-riyaaſ | 8. bank al-yaman |
| 4. sikirteerat al-wazaara | 9. 'uxt Gaanim |
| 5. daktoorat almustafſa | 10. mustafſa al-maxa |

Drill 6 Transformation: indefinite → definite

Example: bank → 'al-bank 'bank → the bank'

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. 'ism | 5. daktoora | 9. sikirteera |
| 2. sikirteer | 6. wazaara | 10. muhandis |
| 3. ſuGl | 7. 'ahl | 11. daktoor |
| 4. masa | 8. mustafſa | 12. mumarriſa |

Drill 7 Question → Answer

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. maa 'ismak ? | 5. min 'ayn ant ? |
| 2. 'ayn al-maxa ? | 6. man 'ant ? |
| 3. kayf al-'ahl | 7. 'ayn ſuGliſ ? |
| 4. 'ayn as-sikirteera ? | 8. 'anti daktoora ? |

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. najla : massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr!
 layla : massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr. 'ahlan wa sahan!
 najla : maa 'ismif ?
 layla : 'ismi layla. w-anti man ?
 najla : 'ana najla. min 'ayn anti ?
 layla : min ar-riyaaḡ. w-anti min 'ayn?
 najla : min ai-maxa. 'ayn suGlif ?
 layla : suGli sikirtæera fi bank al-yaman. w-anti ?
 najla : suGli mumarriḡa fi mustaffa l-kuwayt.
2. zaynab : 'ayn 'uxtif ?
 jamiila : 'uxti fi l-bank.
 zaynab : maa suGlaha ?
 jamiila : suGlaha daktoora.
 zaynab : w-anti 'ayn suGlif ?
 jamiila : suGli muhandisa fi wazaarat al-'aḡGaal.
 zaynab : kayf suGlif ?
 jamiila : suGli naahi.

U N I T 5

I. TEXT

haaḍa w-haaḍi

- mahdi : massaak aLLa b-l-xayr ya yuusif!
 yuusif : massaak aLLa b-l-xayr!
 mahdi : haaḍa Taaha. huw mudiiir Jarika haana, w-haḍi faaTima. hiy
 Tabiiba fi mustaffa ḡ-ḡawra. hum min 'amriika.
 yuusif : 'ahlan wa sahlān! 'antu min 'ayy wilaaya fi 'amriika ?
 Taaha : min wilaayat 'arizona. w-ant min haana ?
 yuusif : 'ii. 'ana min haana, min al-yaman.

II. TRANSLATION

This (m.) and This (f.)

- Mahdi : Good afternoon, Joseph!
 Joseph : Good afternoon.
 Mahdi : This is Taha. He is the director of a company here, and
 this is Fatima. She is a nurse at the Revolution Hospital.
 They are from America.
 Joseph : Nice meeting you! Which state are you from in America?
 Taha : From the State of Arizona. Are you from here?
 Joseph : Yes. I am from here, from Yemen.

III. VOCABULARY

ya	voc. part.	Tabiiba	doctor (f.)
haaḍa	this (m.)	ḡawra	revolution (f.)
mudiiir	director, manager (m.)	hum	they (m.)
Jarika	company (f.)	'amriika	America (f.)
haana	here	'antu	you (m.p.)
haaḍi	this (f.)	'ayy	which; what?
hiy	she (f.)	wilaaya	state; region (f.)
		'ii	yes

IV. PRONUNCIATION

t versus T

t and T constitute the third pair of plain and pharyngealized consonants. The first two were l - L and ḍ - Ḍ. t is similar to English t in tin. In the production of t the tip of the tongue touches the upper teeth; for the pharyngealized T, the tongue, instead of remaining relaxed as for plain t, is tense and a little retracted. t is a little aspirated, i.e., pronounced with a little burst of air, while T is unaspirated. English t in some words has a quality fairly close to the SA T sound, e.g., Tom, tot, bought, caught, etc. Keep in mind that T, like any other pharyngealized sound, takes the backed pronunciation of adjacent vowels, while t takes a fronted variety: taam vs. Taam sound like English "tam" and "Tom", respectively.

In SA intervocalic T and -TT- (-vTv- or vTtv-) sounds like a velarized d, e.g., baaTil, JayaaTiin and maTar are pronounced baaDil, JayaaDiin, and maDar, respectively. Keep in mind that intervocalic T (or TT) is pronounced like a velarized or backed d sound in the following two drills:

Drill 1

taam	→ Taam	watan	→ waTan
tayyaar	Tayyaar	fatar	faTar
tiin	Tiin	batiin	baTiin
tays	Tays	maatoor	maaToor
tuul	Tuul	rutab	ruTab

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

Drill 2

fattan	→	faTTan	xabat	→	xabaT
batti		baTTi	xaat		xaaT
xatteet		xaTTeet	baxiit		baxiiT
fattuu		faTTuu	Gayt		GayT
xuttaar		xuTTaar	tuut		TuuT

Follow the procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1.

V. GRAMMAR

1. The Vocative Particle *ya*

The vocative particle ya is used in direct address before nouns, names, and titles in SA, as in massaak aLla b-l-xayr ya yuusif! 'Good evening (afternoon), Joseph!' Examples:

ya daktoor mahdi!	'Doctor Mahdi!'
kayf 'ant ya zayd ?	'How are you, Zayd?'
<u>ya sikirteer!</u>	'Secretary (m.)! is grammatically correct but socially discourteous, but <u>ya daktoor!</u> is normal.

2. Demonstratives

haa6a 'this (m.)' and haa6i 'this (f.)' are demonstrative pronouns. In this lesson they are used as subjects:

haa6a Taaha.	'This is Taha.'
haa6i faaTima.	'This is Facima.'
haa6i 'uxti.	'This is my sister.'

The predicate of a demonstrative pronoun can also be an indefinite noun:

haaḡa muhandis. 'This is an engineer.'
 haaḡi sikirteera. 'This is a secretary.'

This structure poses a problem for native speakers of English, as they tend to equate haaḡa muhandis with "this engineer". If the noun following the demonstrative pronoun is definite, then the demonstrative pronoun functions either as the entire subject or as part of the subject of the sentence or clause:

haaḡa l-mudiir. 'This is the director.'
 haaḡa l-mudiir . . . 'This director . . .'
 haaḡa l-mudiir naahi. 'This director is good.'

Titles like 'aT-Tabiib 'Dr. (m.)', 'as-sikirteer 'Secretary (m.)', etc., always take the article prefix in Arabic when not used in a direct address:

haaḡa T-Tabiib yuusif. 'This is Dr. Joseph.'
 haaḡi s-sikirteera faaTima. 'This is Secretary Fatima.'
 min 'ayn ad-daktoor 'anwar ? 'Where is Dr. Anwar from?'
 *haaḡi sikirteera faaTima is ungrammatical.

3. Note that in natural speech fi 'amriika 'in America' becomes f-amriika.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: noun → pronoun

Example: T: maryam 'Miriam'
 S: hiy 'She'

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. jamiila | 5. mahdi | 9. mudiir |
| 2. juGl | 6. Taaha | 10. haa ḡa |
| 3. Tabiiba | 7. mustajfa | 11. 'ibb |
| 4. 'ibraahiim | 8. faaTima | 12. haa ḡi |

Drill 2 Substitution

Substitute the demonstrative pronoun that stands for the proper name given.

Example: T: zayd 'Zaid'
 S: haaða zayd. 'This is Zaid'
 f: maryam 'Miriam'
 S: haaði maryam. 'This is Miriam.'

- | | | |
|---------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. faaTima | 5. najla | 9. Gaanim |
| 2. naansi | 6. Taaha | 10. saara |
| 3. yuusif | 7. zahra | 11. 'anwar |
| 4. 'ibraahiim | 8. mahdi | 12. kariima |

Drill 3 Chain

Each student repeats the phrase massaak (massaaf) aLLa b-l-xayr ya jamiil (jamiila)! 'Good afternoon, Jamil (Jamila)!'

Drill 4 Transformation: masculine + feminine

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. haaða Tabiib. | 8. haaða mudiiir. |
| 2. haaða mumarriḡ. | 9. haaða muhandis. |
| 3. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr! | 10. 'ayn mudiiirak ? |
| 4. 'ayn fuGlak ? | 11. maa 'ismak ? |
| 5. min 'ayn ant ? | 12. haaða mumarriḡ. |
| 6. haaða jamiil. | 13. maa fuGlak ? |
| 7. kayf ant ? | 14. 'ant sikirteer ? |

Drill 5 Double Substitution

yuusif mudir w-faaTima mudira.

'Joseph is a director and Fatima is a director.'

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. kariim - kariima | 7. yuusif - najla |
| 2. 'ariin - 'amiina | 8. jamiil - jamiila |
| 3. 'axi - 'uxti | 9. mirsid - 'aamina |
| 4. samiir - samiira | 10. 'anwar - huda |
| 5. zayd - zahra | 11. mahdi - maryam |
| 6. Taaha - saara | 12. sukri - sayda |

Substitute Tabiib, mumarriδ, muhandis and their feminine forms for mudir and mudira.

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: haaδa mudir min Arizona.

'This is a director from Arizona.'

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. muhandis | 9. 'al-'imaaraat |
| 2. 'ana | 10. 'ar-riyaaδ |
| 3. Tabiib | 11. haaδi |
| 4. 'al-yaman | 12. 'ant |
| 5. huw | 13. 'amriika |
| 6. 'al-kuwayt | 14. wilaayat Texas |
| 7. hiy | 15. fi |
| 8. wilaayat Mexico | 16. sikirteera |

Drill 7 Chain

Example: T: mudir - wazaara 'director - ministry'
 S₁: 'ayn al-mudir? 'Where is the director?'
 S₂: 'al-mudir fi l-wazaara. 'The director is in the
 ministry.'

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. mudir - bank | 7. muhandis - sarika |
| 2. Tabiib - mustasfa | 8. mudira - bank |
| 3. muhandis - 'ibb | 9. sikirteer - haana |
| 4. sikirteera - sarika | 10. maryam - 'al-maxa |
| 5. sarika - 'ar-riyaaδ | 11. mahdi - yariim |
| 6. mumarriḡa - mustasfa | 12. 'al-wilaaya - 'amriika |

Drill 8 Translation

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Bank of Yemen | 6. Bank of Riyadh |
| 2. Bank of America | 7. The Ministry of Public Works |
| 3. the company manager | 8. Are you (m.p.) from America? |
| 4. They are all here. | 9. Yes, we are all from here. |
| 5. You (f.s.) are welcome. | 10. the State of California |

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape twice at least, and then indicate whether the statements below are true or false. If the statement is false, give the correct statement in SA.

1. I am from the State of Arizona.
2. I am a medical doctor.
3. My work is in Kuwait Hospital.
4. My brother is in Hudaida.
5. My brother is an engineer.
6. My sister is a secretary.
7. She is in Sanaa.
8. She is from Arizona.

UNIT 6

I. TEXT

Taam w-zawjata

Sadiigi Taam 'amriiki min kalifoornya. huw min madiinat Los Angeles fi wilaayat kalifocrnnya. gad huw mudir Jarikat filibs fi l-yaman. huda zawjat Taam w-hiy miSriyya. gad hiy muwaḡḡafa fi bank ad-damm. bintahum sikirteera fi l-bank wa waladhun 'isma 'anwar. gad huw Taalib fi l-madrasa.

II. TRANSLATION

Tom and His Wife

My friend, Tom, is an American from California. He is from the city of Los Angeles in the State of California. He is the director of the Phillips Company in Yemen. Huda is Tom's wife and she is Egyptian. She is a nurse in the Blood Bank. Their daughter is a secretary at the bank and their son's name is Anwar. He is a student in school.

III. VOCABULARY

Sadiig	friend (m)	damm	blood (m.)
'amriiki	American (m.)	bint	daughter; girl (f.)
madiina	city (f.)	walad	son; boy (m.)
zawja	wife (f.)	Taalib	student (m.)
miSriyya	Egyptian (f.)	madrasa	school (f.)
muwaḡḡafa	employee (f.)		

IV. PRONUNCIATION

Drill 1

s versus S

s and S constitute the fourth pair of plain and pharyngealized consonants. s is similar to English s in sit. S, on the other hand,

sounds different and is pronounced differently. For the production of S the front part of the tongue is in the same position as for s, but the central part is depressed and the back part raised toward the velum or soft palate. Pharyngealized S has a lower pitch than plain s. English s, on the other hand, has a lower pitch in the vicinity of backed vowels as in Tucson, sauce, sod, etc., which will help you produce a satisfactory S.

SA pharyngealized consonants are L, ḡ, T, S, and intervocalic I, which sounds like a pharyngealized D. You have noticed that in the production of these consonant sounds the tongue is tense and its back part raised toward the velum. You may have noticed that the most striking characteristic of pharyngealization to native speakers of English is the change in the quality of adjacent vowels. To an Arab it is the pharyngealized consonant that affects adjacent vowels.

Contrast between initial and medial s - S :

saar	→	Saar	basam	→	baSam
saal		Saal	basar		baSar
sabb		Sabb	rasa		raSa
saff		Saff	'asiir		'aSiir
sayf		Sayf	mansuub		manSuub

The same procedure in UNIT 1, Pronunciation Drill 1 is to be followed.

Drill 2

Contrast between medial ss - SS and final s - S :

jassa	→	jaSSa	baas	→	baaS
massa		maSSa	labas		labaS
bassaam		baSSaam	mallaas		mallaaS
xassayt		xaSSayt	Gaws		GawS
'issiin		'iSSiin	suus		SuuS

Follow the same procedure in UNIT 1 Pronunciation Drill 1.

V. GRAMMAR

1. Proper Names

Proper names include the names of people, places, books, films, newspapers, etc. They do not need any marking for definiteness, for they are definite by virtue of being proper nouns. Whether they appear with the article prefix or not is a matter of lexical etymology, and not a realization of two different states of definiteness. Learn the following names of countries:

lubnaan	'Lebanon'	miSr	'Egypt'
kanada	'Canada'	suuriyya	'Syria'
tuunis	'Tunisia'	dubayy	'Dubai'
liibya	'Libya'	'ingiltara	'England'
faransa	'France'	'as-suudaan	'Sudan'
'al-baakistaan	'Pakistan'	'al-hind	'India'
'al-'urdun	'Jordan'	'af-saariga	'Sharja'
'amriika	'America (f.)'	'al-maGrib	'Morocco'
'iiraan	'Iran'	'al-jazaa'ir	'Algeria'
qaTar	'Qatar'	'iiTaalya	'Italy'
'abu şabi	'Abu Dhabi'	'alMaanya	'Germany'

2. Nisba Adjectives

Nisba adjectives are relative adjectives which indicate something characteristic of (or having to do with) the words they are derived from. Most nisba adjectives are derived from nouns; a few are derived from words other than nouns. In this section we are concerned with nisba adjectives that are derived from names of countries. Note the following rules:

a. Most nisba adjectives are formed by suffixing -i to a noun. The following are indefinite masculine singular forms:

luuaan	→	lubuaani	'Lebanon	→	Lebanese'
tuunis		tuunisi	'Tunisia		Tunisian'

gaTar	gaTari	'Qatar	'Qatari'
miSr	miSri	'Egypt	'Egyptian'
'iiraan	'iiraani	'Iran	'Iranian'
kanada	kanadi	'Canada	'Canadian'

b. Nouns with the article prefix 'al- lose this prefix when -i is added:

'al-baakistaan	→ baakistaani	'Pakistan	→ Pakistani'
'al-yaman	yamani	'Yemen	Yemeni'
'as-suudaan	suudaani	'the Sudan	Sudanese'
'al-'urdun	'urduni	'Jordan	Jordanian
'al-hind	hindi	'India	Indian'
'al-maGrib	maGribi	'Morocco	Moroccan'

c. Nouns ending with -a drop the -a before -i is added:

kanada	→ kanadi	'Canada	→ Canadian'
faransa	faransi	'France	French'
'aJ-saariga	saarigi	'Sharja	Sharji'
'amriika	'amriiki	'America	American'

Note that -iyya or -ya are dropped when -i is added:

suuriyya	→ suuri	'Syria	→ Syrian'
liibya	liibi	'Libya	Libyan'
'iiTaalya	'iiTaali	'Italy	Italian'
'alMaanya	'alMaani	'Germany	German'

d. A few formations are irregular:

'ingiltara → 'ingiliizi

Compound nouns in SA, e.g., 'abu şabi 'Abu Dhabi', ra's al-xayma 'Ras Al-Khaima', etc., and nouns like dubayy 'Dubai' do not usually

have nisba adjectives derived from them, though ḍiḅyaani 'someone from (or something characteristic of) Abu Dhabi' might be heard. The phrase "min 'from' + country" is usually used instead of the nisba adjective.

The feminine singular forms of the nisba adjective in this lesson are derived by suffixing -yya to the masculine forms. Examples:

yamani	→	yamaniyya	'amriiki	→	'amriikiyya
hindi		hindiyya	suuri		suuriyya
'ingiliizi		'ingiliiziyya	miSri		miSriyya

3. Suffixed Pronouns

In the preceding lessons we have had four pronominal suffixes, -i 'my', -ak 'your (m.s.)', -if 'your (f.s.)', -ana/-na 'our'. In this lesson four more pronominal suffixes are presented:

'ismaha	(<u>-aha</u>)	'her name'
'isma	(<u>-a</u>)	'his name'
'ismahum	(<u>-ahum/-hum</u>)	'their (m.) name'
'ismakum	(<u>-akum/-kum</u>)	'your (m.p.) name'

Feminine nouns with the -a ending add t before the suffixed pronoun is added:

madrasa	'school' . . .	madrasati	'my school'
		madrasatha	'her school'
		madrasatkum	'your (m.p.) school'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: prep. phrase > nisba adj. (m.)

Examples: Taam min 'amriika. → Taam 'ariiki.

'Tom is from America. → Tom is American.'

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Taaha min al-yaman. | 9. 'ibraahiim min al-kuwayt. |
| 2. 'ibraahiim min 'iiraan. | 10. saami min 'iitaalya. |
| 3. zayd min suuriyya. | 11. xamiis min lubnaan. |
| 4. joorj min ingiltara. | 12. rafiig min al-hind. |
| 5. yuusif min miSr. | 13. kamaa' min as-suudaan. |
| 6. hanri min faransa. | 14. sayf min 'abu şabi. |
| 7. sulTaan min liibya. | 15. wilyam min alMaanya. |
| 8. mirsid min al-baakistaan. | 16. daan min amriika. |

Drill 2 Transformation: phrase → nisba adj. (f.)

Repeat Drill 1 with the following feminine personal names:

- | | | |
|------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. faaTima | 6. huda | 11. sayda |
| 2. jamiila | 7. rawşa | 12. kariima |
| 3. tagiyya | 8. xadiija | 13. tagwa |
| 4. maryam | 9. zahra | 14. nuuriya |
| 5. 'amiina | 10. zaynab | 15. yaasamiin |

Drill 3 Double Substitution

jim min madinat Los Angeles fi wilaayat California.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Tucson - Arizona | 6. Phoenix - Arizona |
| 2. New York - New York | 7. Seattle - Washington |
| 3. Detroit - Michigan | 8. Denver - Colorado |
| 4. Chicago - Illinois | 9. Austin - Texas |
| 5. Columbus - Ohio | 10. San Francisco - CA |

Drill 4 Repetition

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. mudiiir ſarikat filibs | 6. sikirteer wazaarat al-'aſGaal |
| 2. zawjat mudiiir aſ-ſarika | 7. muhandis ſarikat BP |
| 3. bint sikirteer al-wazaara | 8. mudiiir mustaſfa l-kuwayt |
| 4. bint mudiiirat al-mustaſfa | 9. muwaſſaf ſarikat filibs |
| 5. mudiiir bank ad-damm | 10. Sadiig muhandis aſ-ſarika |

Drill 5 Substitution

Attach the suffixed pronouns -i, -ak, -if, -a, -aha, -ahum/-hum, and -akum/-kum to the following nouns.

- | | | |
|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. bint | 5. Sadiig | 9. 'uxt |
| 2. walad | 6. damm | 10. 'ahl |
| 3. madiina | 7. madrasa | 11. 'ism |
| 4. fuGI | 8. Jarika | 12. wilaaya |

Drill 6 Substitution

a. Attach to the noun given in the base sentence the proper suffixed pronoun that corresponds to the personal pronoun.

Example: 'ana : fuGI naahi. 'I : My work is good.'

'anti : fuGIif naahi. 'You (f.s.) : Your work is good.

- | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. huw | 5. hum | 9. huw |
| 2. 'ant | 6. hiy | 10. 'ant |
| 3. 'anti | 7. 'antu | 11. hum |
| 4. 'ana | 8. 'ant | 12. hiy |

b. Repeat a. with the following.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. 'ana : 'ibraahiim Sadiigi. | 2. 'ana : binti 'ismaha muna. |
| 'I : Ibrahim is my friend.' | 'I : My daughter's name is Mona.' |

Drill 7 Transformation: statement → question

Ask questions to which the following are the answers. Use the question words : kayf 'how', maa 'what', 'ayn 'where', and min ayn 'from where'.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. b-xayr fukran. | 7. b-xayr naahiya. |
| 2. 'isma daawuud. | 8. haaḍa mustaffa. |
| 3. bint sikirteer al-wazaara. | 9. hiy min gaTar. |

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 4. 'ii 'ana min haana. | 10. kulluna b-xayr. |
| 5. 'al-walad fi l-madrasa. | 11. JuGli haana. |
| 6. hum min miSr. | 12. 'ii huw 'amriiki. |

Drill 8 Translation

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Good evening, Salim! | 7. He is English from London. |
| 2. This is my friend, Tom. | 8. She is a nurse in the hospital. |
| 3. You are welcome, George! | 9. What is your work? |
| 4. He is an employee here. | 10. Their son is a student. |
| 5. She is a student. | 11. Her sister is my friend. |
| 6. She is American. | 12. I am in the Ministry of Public works. |

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr ya muna!
 muna : 'ahlan wa sahlani!
 tagiyya : man haaḍi l-bint ?
 muna : haaḍi maryam.
 tagiyya : kayf anti ya maryam ?
 maryam : naahiya b-xayr. w-'anti
 tagiyya : laa ba's. min 'ayn anti?
 maryam : min 'amriika.
 tagiyya : min 'ayy wilaaya ?
 maryam : min Texas.
2. huda : man haaḍi l-bint ?
 Taaha : haaḍi binti.
 huda : maa 'ismaha ?
 Taaha : xayriya.
 huda : w-haaḍa l-walad ?
 Taaha : waladi. 'isma yuusif.
 huda : 'ant fi l-madrasa ya yuusif ?
 yuusif : 'ii 'ana Taalib.

U N I T 7

I. TEXT

'as-salaama 9alaykum

9ali : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
 9abdaLLa : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
 9ali : kayf ant ?
 9abdaLLa : Tayyib naahi. kayf al-9aa'ila ? kullukum b-xayr n/saaLLa.
 9ali : 'iHna kulluna b-xayr. Sukran.
 9abdaLLa : xaaTrak!
 9ali : ma9 as-salaama.
 9abdaLLa : sallamak aLLaah!

II. TRANSLATION

Peace Be Upon You

Ali : Peace be upon you!
 Abdalla : Peace be upon you!
 Ali : How are you?
 Abdalla : Not bad. I'm fine. How is the family ? I hope you are all fine.
 Ali : We are all fine. Thank you.
 Abdalla : Goodbye!
 Ali : Goodbye.
 Abdalla : God protect you!

III. VOCABULARY

salaam	peace (m.)	n/saaLLa	hopefully; I hope.
9ala/9alay-	on		(lit., "If God wills")
9alaykum	on you (m. p.)	xaaTrak	goodbye
Tayyib	fine, good (m.)	ma9	with
9aa'ila	family (f.)	salaama	safety (f.)

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

9ammaan	Amman (f.)	baariis	Paris (f.)
'al-gaahira	Cairo (f.)	baGdaad	Baghdad (f.)
Tahraan	Tehran (f.)	dimajg	Damascus (f.)
'al-xarTuum	Khartoum (f.)	San9a	Sanaa (f.)
landan	London (f.)	'ar-rabaaT	Rabat (f.)

V. PRONUNCIATION

Drill 19

Arabic 9, technically known as a voiced pharyngeal fricative, is a relatively difficult sound; there is nothing in the English sound system that is similar or even close to it. The American English r sound is phonetically similar to 9 in that 9 is a faucalized mid central vowel while r is a retroflexed rounded mid central vowel. American students have confused, e.g., maw9id and mawrid. For the production of 9, the muscles in the throat become very tense and the passageway at the back of the throat becomes constricted. Several ways have been suggested for a satisfactory production of the 9 sound. As a first exercise, say "ah," and then tense up the muscles of your throat as in gagging. Another exercise is to try to imitate the bleating of a sheep "baa". Tighten your neck and throat muscles as if someone were choking you. The result would be a strangled or a squeezed sound, which is an approximation of the 9 sound.

Initial and Medial 9

9aam	9ayf	jaami9a	'al-9ayn
9aad	9ayn	saa9a	'al-9ayf
9aa'ila	9iid	na9am	ta9izz
9arab	9ood	ba9iid	mista9iir
9alayk	9oora	tisma9u	San9a
9indi	9uud	ma9i	'as-su9uudiyya
9umr	9uum	ma9kum	maa9uun

Medial -9c- and Final-9

† ba9d	jaa9	law9	rafa9
ba9ḡ	baa9	naw9	faari9
Sa9da	saa9	juu9	jami9
si9r	bay9	buu9	jaami9
yi9wir	bi9	zara9	muzaari9
siTTa9f	ḡii9	tisi9	sarii9
ma19aga	kuu9	jama9	mamnuu9

Drill 2Contrast between ' and 9

'addiili	9addiili	'ayn	9ayn
'aadi	9aadi	'awra	9awra
'ajiib	9ajiib	na'am	na9am
'iid	9iid	sa'al	sa9al
'uud	9uud	jarii'	jarii9
'ayf	9ayf	ba's	ba9s

VI. GRAMMAR

1. Suffixed Pronouns

a. Below is a list of all the personal pronouns and the corresponding suffixed pronouns in SA:

<u>Personal Pronoun</u>		<u>Suffixed Pronoun</u>		<u>Example</u>
huw	'he'	-a	fuGla	'his work'
hum	'they (m.)'	-hum/ahum	fuGlahum	'their work'
hiy	'she'	-ha/-aha	fuGlaha	'her work'
hin	'they (f.)'	-hin/-ahin	fuGlahin	'their work'
'ant	'you (m.s.)'	-ak	fuGlak	'your work'
'antu	'you (f.p.)'	-kum/-akum	fuGlakum	'your work'

'ana	'I'	-i	suGliš	'my work'
'antayn	'you (f.p.)'	-kin/-akin	suGlakin	'your work'

Note that there are two suffixed pronouns corresponding to hiy, hin, 'antu, 'antayn, and 'ihna. Her work, e.g., is either suGulha or suGlaha; their (f.) work is either suGulhin, or suGlahin, etc. The latter forms are more commonly used, and will be used throughout.

b. It has been pointed out that suffixed pronouns indicate possession when they are attached to nouns, as in the examples above and that they can also be attached to prepositions, in which case they function as objects of prepositions.

ma9a/ma9aa	'with him'	ma9kum/ma9aakum	'with you (m.p.)'
ma9hum/ma9aahum	'with them (m.)'	ma9iʃ	'with you (f.s.)'
ma9ha/ma9aaha	'with her'	ma9kin/ma9aakin	'with you (f.p.)'
ma9hin/ma9aahim	'with them (f.)'	ma9i	'with me'
ma9ak/ma9aak	'with you (m.s.)'	ma9na/ma9aana	'with us'

9ala 'on', min 'from', and fi 'in' have the following irregular forms:

9ala : (9a!ay-) 9alayh, 9alayhum, 9alayha, 9alayhin, 9alayk,
9alaykum, 9alayʃ, 9alaykin, 9alayy, 9alayna

min : minn- + vowel

minna, minhum, minha, minhin, minnak, minkum,
minniʃ, minkin, minni, minna/minnana

fi : fii-, except fiini 'in me'

fii(h), fiihum, fiiha, fiihin, fiik, fiikum, fiiʃ,
fiikin, fiina

NOTES ON TEXT

Note that upon meeting or leaving someone or a group of people (regardless of gender) you bid them 'as-salaamu 9alaykum 'Peace be upon you!' The response is (wa)9alaykum as-salaam '(and) peace be upon you!'

The response to ma9 as-salaama 'with safety' is sallamak aLLaah! 'May God keep you (m.s.) safe, protect you!', which should be learned as a formula.

VII. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

- a. S₁ : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum! 'Peace be upon you!'
 S₂ : wa 9alaykum as-salaam! 'And peace be upon you!'
- b. S₁ : xaaTrak! 'Goodbye!'
 S₂ : ma9 as-salaama. 'Goodbye.'
 S₁ : sallamak aLLaah! 'God protect you!'

Drill 2 Chain

- S₁ : kayf ant (anti)? 'How are you (m.,f.)?'
 S₂ : Tayyib. naahi. w-ant (anti)? 'I'm fine. And you (m., f.)?'
 S₁ : b-xayr. sukran. 'Fine. Thank you.'

Drill 3 Substitution

- a. Attach to the noun in the base sentence the proper suffixed pronoun that corresponds to the personal pronoun given.

Base Sentence: 'ana : wal' fi 'isma 9ali.
'I : My son s name is Ali.'

- | | | |
|--------|-----------|------------|
| 1. huw | 4. hin | 7. 'antu |
| 2. hum | 5. 'ant | 8. 'antayn |
| 3. hiy | 6. 'ar'ii | 9. 'iHna |

b. Repeat a. with the following:

1. 'ana : 9aa'ilati haana. 'My family is here.'
2. 'ana : mudiiri haana. 'My director is here.'

Drill 4 Transformation: prep. phrase + nisba adj.

Example: Taam min Arizona fi 'amriika +
Taam 'amriiki min Arizona.

'Tom is from Arizona in America.' +
'Tom is American from Arizona.'

1. faTima min 'ibb fi l-yaman.
2. 9ali min al-xarTuum fi s-suudaan.
3. zahra min 9ammaan fi l-'urdun.
4. saara min ar-rabaaT fi l-maGrib.
5. zaynab min al-gaanira fi miSr.
6. 'amiin min dima'g fi suuriyya.
7. saami min New York fi 'amriika.
8. 9aa'isa min San9a fi l-yaman.
9. Henry min baariis fi faransa.
10. Bob min landan fi 'ingiltara.

Drill 5 Substitution

Attach to the preposition given in the base sentence the suffixed pronoun that corresponds to the personal pronoun given.

a. Base Sentence : 'ana : huw ma9i. 'I: He is with me.'

- | | | |
|--------|----------|------------|
| 1. hum | 4. 'ant | 7. 'antayn |
| 2. hiy | 5. 'antu | 8. 'iHna |
| 3. hin | 6. 'anti | 9. 'ana |

b. Base Sentence : huw : haaða minna. 'He: This is from him.'

Use substitution from Drill 5 a. above.

Drill 6 Substitution

Example: kulluna min San9a. 'We are all from Sanaa.'

hum: kulluhum min San9a. 'They (m.) are all from Sanaa.'

- | | | |
|------------|----------|------------|
| 1. hin | 4. 'iHna | 7. 'antayn |
| 2. 'antu | 5. hum | 8. hum |
| 3. 'antayn | 6. 'antu | 9. hin |

Drill 7 Transformation: masculine → feminine

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. kayf ant ? | 7. huw miSri min al-gaahira. |
| 2. naahi. sukran. | 8. 'ant muwaḡḡaf ? |
| 3. kullukum b-xayr n/saaLLa. | 9. haaða mumarriḡ haana. |
| 4. Sadiigi 'amriiki. | 10. haaða mudiir a/-sarika. |
| 5. waladi fi l-madrasa. | 11. haaða sikirteer. |
| 6. 'antu min haana ? | 12. xaaTrak! |

Drill 8 Question → Answer

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. kayf anti ? | 6. hiy 'amriikiyya ? |
| 2. kayf al-9aa'ila ? | 7. 'ayn 9ammaan ? |
| 3. 'anti Taaliba ? | 8. dubay fi gaTar ? |
| 4. 'ayn suGlak? | 9. maa suGlak ? |
| 5. min ayn hum ? | 10. 'anti Tayyiba n/saaLLa! |

VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

a. Listen at least twice to the following passage on tape, and then answer the following questions:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. maa fuG1 9abd al-9aziiz ? | 2. fi 'ayy wazaara fuG1a ? |
| 3. fi 'ay matiina huw ? | 4. 9ammaan fi 9umaan ? |
| 5. min 'ayn 9abd al-9aziiz ? | 6. 'ayn 9aa'ilata ? |
| 7. man 'ismaa9iil ? | 8. maa 'ism bint 9abd al-9aziiz ? |
| 9. maa fuG1 al-walad ? | 10. kulluhum b-xayr ? |

b. Reproduce the passage on tape with the help of the following key words:

muhandis -- wazaara -- 9ammaan -- San9a
 9aa'ila -- walad -- bint -- 'ismaa9iil
 9aa'ifa -- madrasa -- b-xayr

UNIT 8

I. TEXT

maw9id

- 9abd al-gaadir : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
mahdi : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
9abd al-gaadir : 'ismi 9abd al-gaadir bin 9abdaLLa. 9indi maw9id ma9
al-mudiiir.
mahdi : 'ahlan wa sahan! 9indak maw9id al-yawm f-ayy
Hiin ?
9abd al-gaadir : na9am 'al-yawm. 'as-saa9a 9a9ir. 'al-mudiiir
haana ?
mahdi : 'ii. gad huw mawjuud fi l-maktab. tafa99al!

II. TRANSLATION

An Appointment

- Abd Al-Qadir: Peace be upon you!
Mahdi : Peace be upon you.
Abd Al-Qadir: My name is Abd Al-Qadir bin Abdalla. I have an
appointment with the director.
Mahdi : You are welcome! What time do you have an
appointment today?
Abd Al-Qadir: Yes today, at ten o'clock. Is the director here ?
Mahdi : Yes, the director is here. Please go in!

III. VOCABULARY

bin	the son of (m.)	na9am	yes
9indi	I have	'as-saa9a	at (the hour of)
maw9id	appointment (m.)	9a9ir	ten

'al-yawm	today	haana	here
Hiin	time (m.)	maktab	office (m.)
		tafaṣṣal!	Good ahead! Please! (m.)

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

yawm	day (m.)	'as-saa9a ...	It is ... o'clock.
xamsa	five	9aṣara	ten
sitta	six	Gudwa	tomorrow
sab9a	seven	'ams	yesterday
ḡamaaniya	eight	'al-jum9a	Friday
tis9a	nine	'as-sabt	Saturday
saa9a	hour; watch; clock	maafi	no

V. PRONUNCIATION

Drill 1h and 9

hala	9ala	haa'ila	→	9aa'ila	hawn	→	9awn
haal	9aal	hadd		9add	hayba		9ayba
hamm	9amm	hayn		9ayn	hawm		9awm
hindi	9indi	sahayt		sa9ayt	huud		9uud

Drill 2Practicing 9

Read the following:

9abdaLLa	jum9a	9alaykum	9indi	9indiṣ
maw9id	9aṣara	9aṣir	mas9uud	saa9a
na9am	sab9a	tis9a	'al-jum9a	9ali
tisi9	sabi9	9indakum	9aa'ila	ma9i

Drill 2

Stress mark the following words, and read them, being careful to stress them as you have marked them:

maw9id	tafaḡḡal	'al-yawm	sitta
saa9a	9a9ir	na9am	sab9a
ḡamaaniya	Gudwa	'as-sabt	'al-jum9a
9alaykum	sallamk	n9aaLLa	maSriyya

VI. GRAMMAR

1. 9ind-

9ind- is used with suffixed pronouns to form a verb-like expression meaning approximately 'to have', e.g., 9indi maw9id 'I have an appointment.' 9ind is generally a preposition meaning 'at; close to; in the possession of; at the house of or place (e.g., store, building, etc.) of'. Examples of this latter use will be given later on.

This preposition 9ind has two forms, depending on the suffix: 9ind- if the suffix begins with a vowel, and usually 9inda- if the suffix begins with a consonant. Examples:

9indi	'I have'	9indana	'we have'
9indak	'you (m.s.) have'	9indahum	'they (m.) have'
9indi9	'you (f.s.) have'	9indahin	'they (f.) have'
	9indakum/9indukum	'you (m.p.) have'	

2. Telling Time

Note that in SA when you count (e.g., 5-10) you keep the -a ending of the numerals: xamsa 'five', sitta 'six', sab9a 'seven', ḡamaaniya 'eight', tis9a 'nine', and 9a9ara 'ten'. When you tell time

(e.g., 'It's five o'clock'), you usually drop the -a ending from the numerals, with some appropriate changes:

'as-saa9a xams.	'It's five o'clock.'
'as-saa9a 9afir.	'It's ten o'clock.'
'as-saa9 0amaan.	'It's eight o'clock.'

Note that 9afara becomes 9afir, 0amaaniya becomes 0amaan, tis9a becomes tisi9, and sab9a becomes sabi9.

Another construction, characteristic of old SA, is to make saa9a the first term of a noun construct, thus:

saa9at 9afir	'at ten o'clock'
saa9at 0amaan	'at eight o'clock', etc., etc.

3. ma9 'with' may become ma9aa- before a suffixed pronoun, with the exception of ma9i 'I have' and ma9if 'with you (f.s.)':

ma9aaha	'with her'	ma9aakum	'with you (m.p.)'
ma9aak	'with you (m.s.)'	ma9aahin	'with them (f.)'
ma9aahum	'with them (m.)'	ma9aana	'with us'

4. Note the following:

'al-yawm al-jum9a.	'Today is Friday.'
yawm al-jum9a	'on Friday' (noun construct)

NOTES ON TEXT

1. tafaṣṣal ! is the imperative form of the verb tafaṣṣal 'to be so good as to do something'. As an imperative it means 'Please ...!' You say it when you offer someone something (e.g., coffee, food, etc.), or a seat, or when urging someone to go first, for example, through a door. The other forms of tafaṣṣal are:

tafaṣṣali! Please! (said to a female)
 tafaṣṣalu! Please! (said to two or more males)
 tafaṣṣalayn! Please! (said to two or more females)

2. 'ii 'yes' and na9am are used almost interchangeably, though na9am is a little more formal. 'ii na9am 'yes, indeed' is an emphasized "yes".

VII. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

9indi maw9id ma9 al-mudiir.

'I have an appointment with the director.'

- | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. doctor | 5. minister | 9. 9ali |
| 2. doctor (f.) | 6. employee | 10. 9aa'isa |
| 3. secretary (f.) | 7. nurse (f.) | 11. boy |
| 4. secretary | 8. manager | 12. student |

Drill 2 Double Substitution

9indi' maw9id ma9 al-waziir.

'I have an appointment with the minister.'

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. 'ant -- employee (m.) | 5. 'anti -- secretary (f.) |
| 1. hiy -- nurse (f.) | 6. 'antu -- minister |
| 3. hum -- manager (m.) | 7. huw -- engineer |
| 4. hin -- doctor (f.) | 8. 'antayn -- director (f.) |

Drill 3 Double Substitution

Example: T: you (m.s.) -- minister

S: tafaḡḡal! 'al-waziir mawjuud.

'Go ahead (m.)! The minister is present.'

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. you (f.s.) -- secretary | 4. you (m.s.) -- doctor |
| 2. you (m.p.) -- engineer | 5. you (m.n.) -- employee |
| 3. you (f.p.) -- doctor (f.) | 6. you (f.s.) -- bank manager |

Drill 4 a. Repetition

a. xamsa sitta sab9 ḡamaaniya tis9a 9aḡara

b. T asks individual students to count from xamsa 'five' through 9aḡara 'ten'.

c. T writes, e.g., the numeral 7 on the board; students are asked to give the SA word for seven.

Drill 5 a. Repetition

† 'as-saa9a xams. 'as-saa9a ḡamaan.

'as-saa9a sitt. 'as-saa9a tisi9.

'as-saa9a sabi9. 'as-saa9a 9aḡir.

b. T asks individual students to tell the time, starting with: 'as-saa9a xams. 'It's five o'clock.' through 'as-saa9a 9aḡir. 'It's ten o'clock.'

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi maw9id ma9 al-mudiir al-yawm.

'I have an appointment with the director today.'

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1. 'ant | 6. 'al-muhandis | 11. hin |
| 2. 'anti | 7. hum | 12. 'as-saa9a xams |
| 3. Gudwa | 8. 'ana | 13. 'as-saa9a 9ajir |
| 4. 'al-mudiira | 9. 'aT-Tabiiba | 14. 'as-saa9a tisi9 |
| 5. 'iHna | 10. 'antayn | 15. 'as-saa9a 0amaan |

Drill 7 Repetition

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. 9indi maw9id ma9aa. | 5. 9indi maw9id ma9aak. |
| 2. 9indi maw9id ma9aahum. | 6. 9indi maw9id ma9aaf. |
| 3. 9indi maw9id ma9aaha. | 7. 9indi maw9id ma9aakum. |
| 4. 9indi maw9id ma9aahin. | 8. 9indi maw9id ma9aakin. |

Drill 8 Chain

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| T: muhandis -- mudiir | 'engineer -- director' |
| S ₁ : 'ayn al-muhandis ? | 'Where is the engineer?' |
| S ₂ : 'al-muhandis ma9 al-mudiir. | 'The engineer is with the director.' |
| 1. Tabiib -- mumarri9 | 7. 'uxti -- Sadiigatha |
| 2. mudiir -- Tabiib | 8. 9aa'ila -- 'uxti |
| 3. muwa99af -- sikirteer | 9. zawj -- zawjata |
| 4. sikirteer -- waziir | 10. zawj -- 9aa'ila |
| 5. zawja -- zawjaha | 11. walad -- bint |
| 6. 'axi -- Sadiigi | 12. binti -- 'uxtaha |

Drill 9 Question--Answer

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| T: 'as-saa9a xams ? | 'Is it five o'clock?' |
| S: 'ii na9am as-saa9a xams. | 'Yes, it's five o'clock.' |

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. 'as-saa9a sitt ? | 7. 9indak maw9id ? |
| 2. 'as-saa9a tisi9 ? | 8. 'al-waziir haana ? |
| 3. 'as-saa9a 0amaan ? | 9. 'as-saa9a sabi9 ? |
| 4. 'al-yawm as-sabt ? | 10. 'as-saa9a 9afir ? |
| 5. 'ams al-jum9a ? | 11. hiy muwaŕŕafa ? |
| 6. Gudwa s-sabt ? | 12. 'anti faaTima ? |

Drill 10 Translation

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. What's today? | 8. We are all fine, thanks. |
| 2. Today is Friday. | 9. Good evening! |
| 3. Yesterday was Saturday. | 10. God ahead (f.)! She is in. |
| 4. I have an appointment. | 11. I have a boy and a girl. |
| 5. At what time? | 12. You are welcome. |
| 6. At ten o'clock. | 13. tomorrow at six o'clock |
| 7. The office is here. | 14. The director is in the office. |

VIII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
 zahra : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
 tagiyya : 'al-9aa'ila haana ya zahra ?
 zahra : maafi.
 tagiyya : 'ayn hiya ?
 zahra : fi Sa9da.
 tagiyya : 'anti min Sa9da ?
 zahra : maafi. 'ana min San9a.
2. 'as-sikirteer : 9indak maw9id ma9 aT-Tabiib ?
 9ali : 'ii na9am.
 'as-sikirteer : f-ayy Hiin ?
 9ali : 'as-saa9a 9afir.
 'as-sikirteer : tafaŕŕal!
 9ali . sukran.

U N I T 9

I. TEXT

'al-mudiri maḡGuul

xadiija : sabbahis aLLa b-l-xayr ya Halima!

Halima : sabbahis aLLa b-l-xayr w-l-9aafiya. 'ahlan wa sahan! kayf haalis ?

xadiija : naahiya. 'al-Hamd lillaah. 9indi maw9id ma9 al-waziir saa9at waaHida. 'al-waziir mawjuud haana ?

Halima : 'ii mawjuud bass maḡGuul ḡwayya ḡalhiin. tafaḡḡali 'ijlisi!

xadiija : ḡukran. baarak aLLa fiis.

Halima : 9afwan.

II. TRANSLATION

The Director Is Busy

Khadija : Good morning, Halima!

Halima : Good morning, Khadija. Welcome!
How are you?

Khadija : Fine. Praise be to God! I have an appointment with the minister at one o'clock. Is the minister here?

Halima : Yes, he is, but he is a little busy now. Please sit down!

Khadija : Thanks. God bless you!

Halima : You are welcome.

III. VOCABULARY

9aafiya	health, well-being (f.)	maḡGuul	busy (m.)
Haal	condition (m.)	ḡwayya	a little
Hamd	praise (m.)	ḡalhiin	now
li-liaah	to God	'ijlisi!	sit down (f.s.)

waaHida	one (f.)	baarak aLLa fi ...	God bless ...
bass	but, only	9afwan	welcome

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

waaHid	one	'al-'aHad	Sunday
'iθnayn	two	'al-'iθnayn	Monday
θintayn	two (f.)	'aθ-θaluuθ	Tuesday
θalaaθa	three	'ar-rabuu9	Wednesday
'arba9a	four	'al-xamiis	Thursday
'iHna	we	gahwa	coffee

V. PRONUNCIATION

H

H and 9 are probably the most difficult sounds for native speakers of English. H shares all the features of 9 except that it is voiceless while 9 is voiced. In both of these two sounds the muscles of the throat become tense and the passageway at the back of the throat becomes constricted. If you have mastered the production of 9, or at least an approximation of it, you will be able to produce an acceptable H if you devoice 9. However, it will take some practice to learn to recognize and produce H. Try the following:

a. Whisper and repeat the phrase 'Hey you!' as loudly and as deep in your throat as you can; then say only, 'hey', elongating the initial H sound, hhhhhhhhhey'. Repeat this with the muscles used in gagging (as in the case with 9) tensed up. This would be an acceptable approximation of H.

b. An alternative suggestion that has been made is to start with 'ah!', whispering it as loudly as you can. Now repeat it and narrow the pharynx by moving the root of the tongue back, and raising the larynx.

Drill 1Initial H

Haal	Hamd	HaTT	Hurma
Haadd	Hamad	Hawwal	HuTT
Haakim	Habb	Hadda	Hukk
Haarr	Hammaam	Hijra	Huum
Haamiŕ	Hariim	Hiin	Huut
Haliib	Hassaan	Hukuuma	Huul

Drill 2Medial H

+ marHaban	SiHHa	waaHid	saHi iH
laHm	saHab	waaHida	'iHna
'al-'aHad	baHaø	ðaHi in	ruHt
baHr	'isHab	ruuHi	'aHsan
tuffaaHa	baHø	ruHna	'aHmar

Drill 3Final H

SabaaH	'iftaH	SaHi iH	'aruuH
raaH	maaliH	muriH	taruuH
tuffaaH	miH	SaaliH	nuuH
fataH	riH	lawH	ruuH
STabaH	saHH	SabuuH	suuH

VI. GRAMMAR

1. Imperatives

The imperative verb 'ijlis! 'sit down!', like tafaḡḡal! is often used with other imperatives, e.g.:

tafaḡḡal 'ijlis!	'Please sit down (m.s.)!'
tafaḡḡali 'ijlisi!	'Please sit down (f.s.)!'
tafaḡḡalu 'ijlius!	'Please sit down (m.p.)!'
tafaḡḡalayn 'ijlisayn!	'Please sit down (f.p.)!'

2. Telling Time

Note that since saa9a 'hour; clock; watch' is feminine, you should use the feminine forms of one and two to agree with it:

'as-saa9a waaHida. or 'It's one o'clock.'
saa9at waaHida.

'as-saa9a θintayn. or 'It's two o'clock.'
saa9at θintayn.

*'as-saa9a waaHid.

*'as-saa9a 'iθnayn.

NOTES ON TEXT

1. SabbaHif aLLa b-?-xayr! said to a female and SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr! said to a male literally mean, 'God give you a good morning'; they generally mean, 'Good morning!' Learn them as formulas.

2. 'al-Hamdu li-llaah 'fine, good' is a response to kayf Haalak or kayf ant 'How are you (m.s.)?' It literally means 'Praise be to God.' Other responses are: Tayyib, naahi, etc.

VII. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

S₁ (f.) : SabbaHiſ aLLa b-l-xayr ya Haliima!
'Good morning, Halima!

S₂ (f.) : SabbaHiſ aLLa b-l-xayr w-l-9aafiya ya xadiija!
'Good morning, Khadija!'

Drill 2 Chain

Repeat Drill 1 with male and female students.

Drill 3 a. Repetition

waaHid	'iθnayn	θalaaθa	'arba9a	xamsa
sitta	sab9a	θamaaniya	tis9a	9aſara

b. T asks individual students to count from waaHid through 9aſara.

c. T writes, e.g., the numeral 9 on the board; students give the SA word for nine.

Drill 4 Repetition

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. saa9at waaHida. | 6. saa9at sitt. |
| 2. saa9at θintayn. | 7. saa9at sabi9. |
| 3. saa9at Calaaθ. | 8. saa9at θamaan. |
| 4. saa9at 'arba9. | 9. saa9at tisi9. |
| 5. saa9at xams. | 10. saa9at 9aſir. |

Drill 5 Question -- Answer

Example: T: 'as-saa9a waaHida ḡalhiin ?
 'Is it one o'clock now?'
 S: 'ii na9am. 'as-saa9a waaHida ḡalhiin.
 'Yes, indeed. It's one o'clock now.'

Drill 6 Chain

T writes, e.g., 9 on the board; an individual student says:
'as-saa9a tisi9 ḡalHiin. or saa9at tisi9 ḡalHiin. 'It's nine o'clock
 now.'

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi raw9id ma9 al-waziir saa9at xams.
 'I have an appointment with the minister at 5:00.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. you (m.s.) | 6. doctor (f.) | 11. 1 o'clock |
| 2. you (f.s.) | 7. they (f.) | 12. 2 o'clock |
| 3. she | 8. minister | 13. today |
| 4. secretary | 9. 'ihna | 14. tomorrow |
| 5. manager (f.) | 10. 'ana | 15. now |

Drill 8 Substitution

'al-waziir maḡGuul ḡwayya ḡalhiin.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. 'al-mudiir | 5. 'axi | 9. 'al-bint |
| 2. 'aT-Tabiiba | 6. 'uxti | 10. 'aT-Tabiib |
| 3. 'as-sikirteera | 7. 'al-muwaḡḡaf | 11. Haliima |
| 4. Sadiigi | 8. 'al-muhandis | 12. muHammad |

Drill 9 Repetition

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. 'al-yawm as-sabt. | 5. 'al-yawm ar-rabuu9. |
| 2. 'al-yawm al-'aHad. | 6. 'al-yawm al-xamiis. |
| 3. 'al-yawm al-'i0nayn. | 7. 'al-yawm al-jum9a. |
| 4. 'al-yawm a0-0aluu0. | 8. 'al-yawm as-sabt. |

Drill 10 Chain

- T : 'al-jum9a 'Friday'
 S₁: yawm al-jum9a 'on Friday'
 S₂: 'al-yawm al-jum9a. 'Today is Friday.'

Drill 11 Transformation: masculine → feminine

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. 'ana yamani min San9a. | 8. kayf antu ? |
| 2. huw miSri min al-gaahira. | 9. kayf al-9aa'ila ? |
| 3. 'ant 9iraagi min baGdaad ? | 10. Tayyib Jukran. |
| 4. taffa00al 'ijlis! | 11. naahi b-xayr. |
| 5. SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr! | 12. huw maJGuul 0alHiin. |
| 6. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr! | 13. waladhun 'isma 'aHmad. |
| 7. kayf Haalak ? | 14. tafa00alu 'ijlisu! |

Drill 12 Translation

1. I have an appointment with the doctor today at two o'clock.
2. The minister is a little busy now. Please sit down! Coffee?
3. What's today? Today is Wednesday.
4. Today at 1 o'clock. I hope the director is in the office.
5. What time do you (f.) have an appointment with the doctor?
6. How is the family? We are all fine, thanks.
7. Goodbye! Goodbye (with safety)! May God protect you!
8. Thank you! God bless you!
9. I am a little busy now. But tomorrow is Friday.

10. He is Yemeni from the city of Hajja, but I am American from the city of Detroit in the State of Michigan.

VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape, and then indicate whether the following statements are true or false; if the statement is false, say maafi 'no' and correct it.

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 1. 9abd ar-raHmaan min 'amriika. | 6. 'uxta muwaḡḡafa. |
| 2. 9abd ar-raHmaan Taalib. | 7. 'ism 'uxta 9aa'ifa. |
| 3. ḡalHiin 9abd ar-raHmaan fi San9a. | 8. 'al-yoom aḡ-ḡaluuḡ. |
| 4. 9aa'ilat 9ab ar-raHmaan fi
Detroit. | 9. 'al-maw9id ma9 as-sikirteer. |
| 5. 9indi walad waaHid bass. | 10. 'al-maw9id saa9at ḡintayn. |

UNIT 10

I. TEXT

'al-jaww

'ismi 9abdalla. 'ana min al-Hodayda. 'ana mutazawwij w-9indi walad w-bint. 'al-walad 'isma Husayn w-l-bint 'ismaha huda. hum fi l-madrasa. fuGli saagi fi wazaarat aS-SiHHa.

'al-jaww fi l-Hodayda naahi kaøiir fi s-sitaa', maaf Haami w-maaf baarid, walaakin fi S-Sayf Hama w-ruTuuba. fi San9a 'al-jaww Hilw fi S-Sayf walaakin miGbir. fi s-sitaa' bard swayya fi S-SabaaH bass.

II. TRANSLATION

The Weather

My name is Abdalla. I am from from Hudaida. I am married, and I have a son and a daughter. The boy's name is Hussein and the girl's name is Huda. They go to school. I work as a workman in the Ministry of Health.

The weather in Hudaida is very nice in winter; it is neither hot nor cold, but in the summer it is hot and humid. In Sanaa the weather is beautiful in the summer, but it is dusty. It is windy. In the winter, there is a little cold only in the morning.

III. VOCABULARY

'al-Hodayda	Hudaida (f.)	baarid	cold (m.)
mutazawwij	married (m.)	walaakin	but
saagi	workman, laborer (m.)	'aS-Sayf	summer (m.)
SiHHa	health (f.)	Hama	hot weather
jaww	weather (m.)	ruTuuba	humidity

kaθiir	very; a lot	Hilw	beautiful (m.)
'aʃ-ʃitaa'	winter (m.)	miGbir	dusty (m.)
maaf	not	bard	cold weather
maaf... w-maaf	neither ... nor	SabaaH	morning
Haami	hot (m.)		

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

jaami9a	university (f.)	kaatib	clerk (m.)
mu9aalim	teacher (m.)	'al-baHrayn	Bahrain (f.)

V. PRONUNCIATION

Drill 1h and H

haal → Haal	hatt → Hatt	lahm → laHm
haajj Haajj	harram Harram	sahar saHar
haarr Haarr	hanna Hanna	nahr naHr
haam Haam	habb Habb	raah raaH
haamil Haamil	hubuub Hubuub	nabah nabaH

Drill 2x and H

xaal → Haal	xammaam → Hammaam	xawδ → Hawδ
xaali Haali	xafiif Hafiif	baxr baHr
xiin Hiin	xalj Halj	baax baaH
xaTT HaTT	xayr Hayr	milx milH
xalla Halla	xawf Hawf	ruux ruuH

VI. GRAMMAR

1. Proper Names

Names of towns, cities and most countries and states are feminine. The names of a few regions and countries, however, may be masculine or feminine, e.g., lubnaan 'Lebanon' 'al-yaman 'Yemen,' 'al-9iraag 'Iraq', 'al-'urdun 'Jordan', etc. Names that end with -a are feminine only, e.g.: 'as-su9uudiyya 'Saudi Arabia', faransa 'France', suuriya 'Syria', 'ingiltara 'England', etc.

Learn the names of the following cities: ta9izz 'Taiz', manaaxa 'Manakha', saba 'Sheba', jadda 'Jadda', and 'ad-dawHa 'Doha'.

2. The Negative Particle *maaf*

maaf is a negative particle, which always precedes a noun, an adjective, an adverb, or a phrase:

huw maaf muhandis. 'He is not an engineer.'

'al-jaww maaf baarid. 'The weather is not cold.'

hiy maaf haana. 'She is not here.'

hum maaf fi l-madrasa. 'They are not in school.'

maaf ... w-maaf ... 'neither ... nor ...' Examples: maaf muhandis wa maaf raagi 'neither an engineer nor a laborer'.

maaf Haami w-maaf baarid 'neither hot nor cold'.

maaf min San9a w-maaf min ta9izz 'neither from Sanaa nor from Taiz.'

3. The Intensifier *kaθiir*

kaθiir 'very; very much; a lot' is an intensifier and can be used to modify nouns, adjectives, or verbs. It, like other particles of degree, can either precede or follow the word it modifies:

9indi kaθiir gahwa.	'I have a lot of coffee.'
'al-jaww Haami kaθiir.	'The weather is very hot.'
'al-jaww kaθiir Haami.	'The weather is very hot.'
9indak gahwa ?	'Do you (m.s.) have coffee?'
'ii, kaθiir.	'Yes, (I have) a lot.'
9indi swayya gahwa.	'I have a little coffee.'
9indi gahwa swayya.	'I have a little coffee.'

4. Topical Sentences

- a. 'al-walad 'isma Husayn. 'The boy's name is Hussein.'
- b. 'al-bint 'ismaha huda. 'The girl's name is Huda.'

The above sentences are known as topical sentences, or topic-comment sentences. The topic in a. is 'al-walad 'the boy'. It can be a pronoun: huw 'isma Husayn 'His name is Hussein.' The comment is a nominal sentence or an equational sentence, 'isma Husayn 'His name is Hussein.' Notice that the topic should include a pronoun suffixed to the noun in the equational sentence: -a in 'isma 'his name' refers to the noun 'al-walad 'the boy' in sentence a. and -ha in 'ismaha 'her name' refers to the noun 'al-bint 'the girl'. Other examples:
9ali 'uxta sikirteera. 'Ali's sister is a secretary.'
'iHna mu9allimna 9ali. 'Our teacher is Ali.'
hum 9indahum sarika fi San9a. 'They have a company in Sanaa.'

Other examples of other types of topical sentences will be given later on.

VII. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

9indi walad w-bint. 'I have a boy and a girl.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1. 'ant | 6. hin | 11. 'antayn |
| 2. 'anti | 7. 'antu | 12. 'iHna |
| 3. hiy | 8. 'antayn | 13. 'anti |
| 4. hum | 9. huw | 14. hum |
| 5. 'iHna | 10. 'ana | 15. hin |

Drill 2 Double Substitution

'al-walad'iana 9ali w-l-bint 'ismaha Haliima.

'The boy's name is Ali and the girl's name is Halima.

Example: T: mudir 'manager'

S: 'al-mudir 'isma 9ali w-l-mudira 'ismaha Haliima.

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. minister | 6. clerk | 11. he |
| 2. secretary | 7. my brother | 12. manager |
| 3. student | 8. husband | 13. doctor |
| 4. American | 9. teacher | 14. nurse |
| 5. Bahraini | 10. this | 15. employee |

Drill 3 Repetition

1. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Haami l-yawm.
'How is the weather today? The weather is hot today.'
2. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww baarid al-yawm.
3. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww naahi l-yawm.
4. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Hilw al-yawm.
5. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Hama l-yawm.
6. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww migbir al-yawm.

7. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww maaf Haami l-yawm.
8. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww baarid al-yawm.
9. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww Haami w-miGbir al-yawm.
10. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'al-jaww baarid w-naahi l-yawm.

Drill 4 Double Substitution

kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi s-sitaa ?
'How is the weather in Sanaa in winter ?'

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. 'al-Hodayda -- summer | 6. 'ibb -- winter |
| 2. 9amraan -- winter | 7. gaTar -- winter |
| 3. 'abu 9abi -- winter | 8. 'al-kuwayt -- summer |
| 4. 'ar-riyaa9 -- summer | 9. Hajja -- winter |
| 5. 'al-baHrayn -- summer | 10. Arizona -- summer |

Drill 5 Double Substitution

'ana saagi fi wazaarat al-'a9Gaal
'I am a workman in the Ministry of Public Works.'

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. teacher -- university | 8. nurse -- hospital |
| 2. clerk -- Bank of Yemen | 9. clerk -- Shell Company |
| 3. engineer -- Phillips Company | 10. doctor -- Ministry of Health |
| 4. manager -- Bank of America | 11. student - university |
| 5. teacher -- school | 12. nurse -- Ministry of Health |
| 6. employee -- Blood Bank | 13. clerk -- American Bank |
| 7. doctor -- Kuwait Hospital | 14. workman -- Ministry of Public
Works |

Drill 6 Transformation: positive → negative

1. 'al-jaww Hilw kaθiir al-yawm.
2. fi S-SabaaH al-jaww baarid kaθiir.
3. 'al-wald 'isma SaaliH.

4. hiy 'amriikiyya.
5. ḍalHiin as-saa9a xams.
6. 'al-jaww baarid w-Hilw fi S-Sayf.
7. 'al-waziir maḥGuul.
8. 'al-mu9allim min al-baHrayn.
9. 'al-gahwa baarida.
10. hum fi l-jaami9a.
11. 'al-mu9allim mutazawwij.
12. ḥuḡla kaatib fi wazaarat aS-SiHHa.

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi maw9id al-yawm saa9at sitt.

'I have an appointment today at six o'clock.'

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. he | 6. tomorrow | 11. you (p.) |
| 2. she | 7. one o'clock | 12. we |
| 3. they (m.) | 8. two o'clock | 13. today |
| 4. you (f.s.) | 9. now | 14. they (f.) |
| 5. you (m.s.) | 10. I | 15. two o'clock |

Drill 8 Transformation: masculine → feminine

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. huw suuri min dimaḥg. | 8. 'antu fi l-jaami9a ? |
| 2. 'ant mu9allim haana ? | 9. 'ant mutazawwij ? |
| 3. 'ana maḥGuul al-yawm. | 10. 9inda walad w-bint. |
| 4. tafaḡḡal 'ijlis! | 11. 'ant maḥGuul ḍalHiin ? |
| 5. 9inak ḥuḡl fi S-SabaaH ? | 12. ḥuḡlak haana ? |
| 6. baarak aLLa fiik! | 13. kayf Haalak ? |
| 7. massaak aLLa b-l-xayr! | 14. SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr! |

Drill 9 Substitution

haaɗa l-jaww naahi kaθiir. 'This weather is very good.'

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. mu9allim | 6. kaatib | 11. saa9a |
| 2. mu9allima | 7. yawm | 12. jaami9a |
| 3. ʃaagi | 8. waziir | 13. mumarriɕa |
| 4. gahwa | 9. Taalib | 14. 'ingiliizi |
| 5. maktab | 10. Tabiib | 15. 'amriiki |

Drill 10 Questions (based on TEXT)

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. maa 'ismi ? | 8. maa ʃuɕli ? |
| 2. min ayn ana ? | 9. fi 'ayy wazara ? |
| 3. 'ana mutazawwij ? | 10. kayf al-jaww fi l-Hodayda ? |
| 4. 9indi walad w-bint ? | 11. 'al-jaww baarid fi S-Sayf ? |
| 5. maa 'ism al-walad ? | 12. 'al-jaww Haami fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ? |
| 6. maa 'ism al-bint ? | 13. kayf al-jaww haana ? |
| 7. 'al-walad fi l-madrasa ? | 14. kayf al-jaww fi San9a ? |

VIII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 9ali : 'ant min San9a ?
 salmaan : maaʃi. 'ana min al-baHrayn.
 9ali : kayf al-baHrayn ?
 salmaan : naahiya, bass al-jaww fi S-Sayf Hama w-ruTuuba.
 9ali : w-fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ?
 salmaan : fi ʃ-ʃitaa' al-jaww naahi kaθiir, maaʃ baarid w-maaʃ
 Haami.
 9ali : haana fi San9a l-jaww naahi fi S-Sayf w-ʃ-ʃitaa', bass fi
 ʃ-ʃitaa' ʃwayya baarid min saa9at xams 'ila "until"
 saa9at 9aʃir.

2. Hasan : 'ant mutazawwij ya yaHya ?
yaHya : 'ii na9am mutazawwij al-Hamdu lillaah w-9indi walad
w-bint.
Hasan : 'al-walad w-l-bint fi l-madrasa ?
yaHya : 'al-walad bass fi l-madrasa.
Hasan : w-l-bint ?
yaHya : 'al-bint fi l-jaami9a, fi jaami9at San9a.
Hasan : 'ant mafGuuî al-yawm ?
yaHya : mafGuul al-yawm aS-SabaaH. 9indi fuGl fi wazaarat
aS-SiHHa.
Hasan : w-Gudwa ?
yaHya : Gudwa l-xamiis 9indi maw9id ma9 mudiir bank ad-damm
saa9at tisi9.

U N I T 1 1

REVIEW

Drill 1 Question -- Answer

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. maa 'ismak ? | 9. maa l-yawm ? |
| 2. min ayn ant ? | 10. 9indak fuGl al-yawm ? |
| 3. kayf Haalak ? | 11. 9indak maw9id al-yawm ? |
| 4. massaaf aLLa b-l-xayr! | 12. f-ayy Hiin ? |
| 5. kayf al-'ahl ? | 13. 'ant ma fGuul al-yawm ? |
| 6. 'anti yamaniyya ? | 14. 'as-saa9a xams 8alHiin ? |
| 7. 'ayn fuGlak ? | 15. 'al-jaww naahi l-yawm ? |
| 8. 'ant mutazawwij ? | 16. Gudwa s-sabt ? |

Drill 2 Transformation: non-definite + definite

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. huw mudiir farika. | 7. mudiir farika 'amriikiyya |
| 2. haa8i mumarri8a. | 8. maktab mudiir madrasa |
| 3. hiy sikirteera fi bank. | 9. Taalib jaami9a |
| 4. Tabiiba fi mustajfa | 10. muwa88af bank |
| 5. waziir yamani | 11. mudiir madrasa |
| 6. mudiir bank 'amriiki | 12. wazaarat SiHHa |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'al-yawm al-jum9a. 'Today is Friday.'

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. yesterday | 7. Thursday | 13. beautiful |
| 2. Saturday | 8. today | 14. hot |
| 3. Monday | 9. Friday | 15. cold |
| 4. tomorrow | 10. Saturday | 16. not hot |
| 5. Tuesday | 11. Sunday | 17. dusty |
| 6. Wednesday | 12. Monday | 18. very hot |

Drill 4 Transformation: statement → question

Use question words. The answer is underlined.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. 'ismi <u>SaaliH bin 9ali.</u> | 8. 'al-jaww <u>Hilw</u> al-yawm. |
| 2. 'al-jaww al-yawm <u>Haami.</u> | 9. 'al-jaww <u>miGbir</u> al-yawm. |
| 3. hiy min <u>Sa9da.</u> | 10. <u>fuGli</u> fi wazaarat aS-SiHHa. |
| 4. hum min wilaayat <u>Mich.</u> | 11. 'al-mudiiir <u>fi l-maktab.</u> |
| 5. 9indi maw9id <u>saa9at xams.</u> | 12. <u>b-xayr</u> <u>fukran.</u> |
| 6. hum min <u>madiinat 'ibb.</u> | 13. 9indi <u>fuGl</u> <u>fi S-SabaaH.</u> |
| 7. <u>'ii na9am. 'al-mudiiir haana.</u> | 14. landan <u>fi 'ingiltara.</u> |

Drill 5 Transformation: masculine → feminine

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 'ana sikirteer. | 9. tafaqqal 'ijlis! |
| 2. huw 'ingiliizi. | 10. maa 'ismak ? |
| 3. 'ant amriiki ? | 11. hum min al-Hodayda. |
| 4. 'al-walad fi l-madrasa. | 12. 'antu min gaTar ? |
| 5. 'isma zayd. | 13. tafaqqali haana! |
| 6. kayf Haalak ? | 14. hum min al-'urdun. |
| 7. SabbaHk aLLa b-l-xayr! | 15. haaða Tabiib al-mustafaa. |
| 8. 'ayn <u>fuGlak</u> ? | 16. haaða mu9allim miSri. |

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 9indi maw9id ma9 al-waziir.

'I have an appointment with the minister.'

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 1. director | 7. today | 13. they (f.) |
| 2. doctor (f.) | 8. at 10:00 | 14. at 7:00 |
| 3. secretary (f.) | 9. he | 15. we |
| 4. manager (f.) | 10. they | 16. today |
| 5. engineer | 11. tomorrow | 17. you (m.p.) |
| 6. employee | 12. minister | 18. in the morning |

Drill 7 Transformation: statement → negative

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. 'al-jaww Haami l-yawm. | 7. 'ana maſGuul Gudwa. |
| 2. 'al-mudiiir haana. | 8. 'Gudwa l-xamiis. |
| 3. 'as-saa9a xams ɔalHiin. | 9. 'al-yawm aθ-θaluuθ. |
| 4. 'al-gahwa baarida. | 10. 'ams al-'aHad. |
| 5. 'al-jaww Hilw fi ſ-ſitaa'. | 11. 'anti yamaniyya. |
| 6. 'al-mu9allim fi l-madrasa. | 12. haaɔa 'iiraani. |

Drill 8 Substitution

'al-jaww baarid al-yawm. 'The weather is cold today.'

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. hot | 6. very cold | 11. hot but fine |
| 2. not hot | 7. not cold | 12. not very hot |
| 3. fine | 8. dusty | 13. not very dusty |
| 4. not fine | 9. very dusty | 14. a little cold |
| 5. very hot | 10. cold but fine | 15. humid |

Drill 9 Transformation: prepositional phrase → nisba adj.

Example: huw min tuunis. → huw tuunisi.

'He is from Tunisia. → He is Tunisian.'

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. 'ana min al-yaman. | 9. xadiija min liibya. |
| 2. faaTima min gaTar. | 10. mHammad min al-baHrayn. |
| 3. 9abdaLLa min al-kuwayt. | 11. Michael min faransa. |
| 4. saara min 'amriika. | 12. Edward min 'almaanya. |
| 5. George min 'ingiltara. | 13. haala min as-suudaan. |
| 6. 9ali min al-9iraag. | 14. zahra min al-yaman. |
| 7. kamaal min lubnaan. | 15. kariim min al-maGrib. |
| 8. maryam min miSr. | 16. yuusif min 'iiTaalya. |

Drill 10 Translation

1. We have an appointment today with the minister at ten o'clock.
2. He is from the city of Tucson in the State of Arizona.
3. It is ten o'clock now. I have an appointment at the Ministry.
4. Yes, the Minister is here. Please sit down! He is busy now.
5. I work as a workman in the Ministry of Public Works, but he works as a nurse in the Blood Bank.
6. I work for the Ministry of Health. My work is very good.
7. The weather is very good today. It is a little dusty but good.
8. In the summer the weather is very hot and very humid.
9. Do you (m.s.) have work tomorrow? Yes, at 8:00 a.m.
10. I am married; I have a boy and a girl. They are in school.

U N I T 12

I. TEXT

titkallam 9arabi ?

- 9abdaLLa : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum !
saami : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
9abdaLLa : ma 'ismak ?
saami : 'ismi saami.
9abdaLLa : kayf Haalak ?
saami : la ba's 'al-Hamdu li-llaah.
9abdaLLa : 'ant min 'ayy bilaad ?
saami : 'ana min 'amriika.
9abdaLLa : min 'ayn fi 'amriika ?
saami : min Tucson fi Arizona.
9abdaLLa : 'ant titkallam 9arabi naahi walla.
saami : maafii. maaf naahi kaθiir 'atkallam 9arabi fwayya bass.
9abdaLLa : kayf al-jaww fi Tucson fi f-fitaa' ?
saami : baarid walaakin naahi fi f-fitaa'. kayf al-jaww haana ?
9abdaLLa : fi f-fitaa' 'al-bard gawi fi San9a fi S-SabaaH bass.
w-S-Sayf fi bilaadkum Haami ?
saami : Haami kaθiir walaakin maabis ruTuuba; naafif.

II. TRANSLATION

Do you Speak Arabic ?

- Abdalla : Peace be upon you!
Sami : Peace be upon you!
Abdalla : What's your name ?
Sami : My name is Sami.
Abdalla : How are you ?
Sami : Not bad. Praise be to God.
Abdalla : Which country are you from ?
Sami : I am from America.

- Abdalla : From where in America?
 Sami : From Tucson, Arizona.
 Abdalla : You really speak Arabic well!
 Sami : No, not very well. I speak a little Arabic only.
 Abdalla : How is the weather in Tucson in the winter?
 Sami : Cold, but nice in the winter. How is the weather here?
 Abdalla : In the winter, it is very cold in Sanaa, only in the morning. Is the summer hot in your country?
 Sami : Very hot, but there is no humidity; it is dry.

III. VOCABULARY

bilaa	country	'atkallam	I speak
titkallam	you (m.s.) speak	gawi	strong; very
9arabi	Arabic	maabif	there is not, there aren't
naahi	well (adv.)	naafif	dry
waLLa	honestly, indeed		

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

'adrus	I study, am studying
'at9allam	I learn, am learning
'aktub	I write, am writing
'ar-rabii9	spring (season)
'al-xariif	autumn, fall
faSl	season p. <u>fuSuul</u>
sana	year
maTar	rain

V. GRAMMAR

Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The two verb tenses in SA, imperfect and perfect, roughly correspond to the English present and past tenses. The verb 'atkallam

'I speak' is made up of a subject-marker 'a-, referring to 'I' and a stem -tkallam-, corresponding to the English infinitive 'to speak'. Below is a sample conjugation of the verb -tkallam-:

<u>PRONOUN</u>	<u>VERB</u>	<u>AFFIX</u>
huw	yitkallam	y--
hiy	titkallam	t--
'ant	titkallam	t--
'anti	titkallami	t--i
'ana	'atkallam	'a--
hum	yitkallamu	y--u
hir	yitkallamayn	y--ayn
'antu	titkallamu	t--u
'antayn	titkallamayn	t--ayn
'iHna	nitkallam	n--

Note that the vowel -i- is inserted between the imperfect stem -tkallam- and the subject marker. This vowel is sometimes -u-, depending on the vowel before the last consonant in the imperfect stem, which is called the stem vowel. If the stem vowel is -u-, the vowel of the subject marker is -u-; otherwise it is -i-. Examples:

-drus- yudrus 'he studies; he is studying'
 -ktub- yuktub 'he writes; he is writing'
 -t9allam- yit9allam 'he learns; he is learning'

A few verbs take -a- after the subject marker, which will be pointed out.

Sometimes the imperfect tense of the verb may have a b-/bi- denoting a co-occurring action in the present or past. Thus:
 w-huw bi-yitkallam 9rabi 'and he speaks Arabic' or 'he was speaking Arabic.'

huw bi-yitkallam 9arabi ɣalHiin. 'He is speaking Arabic now.'
 huw yitkallam 9arabi naahi. 'He (usually) speaks Arabic well.'

The imperfect tense in SA expresses the following meanings:

- a. habitual: 'atkallam 9arabi kull yawm. 'I speak Arabic every day.'
- b. general truth value ("generic", "dispositional", etc.): 'atkallam 9arabi naahi. 'I speak Arabic well.'
- c. progressive: bi-yitkallam 9arabi ɣalHiin. 'He is speaking arabic now.'
- d. future: bi-yitkallam Gudwa ? 'Will he, is he going to speak tomorrow?'

Note: The verb normally occurs without an independent pronoun, but the latter may be used for emphasis.

NOTE ON TEXT

waLLa 'indeed, really' (lit., 'by God, honest to God') is frequently used in SA before or after words, phrases, and sentences for emphasis:

'al-yawm bard.	'It is cold today.
'ii waLLa bard gawi.	'Yes, indeed. It's very cold.'
waLLa ma ʒGuul kaθiir.	'I am really very busy.'
waLLa 9indi gahwa.	'I do indeed have coffee.'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

S ₁ : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!	'Peace be upon you!'
S ₂ : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.	'And peace be upon you!'
S ₁ : kayf Haalak ?	'How are you ?'
S ₂ : la ba's. 'al-Hamdu li-llaah.	'Not bad. Praise be to God.'

Drill 2 Substitution

'ant titkallam ma9 al-mudhir. 'You speak with the manager.'

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. engineer | 6. 9ali | 11. employee (f.) |
| 2. minister | 7. mHammad | 12. faaTima |
| 3. employee | 8. nurse (f.) | 13. 9abdaLLa |
| 4. doctor (f.) | 9. clerk | 14. workman |
| 5. teacher (f.) | 10. secretary (f.) | 15. 9aa'isa |

Drill 3 Substitution

b-atkallam ma9 al-mudhir. 'I am speaking with the manager.' Use substitutions from Drill 2 above.

Drill 4 Repetition

1. huw bi-yitkallam 9arabi naahi.
2. hum bi-yitkallamu 9arabi naahi.
3. hiy bi-titkallam 9arabi naahi.
4. hin bi-yitkallamayn 9arabi naahi.
5. 'ant bi-titkallam 9arabi naahi.
6. 'antu bi-titkallamu 9arabi naahi.
7. 'anti bi-titkallami 9arabi naahi.
8. 'antayn bi-titkallamayn 9arabi naahi.
9. 'ana b-atkallam 9arabi naahi.
10. 'iHna bi-nitkallam 9arabi naahi.

Drill 5 Repetition

Repeat the sentences in Drill 4 above with the verb yuktub or bi-yuktub 'He writes (is writing).'

Drill 6 Transformation: Conjugation

huw yitkallam 9arabi naahi. 'He speaks Arabic well.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1. hum | 6. 'anti | 11. hin |
| 2. hiy | 7. 'antayn | 12. 'antu |
| 3. hin | 8. 'ana | 13. hiy |
| 4. 'ant | 9. 'iHna | 14. huw |
| 5. 'antu | 10. huw | 15. 'antayn |

Drill 7 Transformation: Conjugation

bi-yitkallam 9arabi jwayya. 'He speaks a little Arabic.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------|
| 1. 'ant | 6. 'antu | 11. 'ana |
| 2. 'ana | 7. 'iHna | 12. hiy |
| 3. hum | 8. huw | 13. hin |
| 4. hin | 9. 'antayn | 14. hum |
| 5. 'anti | 10. 'anti | 15. 'antayn |

Drill 8 Chain

T : kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? 'How is the weather today?'

S : waLLa baarid. 'It's really cold.'

Use the following in the answer:

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. hot and dry | 7. not very good |
| 2. cold but nice | 8. neither hot nor cold |
| 3. hot but wet | 9. hot and dusty |
| 4. very good | 10. hot but dry |
| 5. not bad | 11. not bad |
| 6. hot but dry | 12. not dusty |

Drill 9 Transformation: Conjugation

waLLa huw bi-yudrus 9arabi. 'He is studying Arabic.'

Use substitutions from Drill 7 above.

Drill 10 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: yitkallam 9arabi naani. 'He speaks Arabic well.'

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. hiy | 6. yit9allamu | 11. tuktubayn |
| 2. 'ana | 7. hin | 12. 'ana |
| 3. 'aktub | 8. 'ant | 13. huw |
| 4. hiy | 9. 'anti | 14. 'iHna |
| 5. hum | 10. 'antayn | 15. 'antu |

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 9ali : 'antu bi-tudrusu 9arabi 9alHiin ?
 Hasan : ii na9am kulluna bi-nudrus saa9a fi l-yawm.
 9ali : fi l-jaami9a 'aw fi l-madrassa ? ('aw "or")
 Hasan : fi l-jaami9a.
 9ali : fi 'ayy jaami9a ?
 Hasan : fi jaami9at San9a.

2. faaTima : kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi S-Sayf ?
 kariima : fi S-Sayf riyaaH w-maTar jwayya.
 faaTima : maabi9 ruTuuba ?
 kariima : ma9i. 'ar-ruTuuba fi l-Hodayda fi faSl aS-Sayf.
 faaTima : w-fi r-rabii9 ?
 kariima : 'al-jaww fi San9a naahi fi kull fuSuul as-sana. fi faSl
 aS-Sayf w-faSl al-xariif w-faSl 'a9-9itaa' w-faSl
 ar-rabii9.

U N I T 1 3

I. TEXT

taksi (i)

- 9abd al-9aziiz : taksi!
'as-sawwaag : 'ayn tiſti truuh ?
9abd al-9aziiz : 'aſti 'aruuh la-fundug af-ſeraton. kam tiſti
la-l-fundug ?
'as-sawwaag : 9iſriin ryaal.
9abd al-9aziiz : maafi. 9iſriin ryaal kaøiir. b-adfa9 xamsTa9jar
ryaal bass.
'as-sawwaag : Tayyib tafaſſal!
9abd ai-9aziiz : tafaſſal haaði 9iſriin ryaal.
'as-sawwaag : tafaſſal 'al-baagi xamsa ryaal.
9abd al-9aziiz : haaði ryaalayn lak!
'as-sawwaag : ſukran. ma9 as-salaama!
9abd al-9aziiz : sallamak aLLaah.

II. TRANSLATION

Taxi (i)

- Abd Al-Aziz : Taxi!
Cab Driver : Where do you want to go?
Abd Al-Aziz : I want to go to the Sheraton Hotel. How much do you
want to the hotel?
Cab Driver : Twenty riyals.
Abd Al-Aziz : No, twenty riyals is a lot. I'll pay fifteen riyals
only.
Cab Driver : O.K. Hop in!
Abd Al-Aziz : Here you are! This is twenty riyals.
Cab Driver : Here! The remainder is five riyals.
Abd Al-Aziz : This is two riyals for you!

Cab Driver : Thanks! Goodbye!
 Abd Al-Aziz : Goodbye.

III. VOCABULARY

taksi	taxicab	fundug	hotel
sawwaag	driver	9i9riin	twenty
kam ?	How many? How much?	ryaal	riyal
tisti	you (m.s.) want, like	'adfa9	I pay
truuH	you (m.s.) go	xamsTa9far	fifteen
'asti	I want	Tayyib	O.K.
'aruuH	I go	baagi	remainder; change
la	to (prep), var. <u>'ila</u>	ryaalayn	two riyals

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

Hda9f/-ar	eleven	əalaaθiin	thirty
'iθna9f/-ar	twelve	'arba9iin	forty
əalaaθTa9f/-ar	thirteen	xamsiin	fifty
'arba9Ta9f/-ar	fourteen	sittiin	sixty
siTTa9f/-ar	sixteen	sab9iin	seventy
saba9Ta9f/-ar	seventeen	θamaaniin	eighty
θamaanTa9f/-ar	eighteen	tis9iin	ninety
tisa9Ta9f/-ar	nineteen	duulaar	dollar
		diinaar	dinar

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbs-Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems of the verbs presented in this lesson are -sti- 'to want, like', -ruuH- 'to go' and -dfa9- 'to pay'. -sti- 'to want' and -dfa9- 'to pay' are conjugated like -tkallam- (UNIT 12). -ruuH- 'to go' is not usually used with the vowel -i- before the subject marker. Below is a conjugation of -sti-:

huw yisti	hum yistu
hiy tisti	hin yistayn
'ant tisti	'antu tistu
'anti tisti	'antayn tistayn
'ana 'asti	'ihna nisti

2. The Double Imperfect Construction

Note that double imperfect tenses of two verbs are used in SA for the verb + infinitive in English. Both verbs agree with the subject:

'asti 'aruuh.	'I want/would like to go.'
yistu yruuhu.	'They (m.) want to go.'
nisti nudrus 9arabi.	'We want to study 'Arabic.'

3. The Dual

In English, nouns are either singular or plural; in SA they are singular, dual, or plural. The dual in SA is formed by adding the suffix -ayn to a masculine noun and -tayn to a feminine noun ending with -a:

ryaal 'one riyal'	- - - - -	ryaalayn 'two riyals'
sawwaag 'one driver'	- - - - -	sawwaagayn 'two drivers'
sana 'one year'	- - - - -	sanatayn 'two years'
jarika 'one company'	- - - - -	jarikatayn 'two companies'

Feminine nouns not ending with -a take -ayn and masculine nouns ending with -a take -yayn as dual suffixes:

uxt 'one sister'	- - - - -	'uxtayn 'two sisters'
mustaffa 'one hospital'	- - - - -	mustaffayayn 'two hospitals'

4. Cardinal Numerals

a. The numerals for 'one' and 'two' have two forms each, a masculine form and a feminine form, depending upon the noun they modify or refer to:

9indi walad waaHid.	'I have one son.'
9indi bint waaHida.	'I have one daughter.'
'i0nayn haana w-0intayn fi l-madrasa.	'Two (m.) are here and two (f.) are in school.'

waaHid and 'i0nayn and their feminine forms, i.e., waaHida and 0intayn follow the noun they modify: walad waaHid 'one boy' and bintayn 0intayn 'two girls'.

b. 0alaa0a -- 9a/sara. The numerals 'three' through 'ten' precede the noun they modify and the noun is plural; if that noun is a unit of money, however, it is left in the singular:

xamsa ryaal	'five riyals'
tis9a diinaar	'nine dinars'
'arba9at fuSuul	'four seasons'

Note that 'arba9a 'four' becomes 'arba9at in the third example because it is the first term of the construct.

c. Hda9f/-ar -- tisa9Ta9f/-ar

The cardinal numerals 11-19 end in -a9f/-9sar or -Ta9f/-Ta9sar. The first part of each of these cardinals is derived from the cardinals 1-9 with appropriate changes. It is best to learn them as independent vocabulary items. If these numerals are followed by nouns (not units of money), they end with -9sar or -Ta9sar. In counting, for example, you say either Hda9f or Hda9sar, but you say only Hda9sar walad 'eleven

boys', etc. The noun counted is always singular, not plural as in English.

d. 9isriin 'twenty', θalaaθiin 'thirty', 'arba9iin 'forty', etc., also take a singular noun after them:

9isriin saagi	'twenty workmen'
xamsiin mu9allim	'fifty teachers'
tis9iin 9aa'ila	'ninety families'

5. kam 'how many? how much?'

kam is used with a countable noun, e.g., riyal, school, etc., or a noncountable noun, e.g., money, food, etc. The noun following kam is singular indefinite, not plural as in English:

kam ryaal tisti ? 'How many riyals do you (m.s.) want?'

kam may be followed by a verb, in which case it means "how many (e.g., pounds, pieces, etc.)" or "how much":

kam tisti ? 'How many do you want?'

 'How much do you want?'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

a. 'aſti 'aruuh la-fundug aſ-ſeraton
I want to go to the Sheraton Hotel.'

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|
| 1. l-fundug | 8. fundug al-hilton |
| 2. fundug saba' | 9. bank ad-damm |
| 3. l-jaami9a | 10. l-bank al-'amriiki |
| 4. jaami9at San9a | 11. baab al-yaman |

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 5. mustaſfa l-kuwayt | 12. fundug daar al-Hamd |
| 6. wazaarat aS-SiHHa | 13. ſarikat Phillips |
| 7. wazaarat al-'aſGaal | 14. ma9aak |

- b. huw yiſti yruuH la-fundug aſ-ſeraton.
'He wants to go to the Sheraton Hotel'

Use substitutions from a. above.

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'aſti 'aruH la-l-fundug. 'I want to go to the hotel.'

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. he | 6. today | 11. at 8:00 |
| 2. now | 7. we | 12. they (f.) |
| 3. the bank | 8. they (f.) | 13. you (m.p.) |
| 4. at 10:00 | 9. the hospital | 14. I |
| 5. she | 10. tomorrow | 15. the ministry |

Drill 3 a. Repetition

Hda9ſ	'i0na9ſ	0alaa0Ta9ſ	'arba9Taſ	xamaſTa9ſ
ſiTta9ſ	saba9Ta9ſ	0amaanTa9ſ	tisa9Ta9ſ	9iſriin

6. T writes, e.g., 15 on the board; individual students are asked to give the SA word for 15, i.e. xamaſTa9ſ.

Drill 4 a. Repetition

9iſriin	0alaa0iin	'arba9iin	xamiin
ſittiin	sab9iin	0amaaniin	tis9iin

- b. T writes, e.g., 50 on one board; individual students are asked to give the SA word for fifty, i.e., xamiin.

Drill 5 Identification

Individual students give the SA words for the following:

30	90	60	40	20	70
15	13	12	19	11	14
2	10	9	6	1	50
8	3	80	17	5	80
70	4	16	7	90	15

Drill 6 Chain

- S₁ : kam tidfa9 ? 'How much will you pay?'
 T : xamsa ryaal. 'five riyals'
 S₂ : 'adfa9 xamsa ryaal bass. 'I'll pay five riyals only.'

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. 10 riyals | 6. \$20 | 11. \$9 |
| 2. 6 riyals | 7. 2 riyals | 12. 90 riyals |
| 3. 20 dinars | 8. 8 riyals | 13. 2 dinars |
| 4. 90 dinars | 9. 50 dinars | 14. 18 riyals |
| 5. 15 riyals | 10. the remainder | 15. \$2 |

Drill 7 Transformation: singular → dual

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. ryaal | 7. jaami9a | 13. mu9allima |
| 2. diinaar | 8. bint | 14. Tabiiba |
| 3. duulaar | 9. fundug | 15. mustajfa |
| 4. mustajfa | 10. sawwaag | 16. faSi |
| 5. 'uxt | 11. xamsa | 17. 9aa'ila |
| 6. madrasa | 12. jaay, | 18. Sadiiga |

Drill 8 Substitution

'al-baagi xamsiin ryaal. 'The remainder is fifty riyals.'

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. one riyal | 5. 90 dinars | 9. two tens |
| 2. two riyals | 6. one dinar | 10. eight riyals |
| 3. six dinars | 7. 11 riyals | 11. 17 dinars |
| 4. \$20 | 8. \$10 | 12. \$7 |

Drill 9 Question -- Answer

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. kayf Haalis ya zahra ? | 7. kayf al-jaww al-yawm ? |
| 2. kam as-saa9a 9alHiin ? | 8. 'ant bi-tit9allam 9arabi ? |
| 3. kam tidfa9 ? | 9. hiy bi-tudrus 'ingiliizi ? |
| 4. 'ayn tifti truuH ? | 10. kam duulaar tifti ? |
| 5. kam walad yindi9 ? | 11. 'ayn tudrus 9arabi ? |
| 6. bi-titkallam 9arabi ? | 12. huw bi-yuktub 9arabi ? |

Drill 10 Translation

1. I have five riyals. I'll pay only four riyals.
2. Five riyals is a lot. How much do you want to pay?
3. He wants to go to the Sheraton Hotel. How much?
4. All right. Hop in! I am the cab driver.
5. How many children do you have? How many boys and how many girls?
6. How many hospitals are there in Sanaa?
7. How many riyals do you want to pay ?
8. This is \$10.00. Seven dollars is for the cab driver. How much is the remainder?
9. I do not want the remainder. The remainder is for you.
10. Would you like to learn Arabic at Sanaa University?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 'ibraahiim : 'ayn as-sawwaag ?
yaHya : 'ana sawwaag at-taksi ? maa tifti ?
'ibraahiim : 'asti 'aruuh la-baab al-yaman. kam ryaal ?
yaHya : 9afara ryaal bass.
'ibraahiim : maafi. kaθiir.
yaHya : kam tidfa9 ?
'ibraahiim : b-adfa9 sab9a ryaal.
yaHya : Tayyib tafaṣṣal!

2. huda : bi-tit9allami 9arabi ḡalHiin ya muna ?
muna : b-adrus 9arabi fi madrasa fi ta9izz.
huda : kam saa9a fi l-yawm bi-tudrusi 9arabi ?
muna : saa9a waaHida bass.
huda : fiS-SabaaH 'aw fi l-masaa' ?
muna : fi l-masaa' saa9at xams.
huda : ḡalHiin 'anti bi-titkallami 9arabi naahi. bi-tuktubi
9arabi ?
muna : 'asti 'aktub bass maaf ḡalHiin.

U N I T 1 4

I. TEXT

taksi (ii)

- Hasan : 'asti 'aruuh wazaarat at-tarbiya.
'as-sawwaag : Tayyib. tafaḡḡal!
Hasan : kam ta'xuḡ ?
'as-sawwaag : 9afara ryaal.
Hasan : maafi. 'addii-lak xamsa ryaal bass.
'as-sawwaag : xamsa ryaal w-ryaalayn sab9a ryaal. si9r al-Hukuuma.
Hasan : Tayyib.
'as-sawwaag : 'ant min gaTar ?
Hasan : maafi. min as-su9uudiyya.
'as-sawwaag : haaḡi 'awwal marra tiji San9a ?
Hasan : laa, haaḡi ḡaaliḡ marra.
'as-sawwaag : kam lak fi l-yaman ?
Hasan : gad-li kaḡiir haana. 9afarat siniin.
'as-sawwaag : 'ayn ti9mal ?
Hasan : 'a9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
'as-sawwaag : nfaalla 'i9jabatkum San9a ?
Hasan : San9a Haaliya. 'i9jabatni kaḡiir. 'ana mirtaaH haana.

II. TRANSLATION

Taxi (ii)

- Hasan : I want to go to the Ministry of Education.
Cab Driver : O.K. Hop in!
Hasan : How much will you take?
Cab Driver : Ten riyals.
Hasan : No. I'll give you only five riyals.
Cab Driver : Five riyals and two riyals is seven riyals. (It's) the government tariff.

- Hasan : O.K.
 Cab Driver : Are you from Qatar?
 Hasan : No, I am from Saudi Arabia.
 Cab Driver : Is this the first time you come to Sanaa?
 Hasan : No, this is the third time.
 Cab Driver : How long have you been in Yemen?
 Hasan : I have been here for a long time. Ten years.
 Cab Driver : Where do you work?
 Hasan : I work for the Ministry of Education.
 Cab Driver : I hope you liked Sanaa?
 Hasan : Sanaa is beautiful. I like it very much. I am comfortable here.

III. VOCABULARY

tarbiya	education	tiji	you (m.s.) come
wazaarat	ministry of	θaaliθ	the third
at-tarbiya	education	kam lak ?	How long have you (m.s.) been ?
ta'xuθ	you (m.s.) take		
'addii-lak	I give you (m.s.)	siniin	years
si9r	price; tariff	ti9mal	you (m.s.) work
Hukuuma	government	'i9jabatkum	you (m.p.) liked it (f.)
'awwal	the first	Haaliya	beautiful; nice (f.)
marra	time; once	'i9jabatni	I liked it (f.)
		mirtaaH	comfortable

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

θaani	the second	taasi9	the ninth
raabi9	the fourth	9aasir	the tenth
xaamis	the fifth	kaali	beautiful; nice (m.)
saadis	the sixth	'ayyaam	days (s. <u>yawm</u>)
saabi9	the seventh	yistaGil	he works
θaamin	the eighth	hownaak	there, over there

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect verb stems -9mal- 'to work' and -ftaGil- 'to work' take -i- as a helping vowel. These two verbs are used almost interchangeably; -ftaGil- tends to be more commonly used in connection with manual labor. They are regular and conjugated like -t'allam- 'to speak'.

The stem -ji- 'to come' drops -i- when the suffixes -i, -u and -ayn are added:

'anti	tiji	'you (f.s.) come.'
hum	yiju	'they (m.) come.'
hin	yijayn	'they (f.) come.'
'antayn	tijayn	'you (f.p.) come.'

The stem -'addi- 'to give', like ji 'to come' drops -i- when the suffixes -i, -u and -ayn are added:

'anti	t'addi	'you (f.s.) give'
hum	y'addu	'they (m.) give'
'antayn	t'addayn	'you (f.p.) give'

The imperfect verb stem -'xuδ- 'to take' takes the stem vowel -a-:

huw ya'xuδ.	'He takes.'	hiy ta'xuδ.	'She takes.'
'antu ta'xuδu.	'You (m.p.) take.'	hin ya'xuδayn.	'They (f.) take.'

Note that the form with 'ana is 'aaxuδ rather than *'a'xuδ.

2. Ordinals

Ordinals are derived from cardinals. The derivations of 'awwal 'the first' and θaani 'the second' from waaHid 'one' and 'iθnayn 'two' are irregular. θaaliθ 'the third' through 9aaʃir 'the tenth', derived from θalaaθa 'three' through 9aʃara 'ten', are fairly regular. They are formed according to the pattern C₁aaC₂iC₃, except for saadis 'the sixth' from sitta 'six':

<u>Cardinal</u>		<u>Ordinal</u>	
θalaaθa	'three'	θaaliθ	'the third'
xamsa	'five'	xaamis	'the fifth'
θamaaniya	'eight'	θaamin	'the eighth'

Ordinals can either precede or follow the noun they modify. In this lesson they precede singular nouns, in which case they are not inflected for gender:

'awwal mu9allim	'the first teacher (m.)'
'awwal mu9allima	'the first teacher (f.)'
'awwal mu9allimatayn	'the first two teachers (f.)'
'awwal waladayn	'the first two boys'

3. Special Constructions

a. 'i9jab is a perfect tense verb. It literally means 'to please, be pleasing to'. 'i9jabatak San9a ?, literally "Did Sanaa please you (m.s.)?", is equivalent to 'Did you (m.s.) like Sanaa?' in polished English. The suffix -ak is the object of the verb 'i9jab and it refers to the subject of the polished English sentence, i.e., you. So, instead of saying, e.g., I liked the city, say: The city pleased me: 'al-madiina 'i9jabatni or 'i9jabatni l-madiina. If the subject is masculine singular, say 'i9jabni ... for 'I liked'; if it is feminine singular, say 'i9jabatni:

'i9jabni l-jaww. 'I liked the weather.'
 'i9jabatni San9a. 'I liked Sanaa.'

The rest of the object pronouns suffixed to 'i9jab are the same as those suffixed to nouns:

'i9jabhum 'They (m.) liked it, him.'
 'i9jabna 'We liked it, him.'
 'i9jabkayn 'You (f.p.) liked it, him.'

b. Learn kam lak haana ? 'How long have you (m.s.) been here?' as a formula for the time being. Other forms are :

kam liſ haana ? 'How long have you (f.s.) been here?'
 kam lakum haana ? 'How long have you (m.p.) been here ?'
 kam laha haana ? 'How long has she been here?'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Repetition

'awwal	θaani	θaaliθ	raabi9	xaamis
saadis	saabi9	θaamin	taasi9	9aafir

Drill 2 Transformation: cardinal → ordinal

T : sana waaHida 'one year'
 S : 'awwal sana 'the first year'

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. sawwaag waaHid | 7. marrɹ waaHida |
| 2. 'arba9at fuSuul | 8. marratayn |
| 3. sanatayn | 9. 9aſarat 'ayyaam |
| 4. bintayn | 10. jaami9a waaHida |
| 5. xamsat siniin | 11. mu9allimayn |
| 6. fundug waaHid | 12. θalaaθat 'ayyaam |

Drill 3 a. Repetition

1. haasi 'awwal marra 'aji San9a.
'This is the first time I come to Sanaa.'
2. haasi 0aani marra 'aji San9a.
3. haasi 0aali0 marra 'aji San9a.
4. haasi raabi9 marra 'aji San9a.
5. haasi xaamis marra 'aji San9a.
6. haasi saadis marra 'aji San9a.
7. haasi saabi9 marra 'aji San9a.
8. haasi 0aamin marra 'aji San9a.
9. haasi taasi9 marra 'aji San9a.
10. haasi 9aafir marra 'aji San9a.

b. Chain

T : three

S : haasi 0aali0 marra 'aji San9a.

'This is the third time I come to Sanaa.'

Drill 4 ChainS₁ : kam lak fi l-yaman ? 'How long have you been in Yemen?'

T : 0alaa0at siniin. 'three years.'

S₂ : gad-li 0alaa0at siniin haana bass.

'I have been here three years only.'

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. sanatayn | 6. yawm waaHid |
| 2. 'arba9at siniin | 7. yawmayn |
| 3. xamsat siniin | 8. 0amaaniyat siniin |
| 4. gad-li ka0iir | 9. sana waaHida |
| 5. sittat 'ayyaam | 10. 9ifriin yawm |

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

huw yaji min al-madrasa saa9at 0alaa0.

'He comes from school at 3 o'clock.

- | | | |
|----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. hiy | 5. 2 o'clock | 9. hin |
| 2. 'ant | 6. 1 o'clock | 10. 'a9-suGI |
| 3. 'ana | 7. 4 o'clock | 11. 'anti |
| 4. 'iHna | 8. hum | 12. 'antayn |

Drill 6 a. Repetition

1. huw yi9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
'He works in the Ministry of Education.'
2. hum yi9malu fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
3. hiy ti9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
4. hin yi9malayn fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
5. 'ant ti9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
6. 'antu ti9malu fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
7. 'anti ti9mali fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
8. 'antayn ti9malayn fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
9. 'ana 'a9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
10. 'iHna ni9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.

- b. Substitute yi9staGil 'he works' in a. above.

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: yi9mal fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.

'He works in the Ministry of Education.'

- | | | |
|--------------|------------------|-----------|
| 1. hum | 6. bank al-yaman | 11. 'ana |
| 2. hiy | 7. 'anti | 12. haana |
| 3. ti9staGil | 8. 'al-fundug | 13. huw |

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 4. 'antu | 9. 'al-madrasa | 14. 'iHna |
| 5. 'al-mustajfa | 10. ti9mali | 15. bank ad-damm |

Drill 8 Repetition

- a. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatni kaθiir.
'I like Yemen a lot.'

1. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatna kaθiir.
2. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatha kaθiir.
3. 'al-yaman 'i9jabathayn kaθiir.
4. 'al-yaman 'i9jabata kaθiir.
5. 'al-yaman 'i9jabathum kaθiir.
6. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatak kaθiir.
7. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatkum kaθiir.
8. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatkayn kaθiir.
9. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatif kaθiir.
10. 'al-yaman 'i9jabatni kaθiir.

- b. Substitute 'al-mu9allim 'the teacher' for 'al-yaman in a. above.

Drill 9 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'addi-lak 9afara ryaal bass.

'I will give you (m.s.) ten riyals only.'

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. you (m.p.) | 5. her | 9. him |
| 2. you (f.s.) | 6. them (m.) | 10. you (f.p.) |
| 3. 18 riyals | 7. them (f.) | 11. two riyals |
| 4. two riyals | 8. 20 riyals | 12. you (m.s.) |

Drill 10 Translation

1. I like Yemen a lot. I have been here for five years. I am very comfortable.

2. The first hospital here is the Government Hospital.
3. She has been here for two years only. She works as a secretary for the Ministry of Education.
4. Twenty riyals isn't much. I'll give you thirty riyals.
5. Here you are. The remainder, five riyals, is for you.
6. You are an American, but you speak Arabic well. Are you studying Arabic here? Do you write Arabic?
7. Yes, indeed. I am studying Arabic. I have been studying Arabic for two years.
8. Do you like the weather here in the summer?
9. To tell the truth, it is very hot and very humid here in the summer; the winter is very nice.
10. Are you married? Is the family with you? How many children do you have?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : truuHi la-ta9izz ya xadiija ?
 xadiija : laa. 'aruuH la-l-Hodayda. 'axi w-'uxti hownaak.
 tagiyya : tirja9i Gudwa ?
 xadiija : yawm ar-rabuu9 n/saALLa.
 tagiyya : Tayyib ma9 as-salaama ya xadiija.
 xadiija : sallami/ aLLa.

2. 9abd al-gaadir : 'ayn tisti 'aruuH ?
 yaHya : 'asti 'aruuH la-'amriika.
 9abd al-gaadir : maa tisti ti9mal hownaak ?
 yaHya : 'asti 'adrus 'ingiliizi w-tarbiya.
 9abd al-gaadir : fi 'ayy jaami9a ?
 yaHya : fi jaami9at Arizona.
 9abd al-gaadir : bi-ta'xu6 al-9aa'ila ma9aak ?
 yaHya : maa/ 6alHiin. bi-yiju fi /-sitaa' n/saALLa.
 9abd al-gaadir : 'a/-sitaa' fi Arizona naahi ?
 yaHya : naahi ka9iir.

U N I T 1 5

I. TEXT

mHammad mariiḡ

- mHammad : SabaaH al-xayr ya 'ax yuusif!
yuusif : 'ahlan wa sahan! tafaḡḡal 'ijlis!
mHammad : Sukran.
yuusif : tisti tisrab say'? Saahi, kaafi, bunn, gahwat gisr ?
mHammad : Saahi law samaHt.
yuusif : kayf Haalak ? kayf al-'ahl ? 'ays ti9mal ?
mHammad : 'al-'ahl kulluhum b-xayr, bass 'ana maaf naahi. mariiḡ
w-9indi Haraara.
yuusif : 'aLLaah yiddii-lak aS-SiHHa w-l-9aafiya! ruH la-T-Tabiib!
mHammad : 'al-yawm 9indi maw9id ma9 aT-Tabiib yaHya saa9at 9intayn
'illa rub9 ba9d aḡ-ḡuhr. xaaTirkum.
yuusif : ma9 as-salaama.

II. TRANSLATION

Muhammad Is Ill

- Muhammad : Good morning, brother Yusif!
Yusif : Welcome! Please sit down!
Muhammad : Thank you.
Yusif : Would you like to drink something: tea, coffee, Yemeni
coffee, gisr coffee?
Muhammad : Tea, if you please.
Yusif : How are you? How is the family? What are you doing?
Muhammad : All of the family are well, but I am not well. I am ill and
running a temperature.
Yusif : God give you good health! Go to the doctor!
Muhammad : Today, I have an appointment with Dr. Yahya t a quarter to
two in the afternoon. Goodbye!
Yusif : Goodbye.

III. VOCABULARY

SabaaH al-xayr!	Good morning!	'ayf?	what?
tifrab	you (m.s.) drink	ti9mal	you (m.s.) do, make
ʃay'	something; anything	mariiṣ	ill, sick
ʃaahi	tea	Haraara	temperature; heat
kaafi	(Western) coffee	ruH!	Go (m.s.)!
bunn	(Yemeni) coffee	'illa	except; to (e.g.,
giʃr	skin (e.g., of		quarter of five)
	coffee beans	rub9	one-fourth
law	if	ba9d	after (prep.)
samaHt	you (m.s.) allowed,	ṣuhr	noon, noontime
	permitted		

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

Haliiib	milk	ṯalaaṯmiya	300
yurt	yogurt	'arba9miya	400
biira	beer	xamsmiya	500
sukkar	sugar	sitmiya	600
mee'	water	saba9miya	700
nuSS	half	ṯamaanmiya	800
ṯiliiṯ	one-third	tisa9miya	900
gabl	before (prep.)	'alf	1,000
miya	100	'alfayn	2,000
miyatayn	200	ṯalaaṯa 'alf	3,000
	kam as-saa9a ?		What time is it?

V. GRAMMAR

1. Imperatives

The imperative is used in giving commands, i.e., in telling or asking someone or a group of people to do something, e.g., ruH! 'Go (m.s.)!' and tafaṣṣal 'ijlis! 'Please sit down (m.s.)!' There are

four imperative forms in SA: masculine singular, masculine plural, feminine singular, and feminine plural. Nearly all the imperative forms are formed from the imperfect stems of verbs. The masculine singular form of the imperative is the base of all the other forms. The following rules pertain to the formation of the masculine singular imperative from the imperfect stems we have had so far:

a. If the stem vowel (the vowel between the second and the third radical) is -u-, the prefix is 'u-; otherwise it is 'i-. This rule applies to stems that have three consonants or radicals only.

-dfa9- → 'idfa9 ! 'Pay (m.s.)!' -drus- → 'udrus! 'Study (m.s.)!'
 -ddi- → 'iddi ! 'Give (m.s.)!' -ktub- → 'uktub! 'write (m.s.)!'
 -9mal- → 'i9mal ! 'Do (m.s.)!'

b. If the stem has more than three consonants, i- is prefixed optionally:

-sta9il- → ('i)sta9il! 'Work (m.s.)!'
 -t9allam- → ('i)t9allam ! 'Learn (m.s.)!'
 -tkallam- → ('i)tkallam ! 'Speak (m.s.)!'

c. The imperative forms of -ruuH- 'to go', -xuδ- 'to take', and -ji- 'to come' are: ruH !, xuδ !, and ta9aal !. Learn them, for the time being as independent items.

The masculine plural form (said to two or more people) takes the suffix -u:

'i9rab ! → 'i9rabu ! ta9aal ! → ta9aalu !
 'ijlis ! → 'ijlisu ! xuδ ! → xuδu !

The feminine singular and plural forms of the imperative are formed by adding -i and -ayn, respectively, to the base form:

'iʃrab ! + 'iʃrabi + 'iʃrabayn
 'udrus ! + 'udrusi + 'udrusayn !
 xuδ ! + xuδi + xuδayn !
 ta9aal ! + ta9aali + ta9aalayn !

2. Telling Time

The word saa9a 'hour; clock; watch' is used in asking and stating the time:

kam as-saa9a ? 'What time is it?'
 'as-saa9a xams. or: 'It's five o'clock'
 saa9at xams.

Up to and including the half hour, minutes are added to the hour by using the proper numeral after w- 'and', between the half hour and the next hour they are subtracted from the next hour by using 'illa 'except'. If the time is 'thirty-five minutes past ...' or 'thirty-five minutes to ...', it is usually expressed by w-nuSS w-xams or w-nuSS illa xams. The fractions rub9, θilθ, and nuSS are usually used for a quarter of an hour, a third of an hour, and a half hour, respectively. The word for minutes is seldom used.

'as-saa9a xams w-9aʃir. 'It's 5:10' or
 saa9at xams w-9aʃir.
 'as-saa9a xams 'illa 9aʃir. 'It's 4:50.' or
 saa9at xams 'illa 9aʃir.

'aS-SabaaH 'in the morning' is usually up to but not including noon. Noon is literally 'aδ-δuhr. ba9d aδ-δuhr is usually any time after twelve-noon up to 4:00 or 5:00 p.m. After 5:00 p.m. it is 'al-masaa' 'in the evening' or simply 'p.m.'.

'aji s-saa9a tis9 aS-SabaaH. 'I come at 9:00 a.m.'
 'aji s-saa9a 'iθna9ʃ aδ-δuhr. 'I come at 12:00 noon.'

'aji s-saa9a waaHida ba9d aḡ-ḡahr. 'I come at 1:00 p.m.'

'aji s-saa9a xams al-masaa'. 'I come at 5:00 p.m.'

3. Cardinal Numerals

a. miya, miyatayn, - - - tisa9miya

The hundreds, except miya 'one hundred' and miyatayn 'two hundred', consist of the numerals ḡalaaḡa 'three' through tis9a 'nine' (the -a ending is dropped) plus miya:

xamsmiya '500' ḡamaanmiya '800'

Exceptions: sab9a 'seven' → saba9miya or sabi9miya '700'

ḡamaaniya 'eight' → ḡamaanmiya

tis9a 'nine' → tisa9miya or tisi9miya '900'

If the noun counted is expressed, miya changes to miyat, being the first term of the noun construct. The noun counted is singular, not plural:

xamsmiyat ryaal '500 riyals' *xamsmiya ryaal

miyat duulaar '\$100' *miya duulaar

b. 'alf, 'alfayn, ḡaalaaḡa 'alf, ... tis9a 'alf

The thousands, 3,000-9,000, consist of the numerals ḡalaaḡ 'three' through tis9a 'nine' plus 'alf:

xamsa 'alf' '5,000' 9afara 'alf' '10,000'

The noun counted is singular:

xamsa 'alf ryaal '5,000 riyals'

'alfayn ryaal '2,000 riyals'

sitta 'alf ryaal '6,000 riyals'

NOTE ON TEXT

1. In Yemen there are three kinds of coffee. kaafi is Western coffee: English, American, etc.; bunn is Yemeni coffee, which is Turkish coffee, usually served in a teacup; and gahwat gisr, which is coffee made by boiling the skin of coffee beans.

2. Learn 'aLLaah yiddii-lak aS-SiHHa w-l-9aafiya 'God give you good health!' as a formula or an idiomatic expression; it is said when wishing someone good health, a speedy recovery, etc.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

S₁ : SabaaH al-xayr ya 'ax yuusif! 'Good morning, Yusif!'

S₂ : 'ahlan wa sahan! tafaṣṣal 'ijlis!
'Welcome! Please sit down!'

Drill 2 Substitution

tisrab saahi ? 'Would you like to drink tea?'

- | | |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| 1. gahwa | 7. Haliib baarid |
| 2. Haliib | 8. saahi ma9 Haliib |
| 3. biira | 9. gahwa yamaniyya |
| 4. mee' | 10. mee' baarid |
| 5. bunn | 11. Haliib ma9 sukkar |
| 6. tea | 12. gahwat gisr |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'sti 'asrab kaafi. 'I want to drink coffee.'

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|-------------|
| 1. saahi | 6. 'iHna | 11. 'anti |
| 2. Haliib | 7. 'ant | 12. 'ana |
| 3. huw | 8. 'antu | 13. 'antayn |

- | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|
| 4. hiy | 9. gahwa | 14. saahi |
| 5. mee' | 10. hum | 15. hin |

Drill 4 Substitution

'ayn al-mudiiir law samaHt ? 'Where is the director, please?'

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. wazaarat at-tarbiya | 7. 'al-baagi |
| 2. wazaarat al-'aſGaal | 8. mudiiir aſ-ſarika |
| 3. wazaarat aS-SiHHa | 9. gahwat al-giſr |
| 4. aT-Tabiiib | 10. 'al-yurt |
| 5. fundug saba' | 11. mustaſfa l-ſ'ukuuma |
| 6. 'aſ-ſaahi | 12. bank ad-damm |

Drill 5 Substitution

'ana mariiſ al-yawm.

- | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. 9indi Haraara | 8. 9indi ſuGl |
| 2. maaf naahi | 9. 'at9allam faransi |
| 3. mirtaaH kaſiir | 10. 'aktub 9arabi |
| 4. maſGuul ſwayya | 11. 'aſti 'aruuH |
| 5. 'adrus 9arabi | 12. 'aruuH la-T-Tabiiib |
| 6. 'aſtaGil | 13. 'aji ma9aak |
| 7. 'adii-lak ryaal | 14. 'aaxuſak ma9i |

Drill 6 Repetition

- | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|----------|-----------|----------|
| a. ruH! | tafaſſal! | 'ijlis! | 'iſrab! | 'idfa9! |
| 'iddi! | 'i9mal! | 'udrus! | 'u... ib! | ta9aal! |
| b. ruuHi! | tafaſſali! | 'ijlisi! | 'iſrabi! | 'idfa9i! |
| 'iddi! | 'i9mali! | 'udrusi! | 'uktubi! | ta9aali! |

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: ruH 'iḥrab gahwa! 'Go drink (m.s.) coffee!'

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. 'anti | 6. 'anti | 11. study |
| 2. 'antu | 7. 'antayn | 12. talk to him |
| 3. work | 8. take them | 13. 'antu |
| 4. learn Arabic | 9. 'ant | 14. give him \$5 |
| 5. pay \$1,000 | 10. 'anti | 15. 'ant |

Drill 8 Transformation: indicative → imperative

Example: 'ant tiḥrab gahwa. 'You (m.s.) drink coffee.' →
'iḥrab gahwa! 'Drink (m.s.) coffee!'

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. 'ant bi-tiḥtaḡil haana. | 8. 'ant bi-t'addii-lu sitta ryaal. |
| 2. 'anti bi-tiḥtaḡili haana. | 9. 'antu bi-tidfa9u \$9,000. |
| 3. 'antu bi-tiḥrabu gahwa. | 10. 'antayn bi-tuktubayn 9arabi. |
| 4. 'antayn bi-tudrusayn. | 11. 'ant bi-ta9mal haana. |
| 5. 'ant bi-titkallam 9arabi. | 12. 'anti bi-tiji ma9aahin. |
| 6. 'antu bi-tiḥrabu ṣaahi | 13. 'antu bi-truuHu la-T-Tabiib. |
| 7. 'anti bi-ta'xuḡi \$3,000. | 14. 'ant bi-ta'xuḡ YR. 800. |

Drill 9 Translation

- | | | |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. YR. 500 | 6. 14 years | 11. ten years |
| 2. \$2,000 | 7. 7 days | 12. 12 doctors |
| 3. 200 schools | 8. 10 hospitals | 13. two days |
| 4. 10,000 students | 9. \$9,000 | 14. YR. 20,000 |
| 5. YR. 100 | 10. five dinars | 15. two years |

Drill 10 Repetition

1. ta9aal as-saa9a tisi9 aS-SabaaH! 'Come (m.s.) at 9:00 a.m.'
2. ta9aal as-saa9a tisi9 al-masaa'!
3. ta9aal as-saa9a iḡna9ḥ aḡḡuhr!
4. ta9aal as-saa9a Hda9ḥ w-nuSS ḡabl aḡ-ḡuhr!

5. ta9aal as-saa9a 'iθna9f 'illa rub9!
6. ta9aal as-saa9a 'iθna9f 'illa θiliθ!
7. ta9aal as-saa9a θintayn w-θiliθ ba9d aḡ-ḡuhr!
8. ta9aal as-saa9a waaHida w-nuSS ba9d aḡ-ḡuhr!
9. ta9aal as-saa9a Hda9f w-rub9 gabl aḡ-ḡuhr!
10. ta9aal as-saa9a 5:10 p.m.
12. ta9aal as-saa9a 2:25 p.m.
11. ta9aal as-saa9a 8:50 a.m.
13. ta9aal as-saa9a 12:40 p.m.

Drill 11 Question -- Answer

1. 'ays tifti tifrab ? coffee, tea, milk?
2. kayf Haalak ? mirtaaH nfaaLLa ?
3. 9indak maw9id al-yawm ma9 aT-Tabiib ?
4. 9indak juGl fi l-masaa' al-yawm ? tifti tiji ma9i ?
5. kam as-saa9a ḡalHiin law samaHt ?
6. 'ant mutazawwij ? kam walad 9indak ?
7. kam lak fi l-yaman ? nfaaLLa 'i9jabatak San9a ?
8. kam ta'xuḡ min haana la-hownaak ? kam si9r al-Hukuuma ?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Hasan : nfaaLLa 'i9jabatak al-Hodayda ?
 Jim : 'al-Hodayda naahiya fi s-sitaa'. fi S-Sayf 'al-jaww Haami w-ruTuuba kaθir.
 Hasan : kam lak fi l-yaman ?
 Jim : θalaaθat siniin.
 Hasan : w-l-9aa'ila ma9aak ?
 Jim : 'ana maaf mutazawwij. nfaaLLa ba9d sanatayn.
2. 9aa'isa : kzyf Haalis ya maryam ?
 maryam : mariiḡa w-9indi Haraara.
 9aa'isa : ruuHi T-Tabiiba!
 maryam : 9indi maw9id ma9 aT-Tabiiba haala fi mustaḡfa l-kuwayti Gudwa saa9at 9aḡir.
 9aa'isa : 'aLLaah yidii-lis aS-SiHHa w-l-9aafiya!

maryam : sukran ya 9aa'isa. xaaTrij!
9aa'isa : ma9 as-salaama.

UNIT 16

I. TEXT

fi s-suug (i)

- 'amiina : b-kam aT-TamaaTiis al-yawm ?
'al-bayyaa9 : b-9isriin ryaal al-kiilo.
'amiina : Gaali kaθiir.
'al-bayyaa9 : maafi, maaf Gaali; raxiis. 'al-yawm maabis TamaaTiis kaθiir fi s-suug.
'amiina : b-adfa9 xamaTa9sar ryaal bass.
'al-bayyaa9 : la. haaða galiil.
'amiina : la, ma 'astiis. fi 'amaani llaah!
'al-bayyaa9 : ta9aali! saba9Ta9sar ryaal! tisti ?
'amiina : maafi. xamaTa9sar ryaal bass. 'asti 'astari bayø w-burtagaal w-9inab ba9da.
'al-bayyaa9 : kam tisti ?
'amiina : 'iddii-li θalaaða kiilu TamaaTiis w-darzan bayø w-'iθnayn kiilo burtagaal w-kiilo 9inab.
'al-bayyaa9 : naahi.

II. TRANSLATION

At the Marketplace (i)

- Amina : How much are tomatoes today?
Seller : Twenty riyals a kilo.
Amina : Very expensive!
Seller : No, it's not expensive; it's cheap. Today there aren't many tomatoes in the market.
Amina : I'll pay fifteen riyals only.
Seller : No, that is too little.
Amina : No, I do not want any. Goodbye!
Seller : Come! Just seventeen riyals! Do you want any?

Amina : No. Fifteen riyals only. I would like to buy eggs, oranges, and grapes too.

Seller : How much do you want?

Amina : Give me three kilos of tomatoes, one dozen eggs, two kilos of oranges and one kilo of grapes.

Seller : Fine.

III. VOCABULARY

suug	marketplace, market	ma....f	not (with foll. verb)
b-kam ?	for how much?	'astari	I buy
TamaaTiis	tomatoes	bayf	eggs
bayyaa9	seller	burtagaal	oranges
b-9iSriin	for twenty	9inab	grapes
kiilo	kilo(gram)	ba9da	later on
Gaali	expensive	darzan	dozen
raxiis	cheap, inexpensive	naahi	O.K., fine
galiil	little; a few		

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

HabHab	watermelons	zubda	butter
baTTiix	cantaloupes	jubn	cheese
tuffaaH	apples	rizz	rice
mawz	bananas	xubz	bread
barguug	apricots	buTaaT	potatoes
laHm	meat	bisbaas	hot peppers
Huut	fish	gaat	qat
dihn	shortening	biibar	bell peppers

V. GRAMMAR

1. Cardinal Numerals

SA has a special system for saying the cardinals. Any number between 21 and 99 is expressed by a phrase consisting of the units

numeral followed by the conjunction w- 'and', and then followed by the tens numeral:

xamsa w-xamsiin	'fifty-five'
waahid w-sittiin	'sixty-one'

Numbers between 101 and 999 are expressed by saying the hundreds numeral first followed by the conjunction w-, then the units numeral or the numeral phrase:

miya w-xamsa	'105'
θalaaθmiya w-xamsa w-9i/riin	'325'
miyatayn w-sitta w-tis9iin	'296'

If a number has 'alf 'one thousand' as its biggest numeral, you say the thousand first, followed by w-, and then followed by the appropriate phrase as described above:

'alf w-tisa9miya w-xamsa w-θamaaniin	'1985'
--------------------------------------	--------

2. Collective Nouns

Tamaatiis 'tomatoes', bayδ 'eggs', burtagaal 'oranges', HabHab 'watermelons', baTTiix 'cantaloupes, sweet melons', jubn 'cheese', xubda 'bread', and zubda 'butter' are examples of collective nouns. Almost all kinds of vegetables, fruits, grains, flowers, fruit trees, grasses, etc., are collective nouns. The singular noun or item associated with a collective noun is known as a "unit noun". Thus, bayδ is '(some) eggs' and bayδa is 'an egg'. Most unit nouns are formed by adding -a to the collective noun, sometimes with appropriate stem changes, which will be explained as we go along; a few take the suffix -i. Other unit nouns are formed by using the word Habbat 'grain; seed, one unit of', ra's 'head of' (UNIT 17) or 9uudi 'root, stalk', etc., before the collective noun. Those that take the suffix -i in this lesson are bisbaas 'hot peppers' and biibar 'bell peppers'. Examples:

<u>bisbaasi</u>	'a hot pepper'
<u>biibari</u>	'a bell pepper'
Habbat rizz	'a grain of rice'
Habbat buTaaT	'a potatoe'
ra's gu/mi (UNIT 17)	'a radish'
9uudi gaat	'a qat root'

3. The Negative Particle ma

ma negates verbs, as opposed to maaf that negates nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases. It occurs before the verb and the verb usually takes the suffix -f:

huwa ma yifrabs biira.	'He does not drink beer.'
'ana ma b-adrusf ḍalHiin.	'I am not studying now.'
hiy ma titkallams ingiliizi.	'She does not speak English.'

If the verb ends with a vowel, that vowel is lengthened before -f.
Examples:

ma tistii <u>f</u> .	'She does not want.'
ma yruuHu <u>uf</u> .	'They (m.) do not go.'
ma truuHu <u>uf</u>	'You (m.p.) do not go.'
ma yiji <u>if</u> .	'He does not come.'

Notes:

The adding of -f is optional.

The word ḍay 'something; anything' after the verb with or without -f expresses the meaning of 'not ... anything'. Example: ma yistiif ḍay. 'He does not want anything.' The second and third person masculine plural form is used instead of the feminine form:

hin ma yistu <u>uf</u> .	'They (f.) do not want.'
'antayn ma tistu <u>uf</u> .	'You (f.p.) do not want.'

In a double or a triple imperfect construction it is only the first verb that is negated:

ma 'astiif 'astari. 'I do not want to buy.'
 ma yistuuf yiju yudrusu. 'They do not want to come to study.'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

b-kam aT-TamaaTiis al-yawm ? 'How much are tomatoes today?'

- | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|
| 1. sukkar | 6. 9inab | 11. Huut |
| 2. Haliib | 7. baTTiix | 12. dihn |
| 3. bayḡ | 8. tuffaaH | 13. rizz |
| 4. burtagaal | 9. mawz | 14. buTaaT |
| 5. HabHab | 10. laHm | 15. gaat |

Drill 2 Double Substitution

b-9isriin ryaal al-kiilo. 'Twenty riyals per kilogram.'

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. 30 -- dozen | 6. 100 -- piece |
| 2. 12 -- kilogram | 7. 15 -- kilogram |
| 3. 50 -- piece | 8. 40 -- dozen |
| 4. 12 -- dozen | 9. 35 -- kilogram |
| 5. 20 -- kilogram | 10. 25 -- piece |

Drill 3 Transformation: masculine → feminine

haaḡa Gaali. → haaḡi Gaaliya. 'This is expensive.'

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. haaḡa raxiis. | 8. waLLa maaf naahi l-yawm. |
| 2. haaḡa galiil. | 9. mariiḡ w-9indi Haraara. |
| 3. haaḡa kaḡiir. | 10. ta9aal! xuḡ haaḡa! |

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 4. SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr! | 11. 'ant bi-tudrus 9arabi ? |
| 5. 'ayf tirti tjrab ? | 12. 'al-mu9allim mutazawwij ? |
| 6. jaahi law samaHt! | 13. 'aLLaah yidii-lak al-9aafiya! |
| 7. kayf Haalak ya kariim ? | 14. tafaṣṣal 'iṣrab gahwa! |

Drill 4 Transformation: positive → negative

huw yudrus 9arabi. → huw ma yudrus 9arabi.
 'He studies Arabic. → He doesn't study Arabic.'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. hiy tjrab biira. | 8. 'anti bi-ti9mali fi l-bank ? |
| 2. 9indi suGl al-yawm. | 9. 'ant truuH aT-Tabiib ? |
| 3. 'al-yawm 'al-xamiis. | 10. huw yiji ma9aana. |
| 4. 'iHna bi-nudrus 9arabi. | 11. 'antu titkallamu 9arabi ? |
| 5. hum yistu yruuHu. | 12. 'antayn tit9allamayn faransi ? |
| 6. 'ana 'asti 'astari bayṣ. | 13. hiy tuktub 9arabi naahi. |
| 7. huw yistaGil ma9aana. | 14. 'i9jabni l-jaww fi San9a. |

Drill 5 Transformation: indicative → imperative

Example: T: 'ant tjrab gahwa. → 'iṣrab gahwa!
 'You (m.s.) drink coffee. → Drink coffee!'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. 'ant tiji ma9i. | 7. ant tjrab jaahi. |
| 2. 'anti tiji ma9aana. | 8. 'antayn tudrusayn 9arabi. |
| 3. hiy tistari Tamaatiis. | 9. 'anti truuHi l-madrasa. |
| 4. 'ant tistari laHm. | 10. 'ant t'addii-li miyat ryaal. |
| 5. 'anti ta'xusi \$2,000. | 11. 'antu tjrabu Haliib. |
| 6. 'antu tistaGilu hownaak. | 12. 'antayn tijayn al-yawm. |

Drill 6 Double Substitution

ma 'astiif astari mawz. 'asti 'astari 9inab.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. oranges -- bananas | 7. rice -- potatoes |
| 2. eggs -- meat | 8. potatoes -- tomatoes |
| 3. meat -- fish | 9. tomatoes -- hot peppers |
| 4. fish -- cheese | 10. qat -- bell peppers |
| 5. shortening -- butter | 11. apricots -- apples |
| 6. watermelons -- grapes | 12. apricots -- oranges |

Drill 7 Identification

Individual students are asked to say the following numbers:

35	72	106	9000	1001
20	24	1116	1900	672
1985	1914	1066	1776	312
1990	1111	2831	111	10000

Drill 8 Chain

- T : 'as-sabt 'Saturday'
 S₁ : 'as-sabt gabl al-'aHad. 'Saturday is before Sunday.'
 S₂ : 'al-'aHad ba9d as-sabt. 'Sunday is after Saturday.'

Carry on with all the days of the week.

Drill 9 Question -- Answer (Based on TEXT)

1. b-kam aT-TamaaTiis al-yawm ?
2. 'aT-TamaaTiis Gaali l-yawm 'aw raxiis ?
3. 'aT-TamaaTiis kaθiir al-yawm fi s-suug ?
4. maa tiyti tiytari 'amiina ba9da ?
5. tiyti tiytari tuffaaH ?

6. kam kiilo Tamaatiis tiŕti 'amiina ?
7. kay darzan bayŕ tiŕti ?
8. tiŕti 'amiina 'ienayn kiilo barguug ?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 'aHmad : 'as-salaam 9alaykum!
'al-bayyaa9 : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.
'aHmad : 9indak tuffaaH ?
'al-bayyaa9 : 9indi tuffaaH lubnaani naahi.
'aHmad : b-kam al-kiilo ?
'al-bayyaa9 : b-9ajara ryaal al-kiilo w-lak b-9amaaniya.
'aHmad : maaji. Gaali ka9iir.
'al-bayyaa9 : bass haa9a tuffaaH lubnaani.
'aHmad : Tayyib 'addii-li 9alaa9a kiilo tuffaaH w-kiilo 9inab
w-darzan bayŕ.

2. mHammad : ruH la-s-suug w-istari-lana laHm!
9abdaLLa : 'al-laHm Gaali l-yawm. maabiŕ laHm ka9iir fi s-suug.
'al-Huut raxiiS w-naahi.
mHammad : b-kam kiile l-Huut ?
9abdaLLa : b-9isriin ryaal.
mHammad : Tayyib 'asti 'aji ma9aak.
9abdaLLa : Tayyib 'ahlan wa sahlán! tafa99al!

U N I T 1 7

I. TEXT

fi s-suug (ii)

tagiyya 9a-truuH as-suug 9ala sibb tifti tiftari Tamaatiis
w-dubbe w-xiyaar w-faaSuulya xaḡraa' w-SalaTa w-biibar w-baaḡinjaan
'aswad. Gudwa, 'al-jum9a, 9indahum ḡuyuuf fi l-bayt saa9at tisi9 fi
l-layl. tagiyya tifti tuTbux 'akl yamani. yumkin ma tilgaaḡ laHm Tali
l-yawm. tigdar tiftari bagari 'aw 9ijl 'aw dajaaj. 9aa'isa, Sadiigat
tagiyya, 9a-tiji 'ila bayt tagiyya w-ta'kuḡ ma9aahum.

II. TRANSLATION

At the Marketplace (ii)

Tagiyya will go to the market because she wants to buy tomatoes, zucchini, cucumbers, green beans, lettuce, bell pepper, and black eggplant. Tomorrow, Friday, they will have guests at home at 9:00 p.m. Tagiyya wants to cook Yemeni food. She might not find lamb today. She may buy beef or veal or chicken. Aisha, Tagiyya's friend, will come to Tagiyya's home and eat with them.

III. VOCABULARY

9a-truuH	she will go	'akl	food
9ala sibb	because	yumkin	perhaps, maybe
dubbe	(coll.) zucchini s. <u>dubbaayi</u>	tilga	she finds
		Tali	lamb (animal); lamb (meat)
xiyaar	(coll.) cucumbers	tigdar	she can
faaSuulya	(coll.) beans	bagari	beef
xaḡraa'	green (f.)	9ijl	veal; calf (of cow)
salaTa	(coll.) lettuce	(laHm) 9ijl	(coll.) veal

baaḍinjaan	(coll.) eggplant	dajaaḡ	(coll.) chickens;
'aswad	black		chicker.
ḡuyuuf	guests (s. ḡayf)	9a-tiji	she will come
layl	night; nighttime	ta'kul	she eats
	tuṬbux		she cooks; you (m.s.) cook

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

ḡawn	color	ḡahabi	gold (color)
bunni	brown	wardi	pink
'abyaḡ	white	'ahmar	red
'aḡfar	yellow	ḡiim	(coll.) lemons
'axḡar	green	ḡuḡmi	(coll.) radishes
'azrag	blue	Habba	piece, grain
burtagaali	orange (color)	ra's	head
ramaadi	grey	ra's salaṬa	head of lettuce
		ra's ḡuḡmi	a radish

V. GRAMMAR

1. Collective Nouns

It was pointed out in UNIT 16 that most unit nouns are formed by adding -a or -i to the collective noun and others are formed by using Habbat, ra's, or ḡirḡ to the collective noun. Note and learn the following:

<u>TumṬusa</u>	'a tomatoe'
<u>dubbaayi</u>	'a piece of zucchini'
<u>xiyaara</u> or <u>Habbat xiyaar</u>	'a cucumber'
<u>Habbat faaSuulya</u>	'a bean (of, e.g., green beans)'
<u>Habbat salaṬa</u> or <u>ra's salaṬa</u>	'a head of lettuce'
<u>biibari</u> 'a bell pepper'	<u>bisbaasi</u> 'a hot pepper'
<u>baaḍinjaana</u> or <u>Habbat baaḍinjaan</u>	'an eggplant'
dajaaḡa	'a hen; a chicken'

ḷaHma	'a piece of meat'
Habbat 9inab	'a grape'

2. Color Adjectives

Color adjectives behave syntactically like adjectives; they modify nouns and agree with them in gender, number (only singular and plural) and definiteness. In this section we are concerned with the singular only. Most masculine singular color adjectives fit the pattern 'aC₁C₂aC₃. The feminine singular pattern is C₁aC₂C₃aa':

'axḡar	→ xaḡraa'	'green (f.)'
'aHmar	→ Hamraa'	'red (f.)'
'aSfar	→ Safraa'	'yellow (f.)'
'azrag	→ zargaa'	'blue (f.)'
'aswad	→ sawdaa'	'black (f.)'
'abyaḡ	→ bayḡaa'	'white (f.)'

Those that end with -i form their singular feminine forms by adding -yya (like nisba adjectives):

bunni	→ bunniyya	'brown (f.)'
ramaadi	→ ramaadiyya	'grey (f.)'
burtagaali	→ burtagaaliyya	'orange (f.)'
wardi	→ wardiyya	'pink (f.)'

3. The Future Tense

The future tense in SA is indicated by suffixing f- or 9a- to the imperfect tense verb. The former, f- indicates future with intention, but it is used almost interchangeably with 9a-. In Sanaa f- is usually used with the first person singular; in other regions it is used with all persons.

9a-yiji.	'He will come; he is coming.'
9a-yudrus.	'He will study; he is going to study.'

With the first person singular 'a- drops:

ʃa-ktub.	'I will write; I am going to write.'
ʃa-ʃtaʒil.	'I will work; I am going to work.'

4. The Verb -gdar-

-gdar- is the imperfect stem of the verb which means 'to be able to, can'. It can be used by itself or in a string with other verbs:

na9am 'agdar.	'Yes, I can.'
yigdar yruuH.	'He can go.'
yigdar yruuH yiʃrac.	'He can go to (have a) drink.'

5. Imperatives

The imperative forms of -akul- 'to eat' and -Tbux- 'to cook' are:

kul, kuli, kulu, kulayn
'uTbux, 'uTbuxi, 'uTbuxu, 'uTbuxayn

As of UNIT 18 verbs in the vocabulary and additional vocabulary sections will be entered in their stem forms, e.g., -ruuH- 'to go', etc.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

a. 'asti 'aakul dajaaj. 'I want to eat (some) chicken.'

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. dubbe | 6. bagari | 11. burtagaal |
| 2. xiyaar | 7. 9ijl | 12. tuffaaH |
| 3. faaSuulya | 8. salaTa | 13. 9inab |
| 4. baasinjaan | 9. gu/mi | 14. rizz |
| 5. Tali | 10. bayṣ | 15. Huut |

b. Replace the collective nouns in a. above with unit nouns.

Drill 2 Combination

Example: 'asti 'aruUH as-suug. 'asti 'astari TamaaTiis. →
 'asti 'aruUH as-suug 9ala sabb 'asti 'astari TamaaTiis.
 'I want to go to the marketplace. I would like to buy (some
 tomatoes. → I want to go to the marketplace because I would
 like to buy (some) tomatoes.'

1. hiy tisti truuH aT-Tabiib. hiy mariiṣa.
2. 'ant ma tigdarṣ tij. 'ant mariiṣ w-9indak Haraara.
3. ma nigdar niji Gudwa. 9indana ṣuyuuuf.
4. tigdari tistari dajaaaj. 'ad-dajaaaj raxiiS al-yawm.
5. ma 'agdarṣ 'aṣrab haaṣi l-biira. 'al-biira maṣṣ baarida.
6. yisti yruUH la-l-bayt. yisti ya'kul.
7. 'asti 'aruUH al-madrasa. 'asti 'at9allam.
8. tistu tistari dubbe w-Tali. tisti tuTbuṣ 'akl 9arabi.

Drill 3 Substitution

tagiyya tifti tuTbux 'akl yamani. 'Tagiyya wants to cook Yemeni food.'

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. Arabic | 6. Indian | 11. Yemeni |
| 2. Lebanese | 7. Tunisian | 12. Libyan |
| 3. Bahraini | 8. Egyptian | 13. Jordanian |
| 4. English | 9. Kuwaiti | 14. Qatari |
| 5. French | 10. Syrian | 15. German |

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

yumkin tilga Huut fi s-suug.

'You (m.s.) may find fish in the market.'

- | | | |
|-----------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. Tali | 6. gufmi | 11. 'ana |
| 2. bagari | 7. hum | 12. baaδinjaan |
| 3. 'anti | 8. 'antu | 13. dajaaj |
| 4. xiyaar | 9. mawz | 14. 'antayn |
| 5. liim | 10. bisbaas | 15. HabHab |

Drill 5 Completion

a. 'ana 'agdar 'I can'

T: speak Arabic

S: 'ana 'agdar 'atkallam 9arabi. 'I can speak Arabic.'

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. speak English | 8. eat Arabic food |
| 2. speak French | 9. go home now |
| 3. buy red apples | 10. drink beer |
| 4. find green beans | 11. pay \$300 |
| 5. come at 5:30 a.m. | 12. study at school |
| 6. come at night | 13. write to them |
| 7. go to the market | 14. work now or at night |

b. 'ant tigdar 'You (m.s.) can'

c. huw yigdar 'He can'

Use substitutions from Drill a. above.

Drill 6 Transformation: positive + negative + future (positive).

Change the sentences in Drill 5, above, into the negative and then into the future.

Example: 'ana 'agdar 'atkallam 9arabi. + ma 'agadr/ 'atkallam 9arabi.

+ ja-gdar 'atkaillam 9arabi.

'I can speak Arabic. + I cannot speak Arabic.

+ I will be able to speak Arabic.

Drill 7 Repetition

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 'al-mawz 'aSfar. | 9. 'al-bayḡ 'abyaḡ. |
| 2. 'al-mawza Safraa'. | 10. 'al-bayḡa bayḡaa'. |
| 3. 'ad-dubbe xaḡraa'. | 11. 'at-taksi bunni. |
| 4. Habbat ad-dubbe xaḡraa'. | 12. 'al-gahwa bunniyya. |
| 5. 'al-baaḡinjaan 'aswad. | 13. 'al-lawṇ ḡahabi. |
| 6. 'al-baaḡinjaana sawdaa'. | 14. 'as-saa9a ḡahabiyya. |
| 7. 'at-tuffaaH 'aHmar. | 15. haaḡa 'azrag. |
| 8. 'at-tuffaaHa Hamraa'. | 16. haaḡi zargaa'. |

Drill 8 Chain

a. S₁: maa lawṇ haaḡa ? 'What color is this (m.) ?'

T: 'aswad 'black'

S₂: lawna 'aswad. 'Its color is black.'

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. 'abyaḡ | 6. bunni | 11. white |
| 2. 'azrag | 7. ramaadi | 12. brown |

- | | | |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| 3. 'axɕar | 8. ɔahaabi | 13. red |
| 4. 'aHmar | 9. burtagaali | 14. black |
| 5. 'aSfar | 10. yellow | 15. green |

b. Change the above to the feminine.

Drill 9 Transformation: masculine + feminine

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. haaɔa 'aswad. | 8. huw 'aswad. |
| 2. haaɔa 'aSfar. | 9. huw ɔahabi. |
| 3. 'al-walaɔ 'abyaɕ. | 10. 'al-muɔir 'abyaɕ. |
| 4. haaɔa 'axɕar. | 11. haaɔa 'azrag. |
| 5. haaɔa 'aswad. | 12. huw wardi. |
| 6. haaɔa 'aHmar. | 13. haaɔa 'aHmar. |
| 7. haaɔa ramaadi. | 14. haaɔa burtagaali. |

Drill 10 Question -- Answer (Based on TEXT)

1. maa tisti tistari tagiyya ?
2. tagiyya tisti tistari faaSuulya naafifa ?
3. tisti tistari baaɔinjaan 'aHmar ?
4. f-ayy saa9a 9indahum ɕuyuuf fi l-bayt ?
5. tagiyya tisti tuTbux 'aki 9arabi ?
6. man 9aa'isa ?
7. 'ayn 9a-tiji 9aa'isa ?

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Answer the following questions:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. maa l-yawm ? | 6. 'aɕ-ɕuyuuf 9a-yiju l-yawm ? |
| 2. kam as-saa9a ɔalHiin ? | 7. f-ayy Hiin 9a-yiju ? |
| 3. f-ayy Hiin fa-ruuH as-suug ? | 8. 'al-baɕari naahi ? |
| 4. maa 'asti 'astari ? | 9. 'al-baɕari Gaali 'aw raxiis ? |
| 5. Gudwa l-xamiis ? | 10. kam si9r al-baɕari ? |

U N I T 1 8

I. TEXT

Hajj aHmad

- 9ali : ya Hajj aHmad! ya Hajj aHmad! 'ayn ant ? maHHad ysuufak!
- Hajj aHmad : waLLa 9indi fuG1 ka0iir: b-aruUH 'ila f-fuG1 aS-SubH saa9at sitt w-b-arja9 saa9at 0alaa0 ba9d a0-0uhr kull yawm.
- 9ali : kayf al-'usra w-al-'awlaad ?
- Hajj aHmad : la ba's. 'al-Hamdu lillaah. Gudwa 9a-tiftaH al-madaaris w-0alHiin fa-siir 'ila l-bank 9ala sibb 'asti 'ajurr fuluus. 'al-'awlaad yiftu kutub w-dafaatir w-'aglaam etc.
- 9ali : 'al-madrasa ba9iida min haana ?
- Hajj aHmad : maafi. gariiba. yimfu. b-afillahum b-s-sayyaara w-zaaratHiin bi-yruuHu b-l-baaS.
- 9ali : tamaam! 'aLLaah yi9iinak w-yigawwiik!
- Hajj aHmad : xaaTrak! b-asiir 0alHiin.
- 9ali : ma9 as-salaama!

II. TRANSLATION

Haj Ahmad

- Ali : Haj Ahmad! Haj Ahmad! Where have you been? No one sees you.
- Haj Ahmad : Really, I have a lot of work: I go to work in the morning at six and come back at three in the afternoon every day.
- Ali : How are the family and the children?
- Haj Ahmad : Not bad. Praise be to God. Tomorrow schools will open, and now I am going to the bank because I want to withdraw

some money. The children need books, notebooks, pencils,
... etc.

Ali : Is the school far from here?

Haj Ahmad : No, it's close. They walk. I take them by car and
sometimes they go by bus.

Ali : Right! God help you and give you strength!

Haj Ahmad : Goodbye! I am going now.

Ali : Goodbye.

III. VOCABULARY

maHHad	no one, nobody	'aglaam	pens; pencils
-juuf-	to see		(s. <u>galam</u>)
'aS-SubH	in the morning	ba9iida	far (f.)
-rja9-	return, come back	garifba	close, nearby (f.)
'usra ('usar)	family; household	-mfi-	walk
'awlaad	children (s. <u>walad</u>)	-fill-	to carry, lift
-ftaH-	to open	sayyaara	car
madaaris	schools (s. <u>madrasa</u>)	b-s-sayyaara	by car
-siir-	go; walk	zaaratHiin	sometimes
-jurr-	withdraw (e.g. money)	baaS	bus
fuluus	money (f.)	b-l-baaS	by bus
kutub	books (s. <u>kitaab</u>)	tamaam!	right! correct!
dafaatir	notebooks, copybooks (s. <u>daftar</u>)		

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

'aHad	someone; anyone
haa6awlaak	these (m. or f.)
ha6aak	that; that one (m.)
ha6iik	that, that one (f.)
haa6awlaak	those (m. or f.)
b-l-9arabi	in Arabic
kull	(with foll. indef. n.) each; every
kull al-yawm	all day long, the whole day

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems -suuf- 'to see', -siir- 'to go; to walk', -jurr- 'to withdraw', and -fill- 'to carry; to lift' do not usually take a prefix vowel since they do not have initial consonant clusters.

huw	yjurr fuluus.	'He withdraws money.'
hiy	tjurr fuluus.	'She withdraws money.'

The others -rja9- 'to return', -ftaH 'to open', and -mfi- 'to walk' usually take -i-:

9a-yirja9 Gudwa.	'He will return tomorrow.'
'al-bank yiftaH al-yawm.	'The bank opens today.'

The imperative forms of -suuf- and -siir- are like those of -ruuH- 'to go':

suf!	'See (m.s.)!'	suufi!	'See (f.s.)!'
suufu!	'See (m.p.)!'	suufayn!	'See (f.p.)!'

Those of -ftaH- 'to open', -rja9- 'to return', and -mfi- 'to walk' take the prefix i-:

'iftaH!	'Open (m.s.)!'	'iftaHi!	'Open (f.s.)!'
'iftaHu!	'Open (m.p.)!'	'iftaHayn!	'Open (f.p.)!'

-jurr- 'to withdraw' and -fill- 'to carry; to lift' do not take a prefix: jurr! jurri! jurru! jurrayn!

2. Plurals of Nouns

There are two kinds of plurals of nouns in SA: masculine sound or feminine sound plurals and broken plurals.

a. Most masculine sound plural nouns refer to male human beings or to a group in which there is at least one male. They are formed by adding -iin to the masculine singular noun, sometimes with stem changes. If the masculine singular noun ends with -i, the stem adds -yy before -iin:
yamani 'Yemeni' + yamaniyyiin + 'Yemenis', 'amriiki 'American' + 'amriikiyyiin 'Americans'.

b. The feminine sound plural is formed by adding -aat to the singular. It is used for four general classes of nouns:

(1) Those referring to females, e.g.

Tabiiba + Tabiibaat	yamaniyya + yamaniyyaat
bint + banaat (irreg.)	'uxt + 'axawaat (irreg.)

(2) Most feminine singular nouns ending in -a:

saa9a + saa9aat	farika + farikaat
wazaara + wazaaraat	marra + marraat
sana + sanawaat (irreg.)	

Included in this section are some unit nouns formed from collectives:

TumTusa + TumTusaat	mawza + mawzaat
tuffaaHa + tuffaaHaat	xiyaara + xiyaaraat

If the unit noun ends with -i, -yy- is added before -aat:

bisbaasi + bisbaasiyyaat	biibaari + biibaariyyaat
--------------------------	--------------------------

- (3) Some masculine nouns of foreign origin:

baaS → baaSaat

kiilo → kiilowaat (-o + -aa + -waa)

- (4) Certain masculine nouns ending in -a, such as:

mustaffa → mustaffayaat

c. Broken plurals are formed from the singular not by adding suffixes but by changing the internal structure of the word. There are a number of such different patterns which will be learned separately. It will be here sufficient to illustrate two types that have already shown up:

bank 'a bank' → bunuuk '(some) banks'

Here the singular pattern CaCC changes to the plural pattern CuCuuC. Other examples of the plural pattern CuCuuC are: ra's 'head' → ru'uus, bayt 'house' → buyuut, faSl 'seson' → fuSuul, etc. Another example of the other pattern is fuGl 'work, job' → 'a/Gaal, where the singular pattern CuCC changes into 'aCCaaC. Other examples are: suug 'market, marketplace' → 'aswaag, si9r 'price; tariff' → 'as9aar, lawn 'color' → 'alwaan. These two patterns CuCuuC and 'aCCaaC are probably the two most common broken plural patterns in SA.

Note: All plurals of nouns in VOCABULARY and ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY will be parenthesized as of UNIT 19.

3. Noun -- Adjective Concord

Adjectives in SA agree with the nouns they modify in gender and definiteness. As for number, they have two numbers: singular and plural only. If a noun is singular, the adjective is singular; if it is dual or plural, the adjective is plural or feminine singular sometimes, especially if the plural noun is non-human:

bunuuk kibaar (<u>kabira</u>)	'big banks'
bankeen kibaar	'two big banks'
'awlaad kibaar	'big boys'
waladeen kibaar	'two big boys'
banaat Haaliyaat	'beautiful girls'
buyuut gadiima	'old houses'
'al-banaat al-Haaliyaat	'the beautiful girls'

Sometimes the word for two 'iṭṭayn (m.) or ṭintayn (f.) is used before the plural of a noun to mean 'two --'. The adjective is plural: 'iṭṭayn buyuut kbaar 'two big houses', ṭintayn banaat Haaliyaat 'two beautiful girls.'

4. Object Pronouns

When a pronoun suffix is added to a verb, it always functions as the object of that verb, e.g., 'aaxuṣhum 'I take them'. Other examples are:

<i>sa-kulhum.</i>	'I will eat them.'
<i>yisillāhum.</i>	'He takes them; he picks them up.'
<i>nifrabhum.</i>	'We drink them.'

If the verb ends with a vowel, the vowel is lengthened before the object pronoun:

<i>'astiiha.</i>	'I like it (f.).'
<i>yifrabuuha.</i>	'They (m.) drink it (f.).'
<i>'iṣjabnaahum.</i>	'(We pleased them.) They liked us.'

These suffixed pronouns are the same as those that are suffixed to nouns, except the one that corresponds to the first person singular. It is -ni:

bayt 'house' → bayti 'my house'
 yaaxuδ 'he takes' → yaaxuδni 'He takes me.'

5. Demonstratives

The demonstratives in SA are:

<u>Masc. Sing.</u>	<u>Fem. Sing.</u>	<u>Plural</u>
haaδa	haaδi	haaδawlaa'
haδaak	haδiik	haaδawlaak

There are other forms that are used in free variation with the forms above but they are less commonly used, e.g.,

haaδa or δayya, haaδi or tayyih
haaδawlaa' or δawlaa'i
haδaak or δaak, haδiik or δiik

Note the following constructions:

haaδi l-bint Haaliya.	'This girl is beautiful.'
haaδi bint Haaliya.	'This is a beautiful girl.'
haaδi l-bint al-Haaliya	'this beautiful girl ...'

In the first sentence, the definite noun l-bint is part of the subject of the sentence: haaδi l-bint 'this girl'. In the second sentence haaδi 'this' is the entire subject of the sentence. Due to interference from English, English speakers have a tendency to equate haaδi sayyaara with 'this car', which is wrong. Remember that if the noun after the demonstrative is definite, you have a phrase and not a sentence, e.g., haaδa l-walad 'this boy ...'; if it is indefinite, you have a sentence, e.g., haaδa walad. 'This is a boy.' If we want to express the meaning of 'This is the ...', the independent personal

pronoun is inserted between the demonstrative and the definite noun, e.g., haaḍi hiy al-bint al-Haaliya. 'This is the beautiful girl.'

6. maHHad 'no one, nobody'

maHHad is a combination of ma 'aHad (lit., "not anyone, no one"). 'aHad 'someone, anyone' is used in a question or a negative statement: fii 'aHad ? 'Is there anyone?' la maabi/ 'aHad. 'No, there isn't anyone.' waaHid 'someone' is used in a positive statement.

<u>fii waaHid yiṣṭaḡil haana.</u>	'There is someone (m.) who works here.'
<u>waaHid bi-yudrus w-waaHid bi-yuktub.</u>	'Someone (m.) is studying and another (m.) is writing.'
<u>waaHid minhum</u>	'one of them (m.)'

If the noun that waaHid refers to is feminine, use the feminine form waaHida. maHHad is used for males or males and females.

NOTES ON TEXT

1. 'usra is used almost interchangeably with 9aa'ila, although 9aa'ila is sometimes used as a euphemism for wife.
2. ba9ḡ al-'aHyaan or ba9ḡ al-'awḡaat are sometimes used instead of zaaratHiin.
3. Learn 'aLLa yi9iinak w-yigawwiik! 'God help you and give you strength!' as a formula at this stage.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

'ant: maHHad yfuufak. 'You (m.s.): No one sees you (m.s).'

Example: T: huw 'he'

S: maHHad yfuufa. 'He: No one sees him.'

- | | | |
|------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. hiy | 7. 'iHna | 13. 'ant |
| 2. hum | 8. hin | 14. 'ana |
| 3. 'anti | 9. 'antu | 15. 'al-'awlaad |
| 4. haḍaak | 10. haaḍawlaa' | 16. haḍiik |
| 5. haḍiik | 11. haaḍawlaak | 17. haḍaak |
| 6. 'antayn | 12. huw | 18. haaḍawlaak |

Drill 2 Transformation: conjugation

'ana: 'asiir 'aḥ-fuGl aS-SubH w-'arja9 saa9at xams.

'I: I go to work in the morning and return at five.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|----------------|
| 1. hiy | 6. 'antayn | 11. haḍaak |
| 2. huw | 7. hin | 12. haḍiik |
| 3. 'ant | 8. 'iHna | 13. kulluna |
| 4. 'antu | 9. 'ana | 14. haaḍawlaak |
| 5. 'anti | 10. haaḍi | 15. haḍiik |

Drill 3 Repetition (singular → plural)

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| a. bank → bunuuk | bayt → buyuut | fiis → fuluus |
| faḥl → fuḥuul | hindi → hunuud | ḥayf → ḥuyuuf |
| b. fuGl → 'aḥGaal | suug → 'aswaag | si9r → 'as9aar |
| yawm → 'ayyaam | walad → 'awlaad | lawn → 'alwaan |

- | | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 'ism → 'asmaa' | galam → 'aglaam | Hiin → 'aHyaan |
| Haal → 'aHwaal | ḥay' → 'aḥyaa' | |
| c. daftar → dafaatir | taksi → takaasi | fundug → fanaadig |
| maktab → makaatib | madrasa → madaaris | |
| d. Taalib → Tullaab | kaatib → kuttaab | |
| e. 'aHmar → Humr | 'axḥar → xuḥr | 'azrag → zurg |
| 'aSfar → Sufr | 'abyaḥ → biḥ | 'aswad → suud |
| f. kiilo → kiilowaat | baaṢ → baaṢaat | mustaḥfa → mustaḥfayaat |
| g. bint → banaat | 'uxt → 'axawaat | sana → sanawaat |
| h. yamani → yamaniyyiin | kuwayti → kuwaytiyyiin | |
| 'urduni → 'urduniyyiin | 'amriiki → 'amriikiyyiin | |
| | 'ingiliizi → 'ingiliiz | |
| i. Sadiig → 'aSdigaa' | Tabiib → 'aṬibbaa' | 'ax → 'ixwa |
| madiina → mudun | ḥaagi → ḥagaa | maw9id → mawaa9iid |
| balad → bilaad | mudīir → mudaraa' | gariib → gariibiin |

Drill 4 Transformation: singular → plural

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. haaḍa walad. | 7. haaḍa l-walad 'abyaḥ. |
| 2. haḍiik bint. | 8. haaḍa l-kaatib miSri. |
| 3. huw fi l-madrasa. | 9. 'al-muhandis 'ingiliizi. |
| 4. 'al-baaṢ gariib. | 10. 'uxti Taaliba. |
| 5. haaḍa kitaab 'aHmar. | 11. li haana sana waaHida. |
| 6. huw kaatib miSri. | 12. 'aṬ-Taalib yiṣti kitaab w-galam. |

Drill 5 Transformation: imperative → negative statement

Example: T: *ʃuf al-mudiir!* 'See the director!'

S: *ma 'agdar 'aʃuuf al-mudiir.* 'I cannot see the director.'

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>ruH aT-Tabiib!</i> | 9. <i>'addii-li \$100!</i> |
| 2. <i>xuδ taksi!</i> | 10. <i>'iʃrab biira!</i> |
| 3. <i>'iftaH al-kitaab!</i> | 11. <i>tkallam b-l-9arabi!</i> |
| 4. <i>jurr fuluus min al-bank!</i> | 12. <i>'udrus 9arabi kull yawm!</i> |
| 5. <i>'uktub 'ismak b-l-9arabi!</i> | 13. <i>'idfa9 fuluus 'ila l-bank!</i> |
| 6. <i>ruH b-s-sayyaara!</i> | 14. <i>'iʃtari sayyaara!</i> |
| 7. <i>ta9aal b-l-baaS!</i> | 15. <i>'irja9 ma9aana b-l-baaS!</i> |
| 8. <i>sir 'ila s-suug!</i> | 16. <i>ʃill al-'awlaad b-s-sayyaara!</i> |

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

'aʃti 'aʃuuf al-'awlaad. 'I want to see the children.'

- | | | |
|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <i>huw</i> | 6. <i>now</i> | 11. <i>'ant</i> |
| 2. <i>hiy</i> | 7. <i>at 10:30</i> | 12. <i>'anti</i> |
| 3. <i>haḡaak</i> | 8. <i>tomorrow</i> | 13. <i>at home</i> |
| 4. <i>'iHna</i> | 9. <i>hin</i> | 14. <i>'antu</i> |
| 5. <i>hum</i> | 10. <i>'ana</i> | 15. <i>'antayn</i> |

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

'al-madrasa tiftaH al-yawm. 'The school opens today.'

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>tomorrow</i> | 6. <i>today</i> | 11. <i>the ministry</i> |
| 2. <i>morning</i> | 7. <i>negative</i> | 12. <i>the market</i> |
| 3. <i>at 8:30</i> | 8. <i>at noon</i> | 13. <i>at 4:00 p.m.</i> |
| 4. <i>'al-bank</i> | 9. <i>at 8:00</i> | 14. <i>on Friday</i> |
| 5. <i>at night</i> | 10. <i>positive</i> | 15. <i>every day</i> |

Drill 8 Substitution

'as-sayyaara Gaaliya. 'The car is expensive.'

- | | | |
|--------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. blue | 6. white | 11. gold |
| 2. cheap | 7. red | 12. cold |
| 3. close by | 8. green | 13. hot |
| 4. expensive | 9. yellow | 14. American |
| 5. black | 10. grey | 15. far away |

Drill 9 Substitution

hiy tisti tistari rizz. 'She wants to buy (some) rice.'

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. car | 6. something | 11. bell peppers |
| 2. books | 7. milk | 12. hot pepper |
| 3. haḍaak | 8. cheese | 13. fish |
| 4. haaḍawlaak | 9. apricots | 14. apples |
| 5. everything | 10. potatoes | 15. haaḍawlaa' |

Drill 10 Translation

1. Meat is expensive today, but fish is inexpensive.
2. These apples are yellow, but those are red.
3. I am not working today because today is Friday.
4. I want to go to the bank because I want to withdraw some money.
5. No one is working today because it is Friday, not Thursday.
6. One of my friends is an engineer in the Ministry of Agriculture.
7. I would like to get some Arabic bread. This bread is French.
8. He goes to work at 7:00 a.m. and returns at 3:30 p.m.
9. How is the family and children? Not bad, than you.
10. I pick up the children from school sometimes and take them home.

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 'ismaa9iil : 'ant mutazawwij ya 'ax mahdi ?
 mahdi : 'ii na9am. 'al-Hamdu lillaah.
 'ismaa9iil : kam walad 9indak ?
 mahdi : 0alaa0at 'awlaad w-bintayn.
 'ismaa9iil : bi-yudrusu fi l-madrasa kulluhum ?
 mahdi : maafi. bass waladayn w-bint. b-afillahum aS-SubH
 as-saa9a 0amaan w-bi-yirja9u saa9at 0intayn ba9d
 a0-0uhr.
 'ismaa9iil : tamaam.
2. sayda : ba9iida ta9izz min haana ya zaynab ?
 zaynab : maafi. bass sa9atayn b-s-sayyaara.
 sayda : 'agdar 'ruuH b-l-baaS ?
 zaynab : na9am tigdari. 'al-baaSaat tsiir kull yawm.
 sayda : kam ryaal b-l-baaS ?
 zaynab : 9i9riin ryaal. 9a-tsiiri Gudwa ?
 sayda : la ba9d Gudwa w-sa-rja9 ba9d xamsat 'ayyaam n/saaLLa.
 zaynab : ma9 as-salaama ya sayda!
 sayda : sallam!f aLLaah!

U N I T 1 9

I. TEXT

fi maHaTTat al-batrool

- Hasan : Gaadi 'aw mumtaaz ?
mHammad : mumtaaz law samaHt.
Hasan : kam galoon tifti ?
mHammad : malli t-taaniki!
Hasan : Haaḡir.
mHammad : naḡḡif az-zujaaj law samaHt! wasx kaḡir! w-tfaagad
al-9ijiil!
Hasan : tamaam! ... 'at-taayiraat tamaam.
mHammad : tfaagad taaniki l-mee' w-s-saliit!
Hasan : naahi taaniki l-mee' yifti mee' fwayya. 'as-saliit
galii!. tifti gumgumi saliit.

mHammad : kam ? 'iddii-li faatuura!
Hasan : tafaḡḡal (handing him the bill)! 0amanTa9Jar ryaal.
mHammad : tafaḡḡal! 9iJriin ryaal! 'ayn al-baagi?
Hasan : 'al-baagi ryaalayn. tafaḡḡal!

II. TRANSLATION

At the Gas Station

- Hasan : Regular or super?
Muhammad : Super, if you please.
Hasan : How many gallons do you want?
Muhammad : Fill the tank!
Hasan : Yes, sir.
Muhammad : Clean the glass, please! It's very dirty. Check the
tires!
Hasan : Right! The tires are good.

- Muhammad : Check the radiator and the oil.
 Hasan : Fine! The radiator needs a little water. The oil is low.
 You need a can of motor oil.
- Muhammad : How much? Give me a bill!
 Hasan : Here (handing him the bill)! Eighteen riyals.
 Muhammad : Here! Twenty riyals. Where is the change?
 Hasan : The remainder is two riyals. Here!

III. VOCABULARY

maHaTTa	(-aat) station, e.g., gas station, bus station
batrool	gasoline; petroleum
9aadi	(-yyiin) regular; ordinary
mumtaaz	(-iin) super; excellent, superb
galoon	(-aat) gallon
malli!	Fill! Fill up!
taaniki	(tawaan'ki) tank, e.g., gasoline tank, water tank, etc.
naḡḡif!	Clean!
zujaaj	glass
wasx	(-iin) dirty, filthy
tfaagad!	Check!
9ijiil	tires (s. <u>9ajala</u>). syn. <u>taayiraat</u>
taayiraat	tires (s. <u>taayir</u>). syn. <u>9ijiil</u>
taaniki l-mee'	the water tank, the water reservoir
saliit	motor oil
gumgumi	(gamaagim) can, e.g., can of motor oil
faatuura	(fawaatiir) bill, invoice

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

naḡiif	(niḡaaf, -iin) clean	jamiil	(-iin) beautiful; handsome
Tawiil	(Tiwaal) tall; long	ḡaruuri	(-yyiin) necessary
gaSiir	(giSaar) short	gafaS	(gifaaS) package
fiigaara	(fiigaayir) cigarette		

jadiid	(jidaad) new	gafaS jigaayir	package of
gadiim	(gidaam) old, not new		cigarettes
gaS9a	(giSa9) small can (e.g., of tomatoe sauce)		

V. GRAMMAR

Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems of the verbs 'to fill, fill up', 'to clean' and 'to check' are the same as the masculine singular forms of the imperatives:

maali!	'Fill! Fill up!'	-----	-malli-	'to fill up'
naḡḡif!	'Clean!'	-----	-naḡḡif-	'to clean'
tfaagad!	'Check!'	-----	-tfaagad-	'to check'

Examples:

huw yimalli t-taaniki.	'He fills up the tank.'
hum 9a-yinaḡḡifu z-zujaaj.	'They will clean the glass.'
bi-yitfaagad al-9ijiil.	'He is checking the tires.'

NOTE ON TEXT

Haaḡir as a response to an imperative has the meaning of 'yes, certainly, surely ... etc.' and it implies respect.

naḡḡif az-zujaaj!	'Clean the glass!'
Haaḡir.	'Certainly!'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

haaḡa 9aadi. 'This is regular.'

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. handsome | 7. expensive | 13. dirty |
| 2. good | 8. tall | 14. a lot |
| 3. comfortable | 9. short | 15. regular |
| 4. busy | 10. new | 16. not much |
| 5. excellent | 11. old | 17. near |
| 6. cheap | 12. clean | 18. far away |

Drill 2 Substitution

9aadi 'aw mumtaaz? 'Regular or Super'?

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. cheap -- expensive | 8. dry -- humid |
| 2. a lot -- a little | 9. nurse -- doctor |
| 3. short -- long | 10. Arab -- American |
| 4. clean -- dirty | 11. Tali -- 9ijl |
| 5. sick -- fine | 12. far -- near |
| 6. black -- white | 13. necessary -- not necessary |
| 7. hot -- cold | 14. walad -- bint |

Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

T : car

S₁ : haaḡi sayyaara. 'This is a car.'

T : beautiful

S₂ : haaḡi s-sayyaara jamila. 'This car is beautiful.'

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. oil -- regular | 9. eggplant -- black |
| 2. motor oil -- super | 10. apple -- green |
| 3. boy -- tall | 11. bread -- Arabic |

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 4. pen -- yellow | 12. pen -- gold |
| 5. girl -- beautiful | 13. squash -- fresh |
| 6. car -- red | 14. tire -- old |
| 7. apricots -- cheap | 15. house -- dirty |
| 8. bill -- new | 16. tank -- clean |

Drill 4 Combination

haaḍi sayyaara. 'as-sayyaara jamiila → haaḍi s-sayyaara jamiila.
'This is a car. The car is beautiful. → This car is beautiful.'

1. This is motor oil. This motor oil is super.
2. This is a car. The car is new and excellent.
3. These are tires. The tires are new and clean.
4. This is water. The water is cold and clean.
5. This is a tomatoe can. The tomatoe can is cheap.
6. This is a house. The house is cheap but far away.
7. This is a cigarette. The cigarette is long.
8. This is a package of cigarettes. The package of cigarettes is English.
9. This is a boy. The boy is sick and running a temperature.
10. This is a cheese can. The cheese can is Canadian.

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

huw yiṣṭi gafaS ṣiḡaayir. 'He wants a package of cigarettes.'

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. 'ana w-'ant | 8. gumgumi |
| 2. 'antu | 9. Haliib w-sukkar |
| 3. gaS9at TamaaTiis | 10. 'al-'usra |
| 4. hiy w-huw | 11. fresh eggs |
| 5. 'iHna | 12. old car |
| 6. 'ant | 13. 'ana |
| 7. gaS9at jubn | 14. apples and grapes |

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

hiy tinaḡḡif al-bayt. 'She cleans the house.'

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. 'az-zujaaḡ | 7. 'at-taaniki | 13. 'anaḡḡif |
| 2. 'al-Huut | 8. nimalli | 14. huw |
| 3. 'ana | 9. huw | 15. ya'xuḡ |
| 4. 'ant | 10. 'antu | 16. 'antu |
| 5. 'as-sayyaara | 11. titfaagadu | 17. 'as-sayyaara |
| 6. 'iHna | 12. 'ana | 18. 'antayn |

Drill 7 Chain -- Cued

T : haaḡi s-sayyaara Gaaliya ? 'Is this car expensive?'

S : laa maaf Gaaliya. raxiisa kaḡiir.

'No, not expensive. It is very cheap.'

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. haaḡ l-batroot 9aadi ? | 8. haaḡi f-fiigaara ḡaruuriyya ? |
| 2. haaḡi l-faatuura jadiida ? | 9. haaḡa l-gafaS Gaali ? |
| 3. haaḡa l-mee' naḡiif ? | 10. haaḡi l-jaami9a jadiida ? |
| 4. haaḡi l-bint Tawiila ? | 11. haaḡa l-walad gaSiir ? |
| 5. haaḡi l-madrasa ba9iida ? | 12. haaḡa l-gumgumi 'amriiki ? |
| 6. haaḡa l-kitaab gadiim ? | 13. haaḡa l-laHm naahi ? |
| 7. haaḡa l-bayt Gaali ? | 14. haaḡa l-'akl galiil ? |

Drill 8 Transformation: imperative → negative statement

Example: malli t-tadniki! → ma 'agdar 'amalli t-taaniki.

'Fill (m.s.) the tank! → I cannot fill the tank.'

- | | |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. naḡḡiir az-zujaaḡ! | 8. 'irja9 ba9d Gudwa! |
| 2. tfaagad al-9ijiil! | 9. 'imfi la-s-suug! |
| 3. fuf taaniki l-mee'! | 10. fill at-taaniki! |
| 4. 'iftaH al-gumgumi! | 11. xuḡ al-'awlaad b-s-sayyaara! |
| 5. jurr al-fuluus! | 12. ta9aal ma9aana la-l-fundug! |

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| 6. sir ma9i! | 13. 'addii-li \$1,000! |
| 7. ruH b-l-baaS! | 14. 'istaGii fi l-layl! |

Drill 9 Transformation: imperative → negative statement

Example: maalu t-taaniki! → ma nigdar nimalli t-taaniki.
 'Fill (m.p.) the tank! → We cannot fill the tank.'

Use substitutions from Drill 8 above.

Drill 10 Question -- Answer

1. 9indak sayyaara jadiida ? truuH la-s-suGii b-s-sayyaara ?
2. man yidfa9 faatuurat al-mee' ?
3. 'ayn tuskun ? ba9iid min af-suGii ?
4. 'al-batroot Gaali fi -l-yaman ? b-kam al-galoon?
5. kayf al-'usra w-l-'awlaad ?
6. ti/rab biira zaaratHiin ?
7. 'ayy saa9a tirja9 min af-suGii ? b-l-baaS 'aw ta'xuδ taksi ?
8. yumkin tilga HabHab fi s-suug δalHiin ?
9. 'ayf ti/ti ta'kul ? laHm, Huut, faaSuulya, dajaaj ?
10. 9a-tsiir al-Hodayda Gudwa ? b-s-sayyaara 'aw b-l-baaS ?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. yaasamiin : 'anti mafGuula kaθiir al-yawm ya 'amiina ?
 'amiina : 'asti 'anaδδif al-bayt δalHiin w-ba9da ja-ruuH as-suug
 9ala sibb 'astari Tali w-biibar.
 yaasamiin : 'anti taruuHi la-s-suug kull yawm ?
 'amiina : maafi. zaaratHiin.
 yaasamiin : 'aLLaah yi9iini/s w-yigawwiis!
 'amiina : xaatri/s!
 yaasamiin : ma9 as-salaama!
 'amiina : 'aLLa ysallim/s.

2. Husayn : 'ayn 9a-tsiir ya 9abdaLLa ?
9abdaLLa : maHaTTat al-batrool.
Husayn : tiſti batrool ? 'al-batrool Gaali fi l-yaman.
9abdaLLa : kull ſay' Gaali fi l-yaman.
Husayn : tiſti tsiir as-suug ba9da ?
9abdaLLa : 'ii na9am. ta9aal ma9i!
Husayn : Tayyib. baarak aLLa fiik ya 9abdaLLa!

U N I T 2 0

I. TEXT

fi warfat as-sayyaaraat

- SaaliH : SabbaHak aLLa b-l-xayr ya Hasan!
Hasan : SabaaH al-xayr w-l-9aafiya! ha! jibt as-sayyaara ?
SaaliH : na9am. jibtaha 9ala sibb 'asti k' titfaagadha. 'as-siraajaat
Haggaha maaf naahiyyin.
Hasan : yumkin al-baTaarya maaf gawiyya.
SaaliH : waLLaah as-siraajaat ma gadhum' naahiyyin. ma 'adriif
al-mi/kila.
Hasan : Tayyib xalliha. fa-tfaagadha Gudwa n/saaLLa. haa6a
l-'usbuu9 ma/Guuliin ka0iir.
SaaliH : tamaam! baddil as-saliit law samaHt! 'ayy Hiin 'ajiilha ?
Hasan : 9afwan! 'ana nsitt. Gudwa al-jum9a 9uTla. laa tiji Gudwa!
mGalligfin. ta9aal ba9d Gudwa 'as-sabt.
SaaliH : tamaam! 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
Hasan : wa 9alaykum as-salaam. ma9 as-salaama!

II. TRANSLATION

At the Garage

- Salih : Good morning, Hasan!
Hasan : Good morning. Ha! Have you brought the car?
Salih : Yes. I brought it because I want you to check it. Its lights
are not good.
Hasan : It might be that the battery is not strong.
Salih : Its lights are not good. I do not know the problem.
Hasan : O.K. Leave it! I will check it tomorrow. This week we are
very busy.
Salih : Right! Change the oil, please! When shall I come back for
it ?

Hasan : Don't come tomorrow! Sorry! I forgot. Tomorrow, Friday, is a holiday. We are closed. Come after tomorrow, Saturday.

Salih : O.K. Goodbye!

Hasan : Goodbye.

III. VOCABULARY

warsa	(-aat) workshop
jibt ?	Did you (m.s.) bring ?
jibtaha	I brought it.
siraaj	(-aat) light of a car; lamp, lantern
Hagg	belonging to
baTaarya	(-aat) battery
gawi	(-yyiin) strong
ma gadhumf	they are not
-dri-	to know
miskila	(masaaki) problem
-xalli-	to leave s.th; to leave alone
'usbuu9	('asaabii9) week
masGuuliin	busy (s. <u>masGuul</u>)
-baddil-	to change
9afwan!	Sorry!
nsiit	I forgot
9uTla	(9uTal) holiday

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

fagiir	(-iin, fugara) poor	majnuun	(majaaniin) crazy, insane
Gani	(-yyiin, 'aGniya) rich	Sa9b	(-iin) difficult
samiin	(simaan) fat	sahl	(-iin) easy
naHiif	(niHaaf) skinny, thin	sahr	('ashir) month
9a9iif	(-iin, 9u9afa) weak	mikaaniiki	(-yyiin) mechanic;
9aagil	(-iin) rational, wise		mechanical

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stem of the verb 'to leave s.th., to leave alone' is the same as the imperative form xalli!, i.e., -xalli-. *Ja-xalliha haana.* 'I will leave it here.'

-xalli- may take an imperfect tense or an imperative after it, and the meaning is 'to let s.o. do s.th., make s.o. do s.th.:'

<i>Ja-xallii yitfaagadha.</i>	'I will let him check it.'
	'I will make him check it.'
<i>yisti yxalliina nistaGil.</i>	'He wants to let us work.'
	'He wants to make us work.'
<i>xalliihum yistaGilu!</i>	'Let them work!'
	'Make them work.'
<i>xalliini 'astaGil!</i>	'Let me work!'

2. Verbs -- Perfect Tense

Two perfect tense verbs are introduced in this lesson: jibt 'you (m.s.) brought' and nsiit 'I forgot.' Perfect tense verbs will be discussed at a later stage. For now, learn the following forms:

'ana jibt.	'I brought.'	'ant jibt.	'You (m.s.) brought.'
'anti jibti	'You (f.s.) brought.'	'antu jibtu.	'You (m.p.) brought.'
'ana nsiit.	'I forgot!'	'ant nsiit.	'You (m.s.) forgot.'
'anti nsiiti.	'You (f.s.) forgot.'	'antu nsiitu.	'You (m.p.) forgot.'

A perfect tense verb, like a present tense verb, may take a suffixed object pronoun (See UNIT 18):

jibtaha. 'I brought it; you (m.s.) brought it.'
 nsituuhum. 'You (m.p.) forgot them.'

3. The Particle Hagg

There are two ways of expressing possession in SA:

(a) Noun Construct: N + N or N + Pronoun:

warfat Hasan 'Hasan's workshop'
 warfata 'his workshop'

(b) N + Hagg + N or N + Hagg + Pronoun:

'al-warfa Hagg Hasan 'Hasan's workshop'
 'al-warfa Hagg 'his workshop'

Hagg, like any other particle or noun, takes suffixed pronouns:

'as-sayyaara Haggi 'my car'
 'as-sayyaara Haggahum 'their (m.) car'

It is not inflected for gender or number. There is no difference in meaning between warfat Hasan 'Hasan's workshop' or 'al-warfa Hagg Hasan.

4. Negative Commands

A negative command (or request) is used to tell someone not to do something. In SA, a negative command consists of the negative particle laa followed by the imperfect tense of the verb: laa tiji! 'Do not (come)!', laa tafraab biira! 'Do not drink (m.s.) beer!'

<u>Command</u>		<u>Negative Command</u>	
tfaagad!	'Check (m.s.)!'	laa titfaagad!	'Do not check!'
tfaagadi!	'Check (f.s.)!'	laa titfaagadi!	'Do not check!'
tfaagadu!	'Check (m.p.)!'	laa titfaagadu!	'Do not check!'
tfaagadayn!	'Check (f.p.)!'	laa titfaagadayn!	'Do not check!'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: ha! jibt as-sayyaara ?

'Ha! did you (m.s.) bring the car?'

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. baTaarya | 6. laHm | 11. sayyaara |
| 2. taaniki | 7. Huut | 12. 'ant |
| 3. 'antu | 8. siraaaj | 13. Tahiiib |
| 4. mikaaniiki | 9. 'anti | 14. 'antu |
| 5. sawwaag | 10. TamaaTiis | 15. gaat |

Drill 2 Substitution -- Completionma 'adriif' 'ayn as-sayyaara. 'I do not know where the car is.'

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. where the garage is | 8. what her name is |
| 2. where the battery is | 9. what the problem is |
| 3. where the gas station is | 10. what to buy at the market |
| 4. where the boys are | 11. what he wants to do |
| 5. how he works at night | 12. where he comes from |
| 6. how to change the tire | 13. how much he wants to pay |
| 7. how he works all day long | 14. how much he makes (takes) per month |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: 'adri kayf 'aji. 'I know how to come.'

- | | | |
|----------|----------|-------------|
| 1. huw | 6. hiy | 11. 'antu |
| 2. 'iHna | 7. cook | 12. buy qat |
| 3. work | 8. 'ant | 13. return |
| 4. hum | 9. 'anti | 14. hin |
| 5. come | 10. go | 15. 'antayn |

Drill 4 Substitution

haaḡa Haggi. 'This is mine.'

T : hiy 'she'

S : haaḡa Haggaha. 'This is hers.'

- | | | |
|------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. 'ant | 6. 'ana | 11. 'iHna |
| 2. 'anti | 7. 'iHna | 12. hum |
| 3. 'antu | 8. huw | 13. hiy |
| 4. 'antayn | 9. hiy | 14. 'antu |
| 5. hum | 10. hin | 15. 'antayn |

Drill 5 Double Substitution

'as-sayyaara Hagg aḡ-ḡarika. 'The car belongs to the company.'
'the company car'

- | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. garage -- Ali | 6. tire -- car | 11. watch -- teacher |
| 2. battery -- car | 7. cigarettes -- Yahya | 12. food -- workmen |
| 3. light -- house | 8. taxi -- hotel | 13. bus -- company |
| 4. books -- school | 9. money -- bank | 14. bank -- government |
| 5. pens -- clerk | 10. pencils -- students | 15. milk -- children |

Drill 6 Transformation: indicative + imperative

Example: 'asti 'asuufha. + xalliini 'asuufha!
 'I would like to see it (f.) + Let me see it!'

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 'asti 'aaxuḡha. | 7. nisti nistari sayyaara. |
| 2. yisti yifraba. | 8. tisti ta'kul haana. |
| 3. yistu yiju. | 9. 'asti 'ajurr fuluus. |
| 4. tisti tistarihum. | 10. yistayn ysiirayn ma9aana. |
| 5. yisti ybaddilha. | 11. nisti nisrab biira. |
| 6. 'asti 'amallii. | 12. yisti yitfaagadha. |

Drill 7 Substitution

xalliini 'aḡufha! 'Let me see it (f.s.)!'

T : hiy 'she'

S : xalliha tḡufha! 'Let her see it (f.s.)!'

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. hum | 6. maryam | 11. huw |
| 2. hin | 7. zayd | 12. hiy |
| 3. 'iHna | 8. 'al-mikaaniiki | 13. hin |
| 4. 'ana | 9. 'as-sawwaag | 14. 'aamina |
| 5. hiy | 10. hum | 15. 'al-muhandis |

Drill 8 Variable Substitution

Base Sentence: baddil as-saliit law samaHt!

'Change the oil, please!'

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. 'al-baTarrya | 6. 'al-9ijiil | 11. taaniki l-mee' |
| 2. ḡalHiin | 7. baddilu | 12. malli |
| 3. tfaagad | 8. 'ant | 13. 'antu |
| 4. 'antu | 9. naḡḡif | 14. 'anti |
| 5. Gudwa | 10. 'al-yawm | 15. malli |

Drill 9 Chain -- Cued

T : Change (m.s.) the oil, please!

S₁ : baddil as-saliit law samaht!

S₂ : Haaşir.

1. Go to the gas station, please!
2. Fill the radiator, please!
3. Clean (f.s.) the house, please!
4. Check the tires, please!
5. Change the tire, please!
6. Open the tomatoe can, please!
7. Come (f.p.) with me now, please!
8. Pay (f.s.) \$1,000, please!
9. Buy (m.p.) some tomatoes, please!
10. Go withdraw some money, please!
11. Take the children to school, please!
12. Check the lights, please!
13. Speak (m.P.) in Arabic now, please!
14. Walk with me to the garage, please!
15. Drink this milk, please!

Drill 10 Combination

haaşa saagi. 'aş-saagi fagiir. → haaşa ş-saagi fagiir.

'This is a workman. The workman is poor. → This workman is poor.'

1. haaşa muhandis. 'al-muhandis samiin.
2. haaşa mudir. 'al-mudir 9aagil.
3. haaşi bint. 'al-bint şa9iifa.
4. haaşi mişkila. 'al-mişkila Sa9ba.
5. haaşa Tabiib. 'aT-Tabiib mumtaaz.
6. haaşawlaa' banaat. 'al-banaat naHiifaat.
7. haaşawlaak mu9allimiin. 'al-mu9allimiin miSriyyiin.
8. haaşa sawwaag. 'as-sawwaag majnuun.

9. haaḍawlaa' ſugaa. 'aſ-ſugaa fagiiriin.
10. haaḍi jaami9a. 'al-jaami9a saħla.
11. haaḍa ſahr. 'aſ-ſahr Tawiil.
12. haaḍa bayyaa9. 'al-bayyaa9 gaSiir w-samiin.

Drill 11 Transformation: imperative → negative command

Example: 'iſrab biira! → laa tiſrab biira!
'Drink (m.s.) beer! → Don't drink beer!'

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. tkallam b-l-9arabi! | 8. ta9aalu l-yawm! |
| 2. 'iſtari bagari! | 9. 'uTbuxi faaSuulya! |
| 3. siiri la-l-madrasa! | 10. ruH 'ila l-warſa! |
| 4. tfaagad as-saliit! | 11. tfaagadu l-9ijiil! |
| 5. naaḡḡifi l-bayt! | 12. 'uktub b-l-'ingiliizi! |
| 6. xuḍu takſi! | 13. 'idfa9u l-fuluus! |
| 7. ruuHayn la-l-fundug! | 14. jurr \$750 min al-bank! |

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. maHmuud : 'ayn 9a-tsiir ya 9ali ?
9ali : ſa-siir as-suug nſaaLLa. 'aſti 'aſtari Tali.
maHmuud : bass al-yawm al-jum9a 9uTla. 'as-suug mGallig.
9ali : tamaam! 'ana nsiit al-yawm al-jum9a.
maHmuud : tigdar truuH Gudwa s-sabt.
9ali : 'ayy saa9a yiftaH as-suug aS-SubH ?
maHmuud : saa9at tisi9 w-yumkin saa9at ḡamaan.

2. yaHya : Sabbaħak aLLaah b-l-xayr ya 'ax yuusif!
yuusif : SabaaH al-xayr w-l-9aafiya.
yaHya : 'ayn as-sayyaara ?
yuusif : 'as-sayaara ma tiſtaGiL. ſa-ruuH al-warſa 9ala sabb yiju
w-yjurruuha.
yaHya : 'ayſ al-miſkila ?

yuusif : taaniki l-mee' gadiim w-maaf naahi w-l-baTaarya gadiima.
'asti 'abaddilha.

yaHya : Tayyib xuδ as-sayyaara Haggi 'aw ta9aal ma9i w-nsiir
al-warsa.

yuusif : baarak aLLaah fiik!

VIII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION (on tape)

Listen to the passage on tape, and then answer the following questions:

1. 'ayn yi9mal 9abd al-gaadir ?
2. huw mudiir 'aw muhandis ?
3. kam ya'xuδ fi s-sahr ?
4. kam la fi l-yaman ? 'i9jabatu San9a ?
5. kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi S-Sayf ?
6. 9abd al-gaadir mutazawwij ?
7. 9inda 'awlaad ? kam walad w-kam bint ?
8. 'ayy saa9a yruuH la-s-suGi ?
9. 'ayy saa9a yirja9 la-l-bayt ?
10. 'ant mutazawwij ? 9indak 'usra kabiira ?

U N I T 2 1

REVIEW

Drill 1 Transformation: positive → negative

1. 'ana min ingiltara.
2. haaga walad gaagil.
3. haagi bint Haaliya.
4. haagawlaa' al-'awlaad naHiifiin.
5. haagawlaak al-mu9allimiin yamaniyyiin.
6. huw yudrus 9arabi kull yawm.
7. 'ant tigidar tijtari sayyaara ?
8. jill al-'awlaad b-s-sayyaara!
9. ruH b-s-sayyaara w-ta9aal b-l-baaS!
10. ta9aal as-saa9a 9ajir aS-SubH!
11. jill al-kutub w-sir la-l-madrasa!
12. jurr fuluusak min al-bank!
13. 9indi maw9id al-yawm.
14. 'al-jaww Haami w-miGbir.
15. hin yudrusayn faransi.
16. 'al-yawm al-xamiis.
17. baddil as-saliit!
18. kul Huut w-rizz kull yawm!

Drill 2 Transformation: statement → question

Ask questions to which the underlined words are the short answers:

1. 'asti 'astari TamaaTiis.
2. Tayyib sukran.
3. maafi. 'atkallam 9arabi jwayya.
4. 'al-jaww baarid w-naajif al-yawm.
5. yistu yudrusu 9arabi.

6. 'adfa9 9i/sriin ryaal bass.
7. 'as-saa9a θintayn 'illa θi1iθ .
8. 'ii na9am. 'al-yawm as-sabt.
9. laa ba's. baarak aLLa fii/s.
10. na9am. 'i9jabatni al-yaman kaθiir.
11. maa/si. 'al-xamiis ba9d ar-rabuu9.
12. mariθ w-9indi Haraara.
13. hin min 9ammaan fi l-'urdun.
14. aT-Tabiib yiji saa9at tisi9.
15. hum ya/saGilu fi wazaarat at-tarbiya.
16. 'ii. 'al-burtagaal raxiis kaθiir al-yawm.
17. li haana xamsat siniin.
18. ya'xuθ θalaaθa 'alf ryaal fi /-sahr.

Drill 3 Transformation: singular → plural

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. haaθa /aagi fagiir. | 9. haaθa T-Taalib mumtaaz. |
| 2. haaθa l-fundug naθiif. | 10. taaniki l-mee' wasx. |
| 3. haaθi l-bint Haaliya. | 11. aT-Taalib fi l-madrasa. |
| 4. haaθi l-madrasa jadiida. | 12. 'al-mu9allim ma/sGuu; θalHiin. |
| 5. yi/sti yi/stari galam w-daftar. | 13. 'ant mutazaww'i ? |
| 6. 'idfa9 al-faactuura! | 14. kayf Haalak ? n/saalLa murtaaH. |
| 7. tigdar tiji Gudwa ? | 15. 'al-mustafsa gadiim bass naθiif. |
| 8. mudiiir af-/arika ma/sGuul. | 16. 'agdar 'alqa Huut w-bagari. |

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

9indi maw9id al-yawm. 'I have an appointment today.'

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. at 1:00 p.m. | 11. at 1:55 p.m. |
| 2. in the morning | 12. today |
| 3. you (m.s.) | 13. hum |
| 4. you (f.s.) | 14. question |
| 5. you (m.p.) | 15. 'antayn |
| 6. you (f.p.) | 16. on Monday |

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 7. tomorrow morning | 17. on Wednesday |
| 8. negative | 18. at 12:30 |
| 9. hiy | 19. on Saturday |
| 10. at 9:45 | 20. on Thursday |

Drill 5 Completion

'ana asti ... 'I would like to ...'

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. go to the market | 9. see the bank manager |
| 2. work at the garage | 10. withdraw YR. 100 |
| 3. buy a gas station | 11. eat Arabic food |
| 4. get a package of cigarettes | 12. go pay (some) money |
| 5. know the problem | 13. give you my books |
| 6. take a holiday | 14. go by car |
| 7. buy a cheese can | 15. come to Yemen |
| 8. check the lights | 16. speak Arabic very well |

Drill 6 Combination

haaḍa walad. 'al-walad samiin. → haaḍa l-walad samiin.
'This is a boy. The boy is fat. → This boy is fat.'

1. This is gasoline. The gasoline is regulr, not super.
2. This is a book. The book is new, not old.
3. These are tomatoes. The tomatoes are very expensive.
4. These are boys. The boys are fat, not thin.
5. These are girls. The girls are skinny, not thin.
6. This is a package of cigarettes. It is American.
7. This is a workshop. The workshop is far, not close.
8. This is a patient. The patient is feverish.
9. This is cheese. The cheese is white, not green.
10. This is a problem. The problem is difficult, not easy.
11. These are teachers. The teachers are poor, not rich.
12. This is a battery. The battery is weak, not strong.

13. These are girls. The girls are sane, not crazy.
14. This is a secretary (f.). The secretary is beautiful, but fat.
15. This is a holiday. The holiday is short, not long.
16. This is money. The money is little, not much.
17. This is qat. The qat is expensive, not cheap.
18. This is a nurse. The nurse is English, not American.

Drill 7 Chain

- a. S₁ : haaḍi 'awwal marra tiji l-yaman ?
'Is this the first time you come to Yemen?'
- S₂ : maaḍi. haaḍi ṯaani marra.
'No, this is the second time.'

Carry on through the tenth time.

Drill 8 Chain

- b. S₁ : 'as-saa9a waaHida. 'It's one o'clock.'
- S₂ : 'as-saa9a waaHida w-waaHida. 'It's 1:01.'
- S₃ : 'as-saa9a waaHida w-ṯalaaṯ. 'It's 1:03.'

Carry on through 2:00 o'clock.

Drill 9 Identification

Individual students are asked to read the following numerals.

20	15	18	19	13	17
100	130	170	190	200	210
201	317	325	940	1,000	1,005
1,492	1,914	4,789	1,948	1,973	2,730
21	215	3,986	7,002	1,001	10,379

Drill 10 Question--Answer

1. kam lak haana ? nʃaaLLa 'i9jabatak al-yaman ?
2. 'ant mutazawwij ? kam walad 9inak ?
3. 'al-'awlaad kulluhum fi l-madrasa ?
4. 'ayn ti9mal ? 'ant murtaaH fi ʃ-ʃuG1 ?
5. kam ryaal ta'xuḡ fi ʃ-ʃahr ?
6. tiʃtaG1l yawm al-xamiis w-l-jum9a ?
7. 'ayʃ ti9mal yawm al-jum9a ?
8. kam yawm 9uT1a ta'xuḡ fi s-sana ?
9. kayf al-jaww fi San9a fi faS1 aS-Sayf ? fi ʃ-ʃitaa' ?
10. min 'ayy wilaaya 'ant ? min 'ayy madiina ?
11. kayf al-jaww hownaak fi r-rabi9 ? w-fi l-xariif ?
12. kayf al-'as9aar fi l-yaman ? kull ʃay' Gaali ?

U N I T 2 2

I. TEXT

fi l-maTaar (i)

- 'al-kaatib : 'at-taḡkara w-l-jawaaz law samaHt!
 'al-musaafir : tafaḡḡal!
 'al-kaatib : 9indak ta'siira Hagg landan ?
 'al-musaafir : maabis. ja-xuḡha fi maTaar landan. 'ana 'amriiki. ma
 'astiis ta'siira.
 'al-kaatib : 'ii na9am. kam samTa ma9aak ?
 'al-musaafir : samTatayn.
 'al-kaatib : ('ila l-Hammaal) siil as-simiit w-HuTTahum 9ala
 l-miizaan! ('ila l-musaafir) ma9aak simiit ṡaaiyiin ?
 'al-musaafir : maafi. bass haaḡi samTat yadd.
 'al-kaatib : 9indak ziyaada xamsa kiilo. 'iddii-li miya w-xamsa
 ryaal Hagg az-ziyaada, w-xamsiin ryaal ḡariibat
 al-maTaar. kull musaafir laazim yidfa9 xamsiin ryaal.
 'al-musaafir : tafaḡḡal! miya w-xamsa w-xamsiin ryaal.
 'al-kaatib : malli haaḡi l-biTaaga w-ba9da laazim 9alayk truuH
 al-jawaazaat fiisa9.

II. TRANSLATION

At the Airport (i)

- Clerk : The ticket and the passport please!
 Traveller : Here!
 Clerk : Do you have a visa for London?
 Traveller : No. I will take it at London Airport. I am an American.
 I do not need a visa.
 Clerk : Right! How many bags to you have?
 Traveller : Two.

- Clerk : (to the porter) Lift the bags and put them on the scales!
(to the traveller) Do you have other bags?
- Traveller : No, but this is a handbag.
- Clerk : You have five kilograms of excess baggage. Give me YR.
105.00 for excess baggage and fifty riyals for the airport
tax. Every passenger must pay fifty riyals.
- Traveller : Here you are! One hundred and fifty-five riyals.
- Clerk : Fill this card and then you should go to the passports
section right away.

III. VOCABULARY

maTaar	(-aat) airport
kaatib	(kuttaab) clerk; writer
musaafir	(-iin) traveller, passenger
taḡkara	(taḡaakir) ticket
jawaaz	(-aat) passport
ta'ḡiira	(-aat) visa
ḡamTa	(ḡimiiT) bag, suitcase
Hammaal	(-iin) porter, carrier
-ḡiil-	to lift; to carry
-HuTT-	to put, place
miizaan	(mawaaziin) balance, scales
ḡaani	(-yiin) other; another
yadd	('aydi) hand
ziyaada	(-aat) excess; surplus; increase, increment
ḡariiba	(ḡaraayib) tax, duty
laazim ḡala-	(with foll. imperf.) must; have to; ought to
biTaaga	(-aat) card; ticket
'al-jawaazaat	the passports department
fiisaḡ	adv. fast, quickly, right away

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

bayruut	Beirut
surTi	(surTa) policeman
gaskari	(gaskar) soldier
jays	army; (the) military
jumruk	(jamaarik) customs, duty
dala dala	adv. slowly (syn. <u>swayya swayya</u>)
SaGiir	young; small, little

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbs -- Imperfect Tense

The imperfect stems of the verbs 'to lift; to carry' -siil- and 'to put' -HuTT- are the same as the third person masculine imperative forms: siil! 'Carry; lift (m.s.)!' and HuTf! 'Put (m.s.)!'.

Examples:

hum ysiilu s-simiiT.	'They (m.) carry the suitcases.'
hiy tsiil as-simiiT.	'She carries the suitcases.'
hum yHuTTu s-simiiT.	'They (m.) put the suitcases.'
hiy tHuTT as-simiiT.	'She puts the suitcases.'

2. laazim 9ala-

laazim 9ala- 'must; have to; ought to; (it is) necessary that' is in this lesson followed by the imperfect form of the verb. It is invariable, i.e., it has only one form, but the verb form following it varies according to the subject:

laazim 9alayy 'asiir 9alHiin.	'I have to (must) go now.'
laazim 9alayha tuTbux.	'She ought to cook.'
laazim 9alayna niji l-yawm.	'We should come today.'

The negative of such constructions is made by using the negative particle ma before laazim 9ala-:

ma laazim 9alayy 'asiir 6alHiin. 'I do not have to go now.'
'I must not go now.'

If the meaning is only 'must not, ought not to,...' ma precedes the imperfect tense or it is used after laazim 9ala-:

laazim 9alayy ma 'ajiiſ al-yawm. 'I must not, should not, come today.'

3. 0aani 'another; other'

In UNIT 14, GRAMMAR 2., we had 0aani as an ordinal (derived from 'i0nayn 'two') meaning "the second": 0aani yawm 'the second day', 0aani bint 'the second girl', etc. In this lesson it is used as an adjective following the noun, in which case it agrees with the noun it follows in gender, number, and definiteness. Examples:

maTaar 0aani	'another airport'
maTaaraat 0aaniyiin	'other airports'
ſamTa 0aaniya	'another suitcase'
ſimiiT 0aaniyiin	'other suitcases'
'al-maTaar a0-0aani	'the other airport'
'al-maTaaraat a0-0aaniyiin	'the other airports'
'aſ-ſimiiT a0-0aaniyiin	'the other suitcases'

4. kull 'each, every'

kull followed by an indefinite singular noun means 'each, every' :

kull musaafir	'each passenger'
kull yawm	'every day'

If kull is followed by a suffixed pronoun as in UNIT 3 or followed by a definite noun, it expresses the meaning of 'all of the, the whole of the:

kull al-musaafiriin	'all of the passengers'
kull aſ-ſimiiT	'all the suitcases'
kull al-yawm	'the whole day, all day long'
kull al-madiina	'the whole city'

5. Elative Adjectives

Elative adjectives correspond in meaning to comparative and superlative adjectives in English, e.g., the comparative adjective 'aTwal (from Tawiil 'long; tall') can be used to mean 'longer; taller' or 'longest; tallest', depending upon the construction in which it is used. In this lesson, we will deal with the comparative meaning, i.e., those constructions in which the elative adjective is used when comparing two people or two things.

The elative adjective is formed on the pattern 'aC₁C₂aC₃ from the corresponding simple form of the adjective. Examples:

<u>Simple</u>		<u>Elative</u>
jadiid 'new'	→	'ajdad 'newer'
Tawiil 'long; tall'	→	'aTwal 'longer, taller'
Sa9b 'difficult'	→	'aS9ab 'more difficult'

Other adjectives that are governed by this rule are: raxiis 'cheap, inexpensive', na9iif 'clean', baarid 'cold', mariid 'ill', samiin 'fat', 9a9iif 'weak', sahl 'easy', wasx 'dirty, filthy', etc.

Note the following variations:

(a) Most adjectives ending with -i form their elative forms on the pattern 'aC₁C₂a:

Haali 'beautiful, nice'	→	'aHla 'more beautiful'
Gaali 'expensive'	→	'aGla 'more expensive'
gawi 'strong'	→	'agwa 'stronger'
Gani 'rich'	→	'aGna 'richer'
Haami 'hot'	→	'aHma 'hotter, warmer'

(b) Adjectives in which the second and the third consonants are identical form their relatives on the pattern 'aC₁aC₂C₃ (except for jadiid 'new'): galiil → 'a9all 'less', mainuun → 'ajann, etc.

(c) Other adjectives (including color adjectives) form their elatives by postposing the elative 'akøar 'more' to the adjective:

ɕaruuri	'necessary'	→	ɕaruuri 'akøar	'more necessary'
bunni	'brown'	→	bunni 'akøar	'brownner'
'aHmar	'red'	→	'aHma: 'akøar	'redder'

Elatives in SA, unlike adjectives, are not inflected for gender or number:

'al-walaad	'aTwal.	'The boy is taller.'
'al-bint	'aTwal.	'The girl is taller.'
'al-'awlaad	'aTwal.	'The boys are taller.'
'al-banaat	'aTwal.	'The girls are taller.'
haaɕa bunni	'akøar.	'This (m.) is browner.'
haaɕi bunniyya	'akøar.	'This (f.) is browner.'

Like adjectives, elatives can function as predicates of equational sentences or modifiers of indefinite nouns:

haaɕa 'aHla.	'This (m.) is better, more beautiful.'
haaɕi sayyaara 'aGla.	'This is a more expensive car.'

The preposition min is used after the elative to express the meaning of 'than' in English:

haaɕa 'awsax min ɕaak.	'This is dirtier than that (one).'
bayta 'akbar min bayti.	'His house is bigger than my house.'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: singular → plural

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. haaɕa maTaar jadiid. | 8. haaɕa musaafir 'amriiki. |
| 2. haaɕi taɕkara Gaaliya. | 9. haaɕi biTaaga Hamraa'. |

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 3. haaḍa jawaaz gadiim. | 10. haaḍa l-walad Tawiil. |
| 4. haaḍi ta'siira ḡaruuriyya. | 11. haaḍa l-bayt naḡiif. |
| 5. haaḍi s-samTa sawdaa'. | 12. haaḍa Hammaal samiin. |
| 6. haaḍa miizaan mumtaaz. | 13. haaḍa s-siraaj naahi |
| 7. haaḍi ḡariibat al-maTaar. | 14. haaḍi l-bint naHiifa. |

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'ana sa-HuTT fuluus fi l-bank. 'I will put money in the bank.'

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. hiy | 6. hum | 11. 9abdəLLa |
| 2. 9ali | 7. 'ana | 12. Gudwa |
| 3. 'iHna | 8. sa-jurr | 13. ba9d Gudwa |
| 4. 'anti | 9. maryam | 14. ya'xuḍ |
| 5. 'antayn | 10. 9aa'isa | 15. 'iHna |

Drill 3 Repetition

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. huw ysiil as-simiiT. | 6. 'anti tsiili s-simiiT. |
| 2. num ysiilu s-simiiT. | 7. 'antayn tsiilayn as-simiiT. |
| 3. hiy tsiil as-simiiT. | 8. hiy tsiil as-simiiT. |
| 4. 'ant tsiil as-simiiT. | 9. 'ana 'asiil as-simiiT. |
| 5. 'antu tsiilu s-simiiT. | 10. 'iHna nsiil as-simiiT. |

Drill 4 Repetition

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. siil as-simiiT! | 8. tfaagad al-9ijiil! |
| 2. HuTT as-simiiT haana! | 9. 'iftaH al-gaS9a! |
| 3. xalli s-sayyaara ma9aak! | 10. jurr fuluus! |
| 4. baddil as-saliiT! | 11. sir ma9aana! |
| 5. suf al-mudiir! | 12. 'addii-li l-fuluus! |
| 6. malli t-taaniki! | 13. ruH la-T-Tabiib! |
| 7. naaḡḡif az-zujaaj! | 14. 'israb saahi! |

Drill 5 Transformation: imperative → negative command

ʃiil aʃ-ʃamTa! → laa tʃiil aʃ-ʃamTa!

'Carry (m.s.) the bag! → Don't carry the bag!'

Use the commands in Drill 4, above.

Drill 6 Completion

laazim 9alay ... 'I have to, must, should, ...'

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. study Arabic every day | 9. check the radiator |
| 2. put money in the bank | 10. open the tomatoe can |
| 3. lift the tomatoes | 11. give them \$20 |
| 4. pay the airport tax | 12. see the minister |
| 5. change the tires | 13. check the lights |
| 6. leave it here | 14. take a taxi to the hotel |
| 7. fill the card | 15. buy a new battery |
| 8. clean the car | 16. take those |

Drill 7 Transformation

imperative → ma laazim 9ala- + imperfect

'udrus 9arabi! → ma laazim 9alayy 'adrus 9arabi.

'Study (m.s.) Arabic! → I don't have to study Arabic.'

'I mustn't study Arabic.'

Use the commands in Drill 4, above.

Drill 8 Repetition

1. laazim 9alayy 'aruuH 9al sabb as-saa9a tisi9.
2. laazim 9alayy 'ajurr fuluus 9al sabb ma 9indiiʃ fluus.
3. laazim 9alayy 'aftari tuffaaH 9al sabb 'at-tuffaaH raxiiS.

4. laazim 9alayy 'asiir aT-Tabiib 9al sabb 'ana mariiḡ.
5. laazim 9alayy 'aaxuḡ taksi 9al sabb ma 'agdarj 'amji.
6. laazim 9alayy 'addii-lhum fuluus 9al sabb hum fagiiriin.

Drill 9 Substitution

- a. Substitute huw 'he' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.
- b. Substitute hiy 'she' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.
- c. Substitute 'ant 'you (m.s.)' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.
- d. Substitute 'anti 'you (f.s.)' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.
- e. Substitute 'ihna 'we' for 'ana 'I' in Drill 8, above.

Drill 10 Transformation: positive → relative

Example: T : haaḡa kitaab jaḡiid. 'This is a new book.'
 S : haḡaak kitaab 'ajdad. 'That is a newer book.'

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. haaḡa bayt kabiir. | 8. haaḡi jamTa sawdaa'. |
| 2. 9indi fuluus kaḡiira. | 9. haaḡa jaww Haami. |
| 3. haaḡi taḡkara Gaaliya. | 10. haaḡa T-Tabiib Gani. |
| 4. haaḡa maTaar SaGiir. | 11. haaḡi l-gahwa baarida. |
| 5. haaḡi bint naHiifa. | 12. haaḡi l-madiina Haaliya. |
| 6. haaḡa jawaaz jaḡiid. | 13. haaḡa l-laHm Gaali. |
| 7. haaḡa 9askari Tawiil. | 14. haaḡa j-suGl ḡaruuri. |

Drill 11 Comparison -- Cued

Example: T : maktab -- bayt -- naḡiif
 'office -- house -- clean'
 S : 'al-maktab 'anḡaf min al-bayt.
 'The office is cleaner than the house.'

1. bint -- walad -- Tawiil
2. tuffaaH -- barguug -- Gaali
3. HabHab -- baTTiix -- kabiir
4. baaḡinjaan -- HabHab -- SaGiir
5. bayruut -- 'al-gaahira -- jamiil
6. sayyaarati -- sayyaaratak -- jadiid
7. 'ibb -- San9a -- SaGiir
8. gahwa -- ʃaahi -- ʃaruuri
9. Tali -- Huut -- Gaali
10. kaatib -- mudiiir -- majnuun
11. bint -- walad -- naHiif
12. Hammaal -- ʃaagi -- samiin

Drill 12 Translation

1. Go quickly! You will find him at the airport.
2. Do you have another suitcase? Put it on the scales right away!
3. He is an old man. He walks slowly.
4. I do not have other tickets. This is the other ticket.
5. You will find many soldiers in the marketplace now.
6. There are policemen at the airport, not soldiers.
7. Take your passport and this red card and go to customs right away!
8. Did you bring the tickets with you? Sorry. I forgot.

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. SaaliH : b-kam at-taḡkara la-'amriika?
'al-kaatib : b-xamsa 'alf ryaal yamani.
SaaliH : w-aS-SiGaar?
'al-kaatib : taḡkarat aS-SaGiir nuSS as-si9r. b-'alfayn w-xamsmiya ryaal.
SaaliH : Gaali kaḡiir. 'arxaS maabiʃ?
'al-kaatib : 'arxaS min haaḡa maabiʃ. fi S-Sayf 'aGla.

2. zaynab : min 'ayy balad fi 'amriika 'anti ya nuura ?
 nuura : min madiinat Tucson fi wilaayat Arizona.
 zaynab : Tucson 'akbar min San9a ?
 nuura : maaf 'akbar.
 zaynab : w-l-jaww hownaak 'aHla ?
 nuura : fi s-sitaa' haana 'abrad. fi S-Sayf fi Tucson 'al-jaww
 'aHma w-'anfaf. fi S-Sayf haara ryaaH w-miGbir 'ak0ar
 bass 'abrad.
 zaynab : w-l-maTar ?
 nuura : 'al-maTar haana 'ak0ar w-'agwa.
 zaynab : 9afwan ya nuura! laazim 9alayy 'asiir fiisa9.
 nuura : tafaqqali! ma9 as-salaama!
 zaynab : sallami s aLLa.

U N I T 2 3

I. TEXT

fi l-maTaar (ii)

- 'af-jurTi : haat al-jawaaz w-biTaagat al-xuruuj!
'al-musaafir : Haaḡir! tafaḡḡal!
'af-jurTi : 'ila 'ayn musaafir ?
'al-musaafir : la-landan nḡaaLLa.
'af-jurTi : 'ii tamaam! ḡala l-yamaniyya ḡan Tariig al-ḡaahira.
ḡafaḡḡal!
('al-musaafir yibsir mahdi)
mahdi : 'al-ḡahira nḡaaLLa ?
'af-jurTi : laa. ḡala nafs aT-Tayyaara bass 'ana musaafir
la-landan. maHHad yiḡrifni hownaak.
mahdi : 'ana ḡindi 'aSdigaa' kaḡiriin hownaak. (mahdi yuktub)
xuḡ! haaḡa 'ism w-ḡinwaan w-ragḡm talafoon waahid min
jamaaḡati. Hiin tiwSal hownaak 'ittaSil-bih w-huw
ḡa-yaaxuḡak w-ywarriik landan.

II. TRANSLATION

At the Airport (ii)

- Policeman : Give me the passport and the boarding pass!
Traveller : Yes, sir! Here!
Policeman : Where are you travelling?
Traveller : To London, I hope.
Policeman : You are right! On Yamaniya by way of Cairo. Here!
(Passenger sees Mahdi)
Mahdi : To Cairo, I hope.
Traveller : No. On the same plane, but I am going to London. No one
knows me there.

Mahdi : I have many friends there. (Mahdi writes) Here! This is the name, the address and the telephone number of one of my relatives. When you arrive there, contact him and he will take you and show you London.

III. VOCABULARY

haat!	Give (me, us)! Bring!
xuruuj	v.n. exit, going out
biTaagat xuruuj	boarding pass
musaafir	act. part. (-iin) travelling
'al-yamaniyya	Yamaniya Airline
Tariig	(Turug) way; road
9an Tariig	by way of, via
-bsir-	to see; to watch
nafs	(with foll. genit.) the same
Tayyaara	(-aat) airplane
-9rif-	to know
Sadiig	('aSdigaa') friend
9inwaan	(9anaawiin) address; title, e.g., of a lecture
ragam	('argaam) number, No.; numeral
talafoon	(-aat) telephone
waaHid min	one of
jamaa9a	relatives, kinsfolk; group of people
Hiin	conj. when, at the time when
-wSal-	to arrive at a place
-ttaSil- b-	to contact s.o.
-warri-	to show s.o. s.th.

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

jinsiyya	(-aat) nationality; citizenship
'iglaa9	v.n. departure (of a plane), taking off
wuSuul	v.n. arrival
makaan	('amaakin) place, location

wilaada	v.n. birth, delivery
makaan al-wilaada	birthplace
duxuul	v.n. entrance, entry
taariix	(tawariix) date; history
'al-faransiyya	the French (plane, airline, company), Air France
'as-su9uudiyya	Saudia (Airline)
'al-'alMaaniyya	the German Airline, Lufthansa
jaari9	(jawaari9) street
lamman	conj. when, at the time when (syn. <u>Hiin</u>)
-saafir-	to travel
-rja9-	to return, go back

V. GRAMMAR

1. Erelative Adjectives

huw 'akbar walad.	'He is the biggest, oldest boy.'
hiy 'akbar bint.	'She is the biggest, oldest girl.'
huw 'akbar al-'awlaad.	'He is the biggest, oldest of (the) boys.'
hiy 'akbar al-banaat.	'She is the biggest, oldest of (the) girls.'
hum 'akbar al-'awlaad.	'They (m.) are the biggest, oldest of the boys.'
hin 'akbar al-banaat.	'They (f.) are the biggest, oldest of the girls.'

There are two major constructions in which the superlative meaning of the SA elatives is expressed. In the first two sentences the elative 'akbar is followed by a singular indefinite noun, which corresponds to English 'the biggest, oldest boy (girl)'. In the third and fourth sentences the elative construction contains a plural definite noun, and corresponds to English 'the biggest of (the) boys (girls)'. In the last two sentences the subject is plural, masculine and feminine, respectively. The elative in all the sentences is invariable; it is not inflected for gender or number.

If the elative is used predicatively, i.e., if it is the predicate of an equational sentence, it takes the article prefix for expressing the superlative meaning:

huw al-'akbar.	'He is the biggest, oldest.'
hiy al-'aHla.	'She is the most beautiful.'

The superlative meaning of adjectives that do not have associated elative forms (see UNIT 22, GRAMMAR 5) is expressed by the adjective followed by 'akθar 'the most' followed by waaHid 'one':

huw maŕGuul akθar waaHid. 'He is the busiest (one).'

2. The Conjunction Hiin

Hiin is a conjunction in SA and has the following range of English equivalents: 'when', 'whenever', 'as soon as', 'any time that', etc.

Hiin tiwSal ittaSil bih.	'When you (m.s.) arrive, contact him.'
Hiin yiwSal laazim 9alayh ysiir al-9amal.	'As soon as he arrives, he must go to work.'
Hiin yiŕrab yiŕrab kaθiir.	'Whenever he drinks, he drinks a lot.'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Repetition

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 'ana musaafir Gudwa. | 6. hum musaafiriin Gudwa. |
| 2. huw musaafir Gudwa. | 7. 'iHna musaafiriin Gudwa. |
| 3. 'antu musaafir Gudwa. | 8. 'antu musaafiriin Gudwa. |
| 4. 'anti musaafira Gudwa. | 9. 'antayn musaafiraat Gudwa. |
| 5. hiy musaafira Gudwa. | 10. hin musaafiraat Gudwa. |

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'ana musaafir al-gaahira. 'I am travelling to Cairo.'

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. hiy | 6. 'ant | 11. bayruut |
| 2. huw | 7. ba9d saa9a | 12. miSr |
| 3. 'antu | 8. 'anti | 13. now |
| 4. hum | 9. 'iHna | 14. hin |
| 5. 'al-yawm | 10. 'ana | 15. 'antayn |

Drill 3 Completion

ana ma 'a9rif ... 'I do not know ...'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. what his name is | 8. where the entrance is |
| 2. what the phone number is | 9. where the boarding pass is |
| 3. what his nationality is | 10. how to get to the place |
| 4. what the date is | 11. how to contact him |
| 5. what his address is | 12. how to return home |
| 6. where the place is | 13. how I can see the film |
| 7. where the exit is | 14. how to show you the place |

Drill 4 Transformation: positive + relative

Example: T : haaða /-saari9 Tawiil. 'This street is long.'

S₁ : haaða /-saari9 'aTwal min haðaak a/-saari9.

'This street is longer than that street.'

S₂ : haaða 'aTwal saari9. 'This is the longest street.'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. haaða l-9inwaan jadiid. | 8. haaði l-'as9aar Gaaliya. |
| 2. haaða t-talafoon gadiim. | 9. haaða l-musaafir majnuun. |
| 3. haaða l-makaan naðiif. | 10. haaða l-maTaar kabiir. |
| 4. haaði l-bint Haaliya. | 11. haaði l-biTaaga waSxa. |
| 5. haaði t-taðkara Gaaliya. | 12. haaða l-walad 9aagil. |

6. haaḡi T-Tayyaara jadiida. 13. haaḡa T-Tariig sahl.
7. haaḡa l-Hammaal fagiir. 14. haaḡi l-miḡkila Saḡba.

Drill 5 Substitution

T : see the place
S : Hiin tiwSaḡ hownaak fuf al-makaan.
'When you get there, see the place.'

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. show them the card | 8. walk to the office |
| 2. contact them | 9. clean the car |
| 3. go to the hotel | 10. withdraw the money |
| 4. take a taxi | 11. fill the water tank |
| 5. pay the money | 12. show them the suitcase |
| 6. buy some apples | 13. get some fish |
| 7. go to the hospital | 14. eat Arabic food |

Drill 6 Double Substitution

warrini l-jawaaz! 'Show me the passport!'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. them (m.) -- the tickets | 6. me -- the phone |
| 2. him -- the place | 7. me -- the phone number |
| 3. us -- the address | 8. them (m.) -- place of arrival |
| 4. them (f.) -- the film | 9. us -- place of departure |
| 5. her -- the exit | 10. her -- the bill |

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

yifiti ysaafir Gudwa. 'He wants to travel tomorrow.'

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. 'ana | 6. nirjaḡ | 11. yittaSil biik |
| 2. ḡalHiin | 7. hiy | 12. yruuH |
| 3. baḡd Gudwa | 8. at 10 a.m. | 13. 'iHna |

- | | | |
|----------|---------|----------|
| 4. hum | 9. hin | 14. niji |
| 5. 'iHna | 10. huw | 15. hum |

Drill 8 Translation

1. He will travel with us tomorrow on the same plane.
2. You can take Saudia to Jadda, and from there take Air France to Paris.
3. Yamaniya goes to London via Cairo three times a week.
4. Write the address, the date of birth, and the place of birth in this space (place)!
5. Give me the tickets, the passports, and the boarding passes!
6. You have five kilograms of excess baggage. Give me YR. 200 for excess baggage and fill out this card!
7. The airport tax is YR. 50. Every passenger should pay it.
8. One of my friends will show you how to go to the hotel from the airport.

Drill 9 Question -- Answer (based on TEXT)

1. 'ila 'ayn 9a-yruuH al-musaafir ? 9an Tariig jadda ?
2. 9ala 'ayy Tayyaara ?
3. man mahdi ?
4. 'ila 'ayn yifti ysaafir mahdi ?
5. 9ala 'ayy Tayyaara ?
6. man yi9rif al-musaafir fi landan ?
7. man 9inda 'aSdigaa' ka9iriin fi landan ?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. tagiyya : 'ayn 9a-tsaafiri ya 'afraaH ?
 'afraaH : la-l-yaman n9aaLLa 9an Tariig New York.
 tagiyya : kam saa9a b-T-Tayyaara ?
 'afraaH : min haana la-New York sittat saa9aat w-min N.Y.
 la-baariis 9amaaniyat saa9aat w-min baariis la-San9a 9an

Tariig al-gaahira 9aſarat saa9aat. xaaTriſ! b-asiir
 6alHiin.

tagiyya : ma9 as-salaama!

2. mirſid : b-kam at-ta6kara la-l-gaahira ?

9ali : b-'alf w-xamsmiyat ryaal.

mirſid : Tayyib. 'aſti 'aſtari ta6kara.

9ali : 'ayn al-jawaaz ? 9indak ta'ſiira ?

mirſid : nsiit al-jawaaz fi l-bayt. ma 'aſtiis ta'ſiira 9ala sabb
 'ana 9arabi.

9ali : Tayyib bass ruH fiisa9 w-haat al-jawaaz!

I. TEXT

bayti

'askun fi bayt kabir fi Jaari9 sitta w-9i9riin sabtambir fi San9a. 'al-bayt yatkawwan min 'arba9at TarHaat. 'al-'awwala fiiha maxaaziin w-tannuur, w-9ala 0-0aaniya w-a9-0aali0a makaanaat an-nawm Haggi w-Hagg zawjati w-9iyaali w-'ummi w-'abi 9ala sibb yaskunu ma9aana. makaan ya9ni "Gurfa". 'ana mutazawwij al-Hamdu lillaah w-9indi 0alaa0at 'awlaad w-bintayn. 'abi rajjaal kabir 9umra sab9iin sana w-'ummi 'asGar minna. 9umraha xamsiin sana.

'al-bayt fii 0alaa0at Hammaamaat w-dayma w-maTbax. "dayma" ya9ni 'ism gadiim Hagg al-maTbax al-yamani l-gadiim. 0alHiin nguul maTbax bass. Gurfat aT-Ta9aam fiiha maasa w-9a9arat karaasi. 'al-maTbax fii 0allaaja w-Gassaala w-furn. 'ad-diiwaan w-l-mafraj 9ala T-TarHa r-raabi9a.

II. TRANSLATION

My House

I live in a big house on September 26 Street in Sanaa. The house is made up of four floors. On the first floor there are storage rooms and a bread baking oven. On the second and third floors are sleeping rooms for myself and my wife, my children, my mother and my father because they live with us. makaan means "room". I am married, thanks to God, and I have three boys and two girls. My father is an old man; he is seventy years old, and my mother is younger than he is; she is fifty years old.

The house has three bathrooms, an old kitchen and a modern kitchen. dayma is an old name for an old Yemeni kitchen. Now we say

maTbax only. There are a (dining) table and ten chairs in the dining room. There are a refrigerator, a washing machine and a stove (with an oven) in the kitchen. The living room and the reception hall are on the fourth floor.

III. VOCABULARY

-skun-	to dwell, live
sabtambir	September
-tkawwan-	to be made up of, consist of
TarHa	(-aat) floor, story
mixzaan	(maxaaziin) storage room
tannuur	(tanaaniir) bread baking oven
makaan	(-aat) room. syn. <u>Gurfa</u>
nawm	v.n. sleep; sleeping
9iyaal	children; sons and daughters
'umm	('ummahaat) mother
'Gurfa	(Guraf) room. syn. <u>makaan</u> p. <u>-aat</u>
'ab/'abu-	('aabaa') father
rajjaal	(rijaal) man
9umr	('a9maar) age, lifetime
fii	there is; there are
Hammaam	(-aat) bath; bathroom
dayma	(diyam) kitchen, old Yemeni kitchen
maTbax	(maTaabix) kitchen
ya9ni	that is to say, i.e.; it means
-cuul-	to say
Ta9am	food
maasa	(-aat) table; desk
kursi	(karaasi) chair
eallaaja	(-aat) refrigerator
Gassaala	(-aat) washing machine
furn	('afraan) oven; stove
diwaan	(dawaawiin) living room
mafraj	(mafaarij) reception room, reception hall

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

mag9ad	(magaa9id) sofa
'ax	('ixwa) brother
'uxt	('axawaat) sister
baab	('abwaab) door
Taaga	(Tiigaan) window
'at-taHriir	Tahrir (Independence) Square, also known as <u>maydaan at-taHriir</u>
dikkaan	(dakaakiin) shop, store

V. GRAMMAR

1. fii as a Verb

fii is a prepositional phrase which means "in it". In this lesson it is a verb, and it means "there is; there are":

fii mee' haana.	'There is water here.'
fii rijal fi l-bayt.	'There are men in the house.'

The negative of fii is maabis 'there isn't; there aren't':

maabis laHm naahi fi s-suug.	'There isn't good meat in the market.'
maabis 9iyaal haana.	'There aren't any children here.'
	'There are no children here.'

fii may function as part of the predicate of a topic - comment sentence:

'al-bayt fii Gurfatayn nawm.	'There are two bedrooms in the house.'
	'The house has two bedrooms.'
San9a fiiha dakaakiin Hilwa.	'There are beautiful shops in Sanaa.'
	'Sanaa has beautiful shops.'
'al-buyuut fiihum Gassaalaat.	'There are washing machines in homes.'
	'Homes have washing machines.'

2. Telling Ages

When you are asked how old you are in English, you say, "I am ... years old." In French, e.g., you say the equivalent of English "I have ... years." Other languages have other ways of telling age. In SA, as in most other dialects of Arabic, you say the equivalent of English "My age is ... years."

9umri xamsiin sana.	'I am fifty years old.'
9umrak 9iisriin sana ?	'Are you twenty years old?'
'al-bint 9umraha 9afr sanawaat.	'The girl is ten years old.'

The question, 'How old are you?' is kam 9umrak (m.s.) ? and kam 9umrif (f.s.) ?

NOTES ON TEXT

1. A typical Yemeni house has three or four floors. On the first floor there are usually storage rooms (maxaaziin), a bread baking oven (tannuur), heating stoves, etc. Bedrooms are usually on the second and third floors. A diwaan is on the top floor. The top floor may have a smaller room called manḡar, p. manaaḡir, which overlooks surroundings. A mafraj is either on the top floor or a room adjacent to the house. A mafraj is closed in on all sides except the side facing the south in Sanaa. Chewing qat takes place either in the diwaan or in the mafraj.

2. 9iyaal has no singular derived from it; it means children, kids, boys and girls. It does not include one's wife. Wife is either zawja or 9aa'ila, which also means family. 'usra includes both children and wife.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain -- Cued

T : bayt 'house'

S : haaḍa bayt. 'This is a house.'

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. Saari9 | 6. mag9ad | 11. maTbax |
| 2. mixzaan | 7. Taaga | 12. Gurfa |
| 3. makaan | 8. maasa | 13. rajjaal |
| 4. Gassaala | 9. diwaan | 14. dikkaan |
| 5. ḥallaaja | 10. mafraj | 15. kursi |

Drill 2 Substitutionhaaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii diwaan.

'This is a house. The house has a living room'

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. six rooms | 6. ten chairs | 11. four floors |
| 2. three bedrooms | 7. two sofas | 12. two storage rooms |
| 3. two bathrooms | 8. six windows | 13. three families |
| 4. Yemeni kitchen | 9. reception hall | 14. washing machine |
| 5. dining room | 10. two stoves | 15. large kitchen |

Drill 3 Combination

haaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii diwaan kabiir →

haaḍa l-bayt fii diwaan kabiir.

'This is a house. The house has a large living room →

'This house has a large living room.'

1. haaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii xamsat makaanat.
2. haaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii ḥalaaḥat makaanaat.
3. haaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii dining room.

4. haaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii three sofas.
5. haaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii two washing machines.
6. haaḍa jawaaz. 'al-jawaaz fii ta'jiira Hagg landan.
7. haaḍa maTbax. 'al-maTbax fii table and six chairs.
8. haaḍa MaTaar. 'al-maTaar fii Tayyaaraat kaḍiira.
9. haaḍi madrasa. 'al-madrasa fiiha miya w-xamsiin Taalib.
10. haaḍi Tayyaara. 'aT-Tayyara fiiha miyat musaafir.
11. haaḍa maktab. 'al-maktab fii 20 employees.
12. haaḍa suug. 'as-suug fii 20 shops.
13. haaḍa daftar. 'ad-daftar fii xamsiin ragam talafoon.
14. haaḍa mafraj. 'al-mafraj fii 15 men.
15. haaḍa bayt. 'al-bayt fii my parents, my brother and his family.

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

'askun fi bayt kabiir. 'I live in a big house.'

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. 'abi | 6. jadiid | 11. 'ant |
| 2. 'ummi | 7. huw | 12. 'anti |
| 3. 'axi | 8. hum | 13. hiy |
| 4. SaGiir | 9. 'antu | 14. gariib |
| 5. 'ahli | 10. gad'im | 15. ba9iid |

Drill 5 Double Substitution

waaHid minhum kabiir w-ḍ-ḍaani SaGiir.

'One of them is large (old) and the other is small (young).'

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. expensive -- cheap | 8. here -- there |
| 2. fat -- thin | 9. nurse -- doctor |
| 3. tall -- short | 10. American -- Arab |
| 4. rich -- poor | 11. white -- black |
| 5. thin -- skinny | 12. difficult -- easy |
| 6. strong -- weak | 13. regular -- excellent |
| 7. crazy -- sane | 14. busy -- not here |

Drill 6 Substitution

9umra sittiin sana. 'He is sixty years old.'

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. 50 years | 6. 11 months | 11. 75 years |
| 2. 30 years | 7. two weeks | 12. 100 years |
| 3. 1 1/2 years | 8. 15 days | 13. 45 years |
| 4. 8 months | 9. three weeks | 14. 3 1/2 years |
| 5. 2 years | 10. 20 days | 15. 17 years |

Drill 7 Repetition

Taaga -- Tiigaan	dayma -- diyam
dikkaan -- dakaakiin	kursi -- karaasi
mixzaan -- maxaaziin	furn -- 'afraan
'umm -- 'ummahaat	diwaan -- dawaawiin
'ab -- 'aabaa'	mafraj -- mafaarij
Gurfa -- Guraf	'ax -- 'ixwa
rajjaal -- rijaal	'uxt -- 'axawaat
maTbax -- maTaabix	baab -- 'abwaab

Drill 8 Transformation: singular → plural

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. haaga kursi kabiir. | 8. haaga furn ad-dayma. |
| 2. haaga jaari9 naḡiif. | 9. haagi 'umm al-'awlaad. |
| 3. haaga rajjaal samiin. | 10. haaga 'axuuha. |
| 4. haagi bint naHiifa. | 11. 'uxti mu9allima. |
| 5. haagi Gurfa SaGiira. | 12. haaga l-maTbax al-gadiim. |
| 6. haaga baab al-bayt. | 13. haagi Taagat al-mixzaan. |
| 7. haagi ɔallaaja Gaaliya. | 14. haagi maasat al-maktab. |

Drill 9 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. 'ayn 'askun ? f-ayy jaari9 ?
2. 'al-bayt yatkawwan min kam TarHa ?

3. 'ayn al-maxaaziin w-t-tannuur ?
4. 'ayn makaanaat an-nawm ?
5. man yuskun ma9aana ?
6. 'ayf ya9ni "makaan" ? 'ayf ya9ni "dayma" ?
7. 'ana mutazawwij ? kam walad 9indi ?
8. kam 9umr 'abi ? kam 9umr 'ummi ?
9. kam Hammaam fi l-bayt ?
10. kayf tguul "dayma" b-l-'ingiliizi ?
11. kam maasa fi Gurfat aT-Ta9aam ?
12. kam kursi fi Gurfat aT-Ta9aam ?
13. fii 0allaaja w-Gassaala 9indana ?
14. 'ayn ad-diiwaan w-l-mafraj ?

Drill 10 Answer the following questions:

1. 'ant mutazawwij ? 9indak 'usra kabiira ?
2. taskun fi bayt SaGiir 'aw kabiir ?
3. 'ahlak yaskunu ma9aak ? man ?
4. 'abuuk 'akbar min 'ummak 'aw 'aSGar minha ?
5. kam 9umrak ? kam lak fi San9a ?
6. 'ayn 9a-tsaafir Gudwa ? b-T-Tayyaara 'aw b-l-baaS ?
7. 9indak jawaaz w-ta'siira ?
8. baytak ba9iid min at-taHriir ?
9. 9indak talafoon fi l-bayt ?
10. kam ragam talafoonak ?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Husayn : 9indi maw9id ma9 ai-mudiir 0alHiin.
'as-sikirteer : tafa00al 'ijlis! tisrab Saahi ?
Husayn : gahwa law samaHt.

'al-mudiir : kam 9umrak va 'ax Husayn ?
Husayn : xamsa w-9isriin sana.
'al-mudiir : maa tisti ti9mal haana ?

Husayn : 'a'fti 'a'ftaGil kaatib.
 'al-mudiir : ti9,if' 'ingiliizi ?
 Husayn : na9am. 'atkallam w-'aktub 'ingiliizi naahi.
 'al-mudiir : Tayyib. 9a-nittaSil-bik ba9d 'usbuu9. kam ragam
 talafoonak ?
 Husayn : sab9a sab9a tis9a sab9a waaHid. (77971)

2. 'isma9iil : maa 'ismak ?
 9awaḡ : 'ismi 9awaḡ.
 'isma9iil : maa jinsiyyatak ?
 9awaḡ : yamani.
 'isma9iil : 'ayf 9inwaanak ?
 9awaḡ : bayt 9ali raggaaS fi t-taHriir.
 'isma9iil : kam 9umrak ?
 9awaḡ : xamsa w-ḡalaaḡiin sana.
 'isma9iil : 'ayn makaan al-wilaada ?
 9awaḡ : Sa9da.
 'isma9iil : taariix al-wilaada ?
 9awaḡ : 9aḡara tis9a 'alf w-tisa9miya w-xamsiin.

I. TEXT

bayt la-l-'iijaar

- 'al-musta'jir : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
- 'al-mu'ajjir : wa 9alaykum as-salaam. 'ahlan wa sahan! ha! 'ays tifti ?
- 'al-musta'jir : 'ana b-adawwir 9ala bayt SaGiir w-na9iif gariib min al-mustafsa l-jumhuuri. 'ana muwaa99af b-afsaGil Hagg al-jariida, jariidat a9-9awra. 'afsi 'afsa'jir bayt. 'ant 9indak bayt la-l-'iijaar ?
- 'al-mu'ajjir : 'ii na9am. 9indi bayt fi gaa9 al-yahuud, gariib min al-jaami9 w-yatkawwan min 9alaa9aat TarHaat.
- 'al-musta'jir : kam Gurfat nawm fii ?
- 'al-mu'ajjir : fii 9alaa9aat Guraf nawm w-Hammaam 9arabi w-Hammaam 'ifranji. 'al-mafraj fawg w-al-maxaaziin taHt.
- 'al-musta'jir : 'ant al-mu'ajjiir 'aw SaaHib al-bayt ?
- 'al-mu'ajjir : 'ana l-mu'ajjir w-SaaHib al-bayt ba9da.
- 'al-musta'jir : kam al-kiraa' ?
- 'al-mu'ajjir : 'al-kiraa' 'alfayn ryaal fi f-fahr w-al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' 9alayk.
- 'al-musta'jir : maaf ma9guul! haa9a l-'iijaar Gaali ka9iir.
- 'al-mu'ajjir : ruH dawwir w-'absir al-buyuut!
- 'al-musta'jir : maafi. ma 'afsi 'aruUH 'adawwir ba9da. 'alf w-xamsiyat ryaal ?
- 'al-mu'ajjir : Tayyib, bass fii 9agd 'iijaar la-sana. bi-tidfa9 9alHiin.
- 'al-musta'jir : Tayyib. xalliina nruUH nibsir al-bayt.

II. TRANSLATION

A House for Rent

Tenant : Peace be upon you!

Landlord : Peace be upon you! You are welcome! Ha! What can I do for you?

Tenant : I am looking for a house that is small, clean, and close to the Republican Hospital. I am an employee working for the newspaper, the Thawra Newspaper. I would like to rent a house. Do you have a house for rent?

Landlord : Yes, indeed. I have a house in the Jewish Quarter, near the mosque, and it is made up of three floors.

Tenant : How many bedrooms does it have?

Landlord : It has three bedrooms, an Arabic bathroom, and a Western bathroom. The reception room is upstairs and the storage rooms are downstairs.

Tenant : Are you the manager or the owner of the house?

Landlord : I am the manager and owner of the house.

Tenant : How much is the rent ?

Landlord : The rent is YR. 2,000 per month; you pay for the water and the electricity.

Tenant : Unreasonable! This rent is very expensive.

Landlord : Go look and see (other) homes!

Tenant : No, I do not want to go and look any more. YR. 1,500?

Landlord : All right; but there is a one-year lease. You will pay now.

Tenant : O.K. Let's go see the house!

III. VOCABULARY

'iijaar	rent; rent money
la-l-'iijaar	for rent
musta'jir	(-iin) tenant, lessee

mu'ajjir	(-iin) landlord, lessor; manager (of an apartment building)
-dawwir-9ala	to look for s.th. or s.o.
gariib min	prep. near, close to
jumhuuri	(-yyiin) republican
jariida	(jaraa'id) newspaper
oawra	(-aat) revolution
-sta'jir- (min)	to rent s.th. (from s.o.)
gaa9	(gii9aan) quarter, section of a city
yahuudi	(yahuud) Jew; Jewish
jaami9	(jawaami9) mosque
'ifranji	(-yyiin) Western, European
fawg	adv. upstairs; prep. above; over
taHt	adv. downstairs; below; prep. beneath, under
SaaHib	(with foll. n. or pron.) owner of, proprietor of
kiraa'	rent money; wage; fare
kahrabaa'	electricity
ma9guul	(-iin) reasonable, sensible
9agd	(9uguud) lease; contract

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

mirtaaH	(mafaatiiH) key
'arø	('araaøi) floor of a room; dirt, earth
sagf	(suguuf) ceiling
bustaan	(basaatiin) backyard; garden; orchard
saxxaan	(--aat) heater
-Gallig-	to close, shut
gandiil	(ganaadiil) light bulb
miil	(-aat) neon light
siraaj	(electricity) light
xalf	adv.; prep. behind
-xazzin-	to chew qat
fugga	(fugag) apartment

V. GRAMMAR

1. Verbs -- Imperatives

The imperfect stems -dawwir-9ala- 'to look for s.th. or s.o.', -Gallig- 'to shut, close', -xazzin- 'to chew qat', and -sta'jir (min), 'rent s.th. (from s.o.)' are the same imperative forms (of the first person masculine singular):

Gallig al-baab!	'Shut (m.s.) the door!'
dawwir 9ala bayt!	'Look (m.s.) for a house!'
xazzin ma9aana!	'Chew (m.s.) qat with us!'

If a double imperative construction is used, each imperative form agrees with the subject.

ruuH dawwir 9ala sugga!	'Go (m.s.) look (m.s.) for an apartment!'
ruuHi dawwiri 9ala sugga!	'Go (f.s.) look (f.s.) for an apartment!'
ruuHu dawwiru 9ala sugga!	'Go (m.p.) look (m.p.) for an apartment!'
ruuHayn dawwirayn 9ala sugga!	'Go (f.p.) look (f.p.) for an apartment!'

After the imperative xalli! 'leave; let' a double imperfect construction may be used (see UNIT 13, GRAMMAR 2).

xalliina nruuH nibsir!	'Let's go see!'
xalliha truuH tibsir!	'Let her go see!'
xaallihin yruuHayn yibsi.ayn!	'Let them (f.) go see!'

2. The Triple Imperfect Construction

A string of three imperfect tense forms may occur in SA. Each form should agree with the same subject, i.e., all the three forms have one and the same subject:

'asti 'aruuH 'adawwir 9ala bayt.	'I want to go to look for a house.'
yistu yruuHu ydawwiru 9ala sugga.	'They (m.) want to go to look for an apartment.'

The meaning expressed by the third verb is "purpose".

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Completion

'ana b-adawwir 9ala ... 'I am looking for ...'

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a small and clean house | 8. new tenants |
| 2. a Yemeni landlord | 9. the Republican Hospital |
| 3. a house near the hospital | 10. an American newspaper |
| 4. a house in Tahrir Square | 11. the old Jewish Quarter |
| 5. the electricity bill | 12. the Grand Mosque |
| 6. the Thawra Newspaper | 13. the owner of the store |
| 7. the lease | 14. a clean apartment |

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'ana b-adawwir 9ala bayt. "I am looking for a house.'

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. huw | 6. hiy | 11. mu'ajjir |
| 2. hum | 7. 'al-fuluus | 12. 'ant |
| 3. fugga | 8. 'al-9iyaal | 13. 'antu |
| 4. 'al-miftaaH | 9. 'iHna | 14. musta'jiriin |
| 5. 'al-miil | 10. gaat | 15. 'ana |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

'asti 'axazzin ma9aakum. 'I like to chew qat with you (m.p.)'

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. huw | 6. tuskuni | 11. 'iHna |
| 2. 'iHna | 7. hiy | 12. hum |
| 3. with them | 8. hin | 13. yxazzinu |
| 4. 'ant | 9. 'ana | 14. 'ana |
| 5. 'antu | 10. 'aakuil | 15. huw |

Drill 4 Substitution

9indak bayt la-1-'iijaar ? 'Do you have a house for rent ?'

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. jugga SaGiira | 5. Gurfa kabiira | 9. sayyaara |
| 2. bayt SaGiir | 6. dukkaan | 10. bustaan |
| 3. taksi | 7. gallaaja | 11. mixzaan |
| 4. Gurfa | 8. baaS | 12. maktab |

Drill 5 Double Substitution

T : my father -- 70

S : 'abi 9umra sab9iin sana. 'My father is seventy years old.'

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. his father -- 58 | 8. her brother -- 3 1/2 |
| 2. his brother -- 17 | 9. your father -- 72 |
| 3. his mother -- 35 | 10. their mother -- 40 |
| 4. my brother -- 21 | 11. his brother 2 1/2 |
| 5. her sister -- 9 | 12. our father -- 61 |
| 6. their father -- 63 | 13. our mother -- 36 |
| 7. their brother -- 14 | 14. your brother -- 27 |

Drill 6 Composition

Compose sentences with the help of key words.

Example: T : father -- old -- 70

S : 'abi rajjaal kabiir 9umra sab9iin sana.

'My father is an old man; he is seventy years old.'

- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. father -- old -- 65 | 7. teacher -- skinny -- 53 |
| 2. brother -- young - 7 | 8. father -- young -- 28 |
| 3. mother -- old - 58 | 9. brother -- young -- 2 |
| 4. sister -- young --5 | 10. director -- fat -- 37 |
| 5. friend -- young -- 17 | 11. mother -- young -- 19 |
| 6. secretary -- pretty -- 21 | 12. friend -- sane -- 25 |

Drill 7 Completion

xalliina nruuH nibsir al-bayt. 'Let's go see the house.'

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. eat chicken | 8. rent a car |
| 2. eat lamb | 9. close the store |
| 3. drink beer | 10. close the door |
| 4. drink coffee | 11. open the house |
| 5. see the apartment | 12. contact him |
| 6. see the bedroom | 13. show them the place |
| 7. rent an apartment | 14. take the car |

Drill 8 Variable Substitution

'asti 'aruuH 'adawwir 9ala bayt. 'I want to go to look for a house.'

- | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. huw | 5. 'ant | 9. huw |
| 2. hum | 6. 'antu | 10. hum |
| 3. apartment | 7. landlord | 11. shop |
| 4. 'iHna | 8. 'ana | 12. 'iHna |

Drill 9 Translation

- I would like to rent a five-bedroom house near the mosque.
- Do you have a house for rent? I want one made up of three floors.
- The house has four bedrooms, two bathrooms, a large kitchen, and a reception hall. It is behind Tahrir Square.
- The Jewish Quarter is near Tahrir Square but far from Bab Al-Yemen.
- The bedrooms are upstairs and the storage room is downstairs. The garden is behind the house.
- The landlord wants to come to collect (take) the rent money.
- The rent is YR. 3,000 per month. You will pay for water and electricity. There is no telephone in the house.
- There are many houses for rent, but they are very expensive, and there is a one year lease too.

9. You will pay the rent money now, i.e., as soon as we write the lease.
10. Fine. I just would like to go to see the house. Let's go see it.

Drill 10 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. 'ayn yistaGil al-musta'jir ?
2. 'ayn al-bayt la-l-'iijaar ? ba9iid min al-jaami9 ?
3. min kam TarHa yatkawwan al-bayt ?
4. kam Gurfat nawm fi l-bayt ?
5. kam Hammaam fi l-bayt ? .
6. 'ayn al-mafraj ? 'ayn al-maxaaziin ?
7. kam kiraa' al-bayt fi s-sahr ?
8. man yidfa9 fawaatiir al-mee' w-l-kahrabaa' ?
9. kam 9a-yidfa9 al-musta'jir ?
10. 9agd al-'iijaar sahr 'aw sana ?

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage (on tape) and then summarize it in your own words.

U N I T 2 6

I. TEXT

fi i-maT9am

- 'al-mubaafir : 'ahlan wa sahan! tafaḡḡalu!
 SaaliH : nisti maasa Hagg faxSayn.
 'al-mubaafir : na9am mawjuud. tafaḡḡalu!
 SaaliH : 'ays tisti ta'kul ya mHammad ?
 mHammad : (la-lmubaafir) 'ays 9indakum la-l-Gadaa' ?
 'al-mubaafir : 9indana kuil fay' : dajaaj w-kabaab w-Tali w-Huut mafwi
 'aw magli w-rizz ba9da.
 mHammad : 'asti 'atGadda baamya w-nuSS dajaaj w-HummoS.
 'iddii-li SaHn salaTa!
 'al-mubaafir : HummoS maabis. Tisti sirba ?
 mHammad : sirba laa ba's.
 SaaliH : jiib-li kabaab w-rizz w-sirba!
 'al-mubaafir : Haaḡir. 'ays tistu tifrabu ?
 mHammad : 'ana 'asti 'afrab saahi.
 SaaliH : baarid ḡalHiin w-bunn ba9d al-'aki.
 mHammad : laa ba's. 'iddii-li gahwat gifr ba9d al-'aki! Jiib
 galaS mee' law samaHt!

 SaliH : ta9aa! ya mubaafir! kam al-Hisaab ?
 'al-mubaafir : eamaaniin ryaal.
 mHammad : la waLLa! 'al-Hisaab 9alayy.

II. TRANSLATION

At the Restaurant

- Waiter : Welcome! Please come in!
 SaliH : We want a table for two people.
 Waiter : Yes, there is. Please come in!

- Salih : What would you like to eat, Muhammad?
- Muhammad : (To the waiter): What do you have for lunch?
- Waiter : We have everything: chicken, kabob, lamb, grilled or fried fish, and rice also.
- Muhammad: I want to have okra, half a chicken, and HummoS for lunch. Give me (a plate of) salad!
- Waiter : We do not have HummoS. Would you like to have soup?
- Muhammad : Soup is O.K.
- Salih : Give me kabob, rice, and soup!
- Waiter : At your service! What would you like to drink ?
- Muhammad : I would like to have tea.
- Salih : Something cold now, and coffee after the food.
- Muhammad : Good idea. Give me gir coffee after the food. Bring a glass of water, please!
- Salih : Waiter! Come! How much is the bill?
- Waiter : Eighty riyals.
- Muhammad : No, no. The bill is on me.

III. VOCABULARY

maT9am	(maTaa9iim) restaurant
mubaaʒir	(-iin) waiter; usher
ʃaxS	('aʃxaaS) person; someone, somebody
Gadaa'	(-aat) lunch
kabaab	kabob, meat roasted on a skewer
maʃwi	(-yyiin) grilled; roasted
magli	(-yyiin) fried
-tGadda-	to have lunch
baamyā	coll. okra. s. <u>Habbat baamyā</u>
HummoS	dish made of crushed chick peas, sesame seed paste, and lemon juice
SaHn	(SuHuun) dish; plate
salaTa	salad
ʃirba	soup

baarid	something cold, beverage
galaS	(-aat) glass of s.th., drinking glass (f.)
Hisaab	(-aat) bill; (bank) account

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

baSa1	coll. green onions. s. <u>buS1i</u>
buSSaala	coll. (brown) onions. s. <u>ra's buSSaala</u>
maGli	(-yyiin) boiled
ma19aga	(malaa9ig) spoon
JaTala	(-aat) fork. syn. <u>Jaawka</u> p. <u>Juwak</u> , <u>-aat</u>
sikkaan	(sakaakiin) knife
gaaruura	(gawaariir) bottle
finjaan	(fanaajiin) cup; cup of s.th.
tamr	coll. dates. s. <u>tamra</u>
zabiib	coll. raisins. s. <u>zabiiba</u>
jizar	coll. carrots. s. <u>jizara</u>
balas	coll. catcus fruit. s. <u>balasa</u>
balas 9arabi	col. figs. s. <u>balasa</u>
9a/aa'	dinner, supper
SabuuH	breakfast
-t9a/ffa-	to have dinner, supper
-STabiH-	to have breakfast

V. GRAMMAR

No new grammatical points in this lesson.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Repetition

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. 'iddii-li finjann gahwa! | 6. 'iddii-li gaaruurat biira! |
| 2. 'iddii-li finjann Jaahi! | 7. 'iddii-li SaHn dajaaj! |
| 3. 'iddii-li finjann Haliib! | 8. 'iddii-li JaTala w-sikkaan! |

4. 'iddii-li gaLas mee'!
5. 'iddii-li gaLas bitra!

9. 'iddii-li SaHn salaTa!
10. 'iddii-li SaHn rizz w-laHm!

Drill 2 Chain -- Cued

- S₁ : 'ays tiſti titGadda ? 'What would you like to have for lunch ?'
T : chicken
S₂ : 'asti 'atGadda dajaaj. 'I would like to have chicken for lunch.'

- | | |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. grilled kabob | 7. lamb and rice |
| 2. fried fish | 8. kabob and soup |
| 3. grilled fish | 9. beans and mutton |
| 4. okra and rice | 10. fish and salad |
| 5. baked chicken | 11. half a chicken |
| 6. soup and lamb | 12. kabob and rice |

Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

Do Drill 2, substituting tit9aſſa for titGadda.

Drill 4 Substitution

jiib ... law samaHt! 'Bring ..., please!'

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. the waiter | 8. the breakfast |
| 2. the lunch | 9. raisins and carrots |
| 3. the dinner | 10. figs and prickly pears |
| 4. the beverage | 11. forks and knives |
| 5. glass of water | 12. spoons and plates |
| 6. green onions | 13. cup of coffee |
| 7. bottle of beer | 14. spoons and knives |

Drill 5 Substitution

'al-Hisaab 9alayy. 'The bill is on me.'
 T : huw 'He'
 S : 'al-Hisaab 9alayh. 'The bill is on him.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. hum | 6. hin | 11. huw |
| 2. 'ant | 7. 'anti | 12. 'ant |
| 3. 'antu | 8. 'antayn | 13. hum |
| 4. hiy | 9. 'iHna | 14. 'antu |
| 5. 'ana | 10. 'antu | 15. huw |

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

jiib SaHn rizz law samaHt!
 'Bring a dish of rice, please!'

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. SaHn dajaaj | 8. 'ant |
| 2. okra and beans | 9. salad plate |
| 3. 'anti | 10. bottle of beer |
| 4. bread and butter | 11. fried fish |
| 5. 'antu | 12. grilled lamb |
| 6. washing machine | 13. boiled milk |
| 7. refrigerator | 14. boiled water |

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

nuw yiṛti yjiib kabaab. 'He wants to bring kabob.'

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. chicken | 9. boiled eggs |
| 2. I | 10. have for breakfast |
| 3. have for lunch | 11. cheese and eggs |
| 4. hiy | 12. 'ana |
| 5. have for dinner | 13. huw |
| 6. 'iHna | 14. 'ant |

- | | |
|----------|-----------|
| 7. bring | 15. 'anti |
| 8. hum | 16. 'iHna |

Drill 8 Double Substitution

'ana asti galaS mee'. 'I want a glass of water.'

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. huw - fried fish | 9. 'anti -- the shopkeeper |
| 2. hiy -- small apartment | 10. huw -- the water bill |
| 3. 'ant -- rent a house | 11. hum -- the electric bill |
| 4. hum -- look for a house | 12. hiy -- the house key |
| 5. 'iHna -- chew qat | 13. 'iHna -- buy light bulbs |
| 6. 'ana -- Arabic newspapers | 14. hum -- close the store |
| 7. hin -- go upstairs | 15. 'ant -- neon lights |
| 8. 'antu -- go downstairs | 16. 'ana -- the house lease |

Drill 9 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. kam faxS yistu yitGaddu fi l-maT9am ?
2. man hum ?
3. 'ays fii fi l-maT9am? fii HummoS?
4. 'ays yisti mHammad yitGadda ?
5. 'ays yisti SaaliH ya'kul ?
6. 'ays yisti mHammaa yisrab w-SaaliH ?
7. man yisti yisrab gahwat gisr ?
8. kam al-Hisaab ?

Drill 10 Question-- Answer

1. f-ayy Hiin tit9ajfa ? 'ays ta'kul ?
2. f-ayy Hiin tiSTabiH ? maa tiSTabiH ?
3. tiSTabiH fi :-bayt 'aw fi l-maT9am ?
4. ti9rif al-balas ? fii balas fi 'amriika ?
5. 'ayn tuskun ? fi bayt 'aw fi sugga ? kam al-kiraa' ?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. xayriya : kayf al-bayt al-jadiid ya 'amiina ?
 'amiina : naahi. gariib min as-suug w-l-madrasa Hagg al-'awlaad.
 xayriya : w-l-'iijaar ?
 'amiina : 'al-'iijaar Gaali maas ma9guul. 0alaa0a 'alf ryaal fi
 f-sahr.
 xayriya : fii bustaan ?
 'amiina : na9am 'al-bustaan xalf al-bayt w-fii sijar (trees) balas
 9arabi w-barguug w-9inab.
 xayriya : 'ayn 9a-tsiiri 0alihin ?
 'amiina : fa-siir as-suug 9ala sabb 'asti 'astari SuHuun w-malaa9ig
 w-faTalaat w-sakaakin.
2. 'al-mubaafir : tafa00ala 'ijlisu!
 Hasan : haa tisti ta'kul ya 'ax 9ali ?
 9ali : (la-l-mubaafir) 'ays 9indakum ?
 'al-mubaafir : 9indana dajaaj w-Huut w-Tali w-rizz. 9indana kull
 fay'.
 9ali : Tayyib. 'iddii-li SaHn rizz w-baayma.
 'al-mubaafir : Haa0ir! w-l-'ax ?
 Hasan : 'asti Huut maswi w-salaTa. 9indakum buTaaT?
 'al-mubaafir : 'ii na9am.
 Hasan : jiib SaHn buTaaT w-Tali. faahi ba9d al-'akl.
 'al-mubaafir : w-l-'ax 9ali ?
 9ali : gahwa w-jiib galaSeen mee'!

U N I T 2 7

I. TEXT

9ala t-talafoon (i)

- zayd : haluw! haluw! maabis jawaab! 'al-xaTT Gayr naahi
l-yawm!
- 'ibn 9ali : haluw! man yitkallam ?
- zayd : 'ana zayd 9anaan. haasa bayt 9ali 9abd al-gaadir ? man
ma9i ?
- 'ibn 9ali : 'ana 'ibn 9ali. haasa baytana. man tifti ?
- zayd : 'afti 'atkallam ma9 'abuuk. 'abuuk mawjuud ?
- 'ibn 9ali : 'iSbir! dagiiga! (9ali's son calls) ya yuba! 9ammi zayd
9anaan 9ala t-talafoon. yiftiik.
- 9ali : haluw! marHaba ya zayd! kayf Haalak ?
- zayd : 'al-Hamdu lillaah. ba-xayr. min mudda Tuwiila w-ana
'aHaawil 'attaSil biik w-l-xaTT ma'Guul. Gudwa 'al-jum9a.
'afti 'a9zimak 'ant w-l-'usra 9ala l-9a'aa'. nxazzin
w-nil9ab baTTa w-ba9da nit9a'ssa.
- 9ali : f-ayy Hiin ?
- zayd : tagriib 'as-saa9a xams, ba9d Salaat al-9aSr.
- 9ali : kaøøar aLLaah xayrak! 9a-niji n'aaLLa.

II. TRANSLATION

On the Telephone

- Zaid : Hello! Hello! There is no answer! The line is not good
today!
- Ali's Son : Hello! Who is speaking?
- Zaid : I am Zaid Anan. Is this Ali Abd-Alqadir's home? Who is
with me?
- Ali's Son : I am Ali's son. This is our house. Who do you want?

- Zaid : I would like to speak to your father. Is your father there?
- Ali's Son : Wait! Just a minute! (Ali's son calls) Dad! Uncle Zaid Anan is on the telephone. He wants you.
- Ali : Hello! Hi zayd! How are you?
- Zaid : Praise be to God. I am fine. I have been trying to contact you for a long time, and the phone has been busy. Tomorrow is Friday. I want to invite you. I want to invite you and the family for dinner. We will chew qat, play cards, and have dinner after that.
- Ali : At what time?
- Zaid : About five o'clock, after the afternoon prayer.
- Ali : Thank you. We will come, God willing.

III. VOCABULARY

haluw!	Hello!
jawaab	(-aat) answer; response
xaTT	(xuTuuT) telephone line; railroad, bus, airline
Gayr	neg. part. not, un-; other than
'ibn	('abnaa') son
-Sbir-	to wait; to be patient
dagiiga	(dagaa'ig) minute
ya yuba!	Dad! Father!
9amm	('a9maam) paternal uncle; father-in-law
mudda	period of time
-Haawil-	to try, make an effort to do s.th.
-9zim-	to invite s.o.
-l9ab-	to play; to play a game
baTTa	(-aat) deck of cards, cards
tagriib	prep. about, approximately
Salaa	(Salawaat) prayer
9aSr	afternoon, as in <u>Salaat al-9aSr</u> 'the afternoon prayer'
ka00ar	he increased, made s.th. more

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

-talfin-	to telephone
xaal	('axwaal) maternal uncle
'ibn xaal	cousin (m.), son of one's maternal uncle
bint xaal	cousin (f.), daughter of one's maternal uncle
'ibn 9amm	cousin (m.), son of one's paternal uncle
bint 9amm	cousin (f.), daughter of one's paternal uncle
xaala	(-aat) maternal aunt; step-mother
9amma	(-aat) paternal aunt; mother-in-law
duulaab	(dawaaliib) wardrobe
kabat	(-aat) cupboard; wardrobe
matfal	(mataafil) spitting container
matka	(mataaki) cushion, pad
mag9ad	(magaa9id) sofa
madaa9a	(madaayi9) hubble-bubble, water-pipe
karyuula	(karaayil) bed. syn. <u>sariir</u> p. <u>saraayir</u>

V. GRAMMAR

1. The Negative Particle *Gayr*

Unlike maaf (UNIT 10), which negates nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases, Gayr negatives adjectives:

'al-xaTT Gayr naahi.	'The line is not good.'
Gayr Tawiil w-Gayr gaSiir	'neither tall nor short'

When Gayr negates nouns, and other parts of speech, it expresses the meaning of "other than":

'iddii-li Gayr haa9a!	'Give me some other one (i.e., other than this)!'
'asti Gayrahum.	'I want other than these.'
Gayr saa9at xams	'some other time, other than at five o'clock'

2. 'ab 'father' and 'ax 'brother' change into 'abuu- and 'axuu- before a suffixed pronoun, except for -i 'my': 'abuuk 'your (m.s.) father' 'abuuf 'your (f.s.) father', 'abuuhum 'their (m.) father', etc. When addressing your father, you say, 'ya 'abi!", or more commonly "ya yubal". My brother is 'axi.

3. f-ayy Hiin ? is short for fi 'ayy Hiin ? 'at what time, when'.

4. tagriib 'about, approximately' behaves syntactically like a preposition; it precedes the noun or noun phrase it governs:

li haana tagriib sanatayn.	'I have been here for about two years.'
min haana la-Hajja tagriib	'It's about five hours from here to
xams saa9aat b-s-sayyaara.	Hajja by car.'
9a-yiji tagriib sa9at xams.	'He will come at about five o'clock.'

NOTES ON TEXT

1. 9amm 'paternal uncle' is sometimes used as a title of respect for an older person, as in this lesson.

2. ka00ar is a past tense verb, which means, "he increased, augmented s.th." In this lesson it is part of a polite formula, ka00ar aLLaah xayrak! 'May God increase your wealth!' It is used when someone offers you something, invites to dinner, etc. Learn it as a polite formula.

3. Muslims pray five times a day: early in the morning before sunrise, at noontime, in the afternoon, at sunset, and after sunset. The names of those prayers are: Salaat aS-SubH, Salaat a0-0uhr, Salaat al-9aSr, Salaat al-maGrib, and Salaat al-9i/aa', respectively.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Double Substitution

'al-xaTT Gayr naahi. 'The line is not good.'

- | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. telephone -- good | 8. my uncle -- old |
| 2. line -- busy | 9. my cousin (f.) -- tall |
| 3. line -- weak | 10. my aunt -- here |
| 4. wardrobe -- clean | 11. tea -- sweet |
| 5. restaurant -- far | 12. tomatoes -- expensive |
| 6. lunch -- expensive | 13. apartment -- far |
| 7. weather -- nice | 14. car -- American |

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

huw yHaawil yittaSil biik. 'He is trying to contact you.'

- | | | |
|----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. hum | 6. hum | 11. 'iHna |
| 2. 'ana | 7. 'ana | 12. huw |
| 3. hiy | 8. huw | 13. hum |
| 4. hin | 9. hin | 14. 'ana |
| 5. 'iHna | 10. hiy | 15. 'iHna |

Drill 3 Conjugation

min mudda Tawiila w-ana 'aHaawil attaSil biik.

'I have been trying to contact you for a long time.'

- | | | |
|--------|----------|---------|
| 1. huw | 3. 'iHna | 5. 'ana |
| 2. hum | 4. hiy | 6. hin |

Drill 4 Double Substitution

huw yifti yittaSil biik. 'He wants to contact you.'

hiy -- 'iHna 'she -- we'

hiy tifti tittaSil biina. 'She wants to contact us.'

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. 'ana -- 'antu | 8. 'antu -- 'iHna |
| 2. hum -- 'iHna | 9. 'iHna -- huw |
| 3. 'anti -- hin | 10. 'anu -- 'anti |
| 4. 'iHna -- 'antu | 11. hum -- 'ant |
| 5. 'antayn -- hin | 12. hiy -- hin |
| 6. 'ant -- hiy | 13. hin -- 'iHna |
| 7. hin -- 'antayn | 14. huw -- huw |

Drill 5 Translation

1. He is trying to see the director.
2. He is trying to buy a new house.
3. We are trying to change the car.
4. I am trying to go tomorrow morning.
5. He has been trying to speak Arabic for a long time.
6. She has been trying to write in Arabic for a long time.
7. They have been trying to contact me for twenty minutes.
8. He is trying to come to work at 6:00 a.m.

Drill 6 Substitution

'al-xaTT maḡGuul. 'The line is busy.'

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. good | 5. not busy. | 9. not good |
| 2. very good | 6. excellent | 10. very busy |
| 3. new | 7. not new | 11. weak |
| 4. busy | 8. old | 12. very weak |

Drill 7 Transformation

'ana 'a19ab baTTa. 'I play cards.'

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. huw | 6. 'antayn | 11. 'an-nisaa' |
| 2. 'antu | 7. 'al-9iyaal | 12. 'ant |
| 3. sayf | 8. 'ana | 13. 'iHna |
| 4. hum | 9. 'al-banaat | 14. huda |
| 5. hiy | 10. hin | 15. sayda |

Drill 8 Triple Substitution

T : 'ana -- 'ant -- dinner 'I -- you (m.s.) -- dinner'

S : 'ana 'afti 'a9zimak 9ala l-9a/aa'.

'I want to invite you for dinner.'

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. 'ana -- 'antu -- lunch | 6. hum -- 'iHna -- breakfast |
| 2. 'ana -- 'anti -- dinner | 7. hum -- 'ant -- breakfast |
| 3. huw -- 'iHna -- dinner | 8. 'ant -- hiy -- breakfast |
| 4. huw -- 'anti -- lunch | 9. 'iHna -- hum -- lunch |
| 5. 'iHna -- 'antu -- lunch | 10. hum -- 'ana -- dinner |

Drill 9 Chain -- Cued

T : laazim 9alayh yiSbir. 'He has to wait, be patient.'

S : maa yigdarf yiSbir. 'He cannot wait, be patient.'

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. laazim 9alykum tiSbiru. | 6. laazim 9alayhin yiSbirayn. |
| 2. laazim 9alayha tiSbir. | 7. laazim 9alayh yiSbir. |
| 3. laazim 9alayk tiSbir. | 8. laazim 9alayhum yiSbiru. |
| 4. laazim 9alayf tiSbiri. | 9. laazim 9alayna niSbir. |
| 5. laazim 9alaykin tiSbirayn. | 10. laazim 9alayk tiSbir. |

Drill 10 True -- False (based on TEXT)

1. xaTT at-talafoon Gayr naahi l-yawm.
2. 9ali 9abd al-gaadir yisti yitkallam ma9 zayd 9anaan.
3. 9ali yiguul, "ya yuba!"
4. zayd 9anaan yisti yi9zim 9ali 9abd al-gaadir bass.
5. zayd 9anaan yisti yi9zim 9ali 9abd al-gaadir 9ala l-9a/aa'.
6. 9a-yruuH 9ali 9abd al-gaadir la-bayt zayd 9anaan ba9d Salaat al-9aSr.
7. 'ibn 9ali yaguul, " ka00ar aLLaah xayrak!"

Drill 11 Translation

1. I would like to buy two wardrobes, one cupboard, a sofa and three cushions.
2. Where can I find a hubble-bubble? I would like to buy one.
3. You will find spitting containers in every Yemeni house; Yemenis chew qat and spit in these containers.
4. My paternal uncle, my maternal uncle, and their families are coming to our house today to eat dinner. Before dinner they will chew qat and play cards.
5. The tenant in Yemen pays the electric and the water bills. Is it the same thing in America?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. mHammad : halaw! sukri!
 sukri : 'ii na9am. man yitkallam ?
 mHammad : 'ana mHammad. 'ant bi-ddawwir 9ala bayt ?
 sukri : min mudda Tawila. 'asti bayt gariib min al-9amal.
 mHammad : fii bayt yitkawwan min 0alaa0at TarHaat. fii Gurfatayn
 nawm 9ala T-TarHa 0-0aaniya w-l-mafraj fawg. w-fii
 maTbax w-Hammaam bass maabis/ Hammaam 'ifranji.
 sukri : w-l-'iijaar kam ?

- mHammad : 'alfayn ryaal fi *s-sahr!*
 Sukri : maa*s* ma9guul!
2. Haliima : ti*st*u ti*st*a'jiru *sug*ga ?
 'afraaH : ni*st*i *sug*ga kabiira fiiha dawaaliib w-kabataat w-mataaki
 w-magaa9id w-karaayil.
 Haliima : ya9ni ti*st*u *sug*ga mafruusa ("furnished"). bass maabi*s*
*sug*ga mafruusa fi l-yaman.
 'afraaH : 9a-ndawwir, yumkin nilga.

U N I T 2 8

I. TEXT

9ala t-talafoon (ii)

'as-santraal : wazaarat al-xaarjiyya!
'aHmad : 'asti 'atkallam ma9 al-'ax yaHya.
'as-santraal : 9inda xaTT 0aani. jarrib ar-ragam 77971!
'aHmad : sukran. baarak aLLa fiik!
('aHmad yjarrib ar-ragam 77971)
'aHmad : haluw! 'al-'ax yaHya mawjuud?
'as-santraal : 'ar-ragam GalaT!
'aHmad : 9afwan!
('aHmad yu9rub ar-ragam 0aani marra)
'aHmad : 'as-sayyid yaHya mawjuud ?
'as-sikirteer : maafi. maaf haana. 9a-yirja9 ba9d saa9a. tifti
tutruk-la risaala ?
'aHmad : maafi. 'asti 'aHaddid maw9id ma9aa.
'as-sikirteer : dagiga! Gudwa S-SubH saa9at 9afir naahi?
'aHmad : naahi gawi. sukran!
'as-sikirteer : 9afwan.

II. TRANSLATION

On the Telephone (ii)

Operator : Ministry of Education!
Ahmad : I would like to speak to Brother Yahya.
Operator : He has another line. Try the number 77971!
Ahmad : Thanks! God bless you!
(Ahmad tries the number 77971)
Ahmad : Hello! Is Brother Yahya there?
Operator : Wrong number!
Ahmad : Sorry!

- (Ahmad dials the number again)
- Ahmad : Is Mr. Yahya there?
- Secretary : No, he is not here. He will be back in an hour. Would you like to leave him a message?
- Ahmad : No. I would like to make an appointment with him.
- Secretary : One moment! Is tomorrow morning at ten O.K.?
- Ahmad : Very good. Thank you!
- Secretary : You are welcome.

III. VOCABULARY

santraal	telephone operator; central telephone line
wazaarat al-xaarijiyya	the ministry of foreign affairs
'al-'ax	(title) Brother
-jarrib-	to try s.th.; to test s.th.
GalaT	incorrect, wrong
-ḡrub- ragam	to dial a number
-truk-(l-)	to leave s.th. (to s.o.)
risaala	(rasaa'il) message; letter
-Haddid-	to make, e.g., an appointment
'aS-SubH	adv. in the morning; at daybreak

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

-sma9-	to hear
-dugg-	tran., intran. to ring
daa'ira	(dawaa'ir) department
'ad-daaxiyya	the ministry of the interior
'al-maa'iyya	the ministry of finance
'az-ziraa9a	the ministry of agriculture
'al-muwaaSalaat	the ministry of communications
'al-9adl	the ministry of justice
'al-yawm aS-SubH	adv. this morning, today in the morning
'al-yawm aḡ-ḡuhr	adv. today at noon
'al-yawm al-masaa'	adv. this evening, tonight

'ams aS-SubH adv. yesterday morning
Gudwa aḡ-ḡuhr adv. tomorrow at noon

V. GRAMMAR

Imperatives

The first person masculine singular forms of the imperative of the verbs 'to make (an appointment)', 'to try, test s.th.', and 'to ring' are the same as those of the imperfect stems of those verbs:

yHaddid 'He makes (an appointment)' → Haddid!
yjarrib 'He tries, tests s.th.' → jarrib!
ydugg 'It (m.s.) rings.' → dugg!

The imperative forms of -truk- 'to leave' and -sma9- 'to hear' are 'utruk! and 'isma9!, respectively.

NOTES ON TEXT

1. wazaart al-xaarijiyya 'the ministry of foreign affairs', wazaarat ad-daxiliyya 'the ministry of the interior', waazaarat al-maaliyya 'the ministry of finance', etc. are usually known as 'al-xaarijiyya, 'ad-daaxiliyya, 'al-maaliyya, etc.

2. 'ax 'brother', like 9amm 'uncle', is used as a title of respect, but unlike 9amm, 'ax is used in addressing someone or speaking about someone who is not very old. When used as a title, it is definite: 'al-'ax yaHya 'Brother Yahya'.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 a. Repetition

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. wazaarat al-maaliyya | 6. wazaarat al-xaarijiyya |
| 2. wazaarat ad-daaxiliyya | 7. wazaarat al-'aḡGaal |

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 3. wazaarat al-muwaaSalaat | 8. wazaarat at-tarbiya |
| 4. wazaarat aS-SiHHa | 9. wazaarat az-ziraa9a |
| 5. wazaarat al-batroot | 10. wazaarat al-9adl |

b. Substitution

'asti 'atafin la-wazaarat al-maaliyya.

'I want to call the Ministry of Finance.'

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| 1. petroleum | 5. foreign | 9. communications |
| 2. agriculture | 6. finance | 10. public works |
| 3. interior | 7. health | 11. foreign |
| 4. justice | 8. education | 12. petroleum |

Drill 2 Transformation: Conjugation

huw: 9inda xaTT 9aani. 'He has another line.'

- | | | |
|---------|----------|------------|
| 1. hiy | 5. 'iHna | 9. 'antayn |
| 2. hum | 6. 'ant | 10. huw |
| 3. hin | 7. 'antu | 11. 'iHna |
| 4. 'ana | 8. 'anti | 12. hiy |

Drill 3 Substitution

9inda xaTT 9aani. 'He has another line.'

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. talafoon | 6. jawaab | 11. samTa |
| 2. ragam | 7. maTSam | 12. kitaab |
| 3. risaala | 8. madaa9a | 13. karyuula |
| 4. sayyaara | 9. maT9am | 14. duulaab |
| 5. line | 10. maw9id | 15. bayt |

Drill 4 Transformation: singular → plural

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. 9inda xaTT gaani. | 8. 9a-yirja9 ba9d saa9a. |
| 2. yi9ti yisma9 al-jawaab. | 9. 'isma9! ta9aal Gudwa! |
| 3. 'a9ti 'aHaddid maw9id. | 10. b-adawwir 9ala sugga. |
| 4. jarrib ar-ragam! | 11. ma yigdar9 yiSbir. |
| 5. 'a9ti 'atruk-la risaala. | 12. yxazzin w-yil9ab baTTa. |
| 6. haagi daa'irat az-ziraa9a. | 13. yHaawil yiji. |
| 7. 'at-talafoon ydugg. | 14. ja-talfin saa9at xams. |

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

'a9ti 'atruk-la risaala. 'I want to leave him a message.'

- | | | |
|--------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. he | 5. I | 9. you (f.s.) |
| 2. me | 6. them (f.) | 10. us |
| 3. we | 7. her | 11. you (m.p.) |
| 4. she | 8. you (m.s.) | 12. you (f.p.) |

Drill 6 Variable Substitution

'a9ti 'aHaddid maw9id ma9aa. 'I want to make an appointment with him.'

- | | | |
|----------|----------|--------------|
| 1. huw | 5. 'ana | 9. with them |
| 2. hum | 6. 'ant | 10. with us |
| 3. hiy | 7. 'antu | 11. with me |
| 4. 'iHna | 8. 'anti | 12. with her |

Drill 7 Double Substitution

xalliini 'a9uuf! 'Let me see!'

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. me -- go | 8. him -- contact them |
| 2. them -- come | 9. us -- make tea |
| 3. them -- return | 10. me -- try the number |

- | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 4. us -- listen | 11. me -- try again |
| 5. us -- play | 12. them -- leave a message |
| 6. her -- speak | 13. us -- make an app't. |
| 7. her -- make coffee | 14. her -- hear the answer |

Drill 8 Translation

1. I am going to London tomorrow on Yemeniya.
2. Are you going direct by way of Cairo?
3. When you get there, contact my friend by phone.
4. This is very good. I do not know anyone there.
5. He will take you in his car and show you around the city.
6. They live in a large house which has six rooms.
7. We need another store. This store is very old.
8. The refrigerator doesn't work very well. Go buy a new one!
9. How old is your aunt? Is she about sixty years old?
10. Just a minute! I will go to contact him and make an appointment with him.

Drill 9 Question -- Answer

- | | |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. kam wazaara fi l-yaman ? | 9. man waziir al-xaarijiyya ? |
| 2. 9indak talafoon fi l-bayt ? | 10. man waziir az-ziraa9a ? |
| 3. 'anti fi 'ayy wazaara ? | 11. 'ayn daa'irat al-kahrabaa' ? |
| 4. tiŧti tiŧrab biira ? | 12. 'anti ti9mali fi t-tarbiya ? |
| 5. 'ayn 'ibb mawjuuda ? | 13. 'ayŧ tiŧti titGadda ? |
| 6. 'ant kam 9umrak ? | 14. 'ayn tit9aŧŧa ? |
| 7. kam as-saa9a 9alHiin ? | 15. 'ant tiŧTabiH fi l-bayt ? |
| 8. 'ayn wazaarat al-xaarijiyya ? | 16. f-ayy Hiin Salaat a9-9uhr ? |

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the passage on tape and then indicate whether the following statements are true or false. If the statement is false, correct it.

UNIT 29

I. TEXT

'ana min ta9izz fi l-yaman. darast fi san9a fi kulliyat at-tijaara fi jaami9at San9a w-HaSalt 9ala rahaadat al-jaami9a fi t-tijaara. min 'awwal darast fi l-madrasa l-'ibtidaa'iyya w- 9-9aanawiyya fi ta9izz. tarakt San9a gabl 'arbaSat siniin w-ji't la-jadda fi s-su9uudiyya w-9alHiin b-a9taGil mudarris fi ma9had al-'idaara l-9aamma fi r-riyaa9.

I am from Ta'z in Yemen. I studied in Sanaa; I was at the College of Commerce of Sanaa University and obtained the university degree in commerce. Before I had studied at the elementary school and the secondary school in Ta'z. I left Sanaa four years ago and came to Jadda in Saudi Arabia, and now I am working as an instructor at the Institute of Public Administration in Riyadh.

II. TRANSLATION

I am from Ta'z in Yemen. I studied in Sanaa; I was at the College of Commerce of Sanaa University and obtained the university degree in commerce. Before I had studied at the elementary school and the secondary school in Ta'z. I left Sanaa four years ago and came to Jadda in Saudi Arabia, and now I am working as an instructor at the Institute of Public Administration in Riyadh.

When I arrived here, I lived in a three-bedroom apartment because I am married and have a large family. The children are still young. The apartment is close to the sea. Every week, on Thursdays and Fridays, my children go to the sea to play and swim.

III. VOCABULARY

daras	(yudrus) he studied
kulliyya	(-aat) college
tijaara	(-aat) commerce; trade

HaSa1 9ala	(yukSul 9ala) he obtained, got
jahaada	(-aat) degree, certificate, testimonial
min 'awwal	adv. before, previously
'ibtidaa'i	(-yyiin) elementary; primary
aaanawi	(-yyiin) secondary
tarak	(yutruk) he left, departed
jaa'	(yiji) he came
mudarr's	(-iin) instructor, teacher
ma9had	(ma9aahid) institute
'idaara	v.n. administration
9aamm	(-iin) public; common; general
wuSul	(yiwSa1) he arrived at (a place)
sakan	(yuskun) to dwell, live in a place
jaahil	(jahhaal) child; adj. very young
baHr	(biHaar) sea
sabaH	(yisbaH) he swam

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

talfan (i-)	(ytalfin) <u>1-</u> to telephone (s.o.)
handasa	engineering; geometry
luGa	(-aat) language
'akmal	(yikmil) he finished, completed
taxarraaj	(yitxarraaj) he graduated
Saff	(Sufuuf) class; classroom
Tabbaa9	(-iin) typist
9ammaar	(-iin) mason; construction worker
sabbaak	(-iin) pipe fitter s. <u>samkari</u> p. <u>samaakira</u>
najjaar	(-iin) carpenter
jazzaar	(-iin) butcher

V. GRAMMAR

Perfect Tense

In previous lessons we have seen most of the forms and the uses of the imperfect tense. This UNIT introduces the other verb tense in SA, the perfect tense. The perfect tense in SA corresponds to the following English tenses: simple past, e.g., he came; present perfect, e.g., he has come; and past perfect, e.g., he had come.

We have seen that the inflectional forms of verbs in the imperfect tense are characterized by prefixes and in some cases also by suffixes. The inflectional forms of verbs in the perfect tense are characterized only by suffixes. There are ten inflectional forms of a perfect-tense verb, corresponding to the person-gender-number categories of the imperfect tense. Below is the complete conjugation of the verb daras 'to study' and its suffixes, which are the same for all perfect-tense verbs:

	<u>Pronoun</u>	<u>Verb</u>	<u>Meaning</u>	<u>Suffix</u>
1.	huw	daras	'he studied'	0
2.	hum	darasu	'they (m.) studied'	-u
3.	hiy	darasat	'she studied'	-at
4.	hin	darasayn	'they (f.) studied'	-ayn
5.	'ant	darast	'you (m.) studied'	-t
6.	'antu	darastu	'you (m.p.) studied'	-u
7.	'anti	darasti	'you (f.s.) studied'	-ti
8.	'antayn	darastayn	'you (f.p.) studied'	-tayn
9.	'ana	darast	'I studied'	-t
10.	'iHna	darasna	'we studied'	-na

Note the following comments on the formation of the perfect-tense forms:

- a. The forms are built on and derived from the 3rd person masculine singular form of the verb, which is referred to as the stem:

daras, 'he studied'. This stem is used to refer to the verb as a whole, in the same way as the infinitive is used in English. Thus when we say the verb daras, which literally means 'he studied', we refer to what corresponds to the English infinitive 'to study'.

b. The first syllable of the first three forms and the ninth form is stressed; the second syllable of forms 5, 6, 7 and 10 is stressed; and the last syllable of forms 4 and 8 is stressed.

The verbs HaSal 9ala 'to obtain, get', tarak 'to leave, depart', wuSul 'to arrive at (a place)', sakan 'to dwell', sabaH 'to swim', 'akmal 'to complete, finish', and taxarraj 'to graduate' are regular, and thus are conjugated like daras 'to study'. The verb jaa' 'he came' is irregular:

huw	jaa'	'antu	ji'tu
hum	jaw (or <u>jaa'u</u>)	'anti	ji'ti
hiy	jaa'at	'antayn	ji'tayn
hin	jayn (or <u>jaa'ayn</u>)	'ana	ji't
'ant	ji't	'iHna	ji'na

The stem of the 3rd person forms is jaa'- and that of the other stems is ji'-.

From now on only the perfect stems of verbs, with the imperfect forms of the 3rd person masculine singular in parentheses, will be listed in VOCABULARY and ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY of the lessons.

NOTES ON TEXT

The stages of education in Yemen and in most other parts of the Arab World are four: elementary, preparatory, secondary, and university. They correspond, respectively, to the American stages of education: elementary -- six years; preparatory (Junior High) -- three years; secondary (Senior High) -- three years; and university -- four years.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

(Use 'ams 'yesterday' or min 'awwal' 'before, previously' in place of Gudwa 'tomorrow', kull yawm 'everyday', ḡalHiin 'now', etc.)

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. 'adrus 9arabi kull yawm. | 8. 'atalfin laha kull yawm. |
| 2. ḡa-HSaḡ 9ala ḡ-ḡahaada. | 9. 'akmil ḡuḡli saa9at 0alaa0. |
| 3. ḡ-wSaḡ Hajja ba9d saa9a. | 10. 'atxarraḡ ba9d sanatayn. |
| 4. 'atruk al-9amal saa9at
0intayn. | 11. 'adrus fi kulliyat
at-tijaara. |
| 5. 9a-'aji Gudwa. | 12. 'adrus luḡa 9arabiyya. |
| 6. 'askun fi bayt kabiir. | 13. Hiin 'awSaḡ 'atalfin-lak. |
| 7. 'asbaH fi l-baHr. | 14. ḡa-kmil al-madrasa 0-0aanawiyya. |

Drill 2 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

Change the sentences in Drill 1, above, to: 'ant 'you (m.s.)', and then to 'anti 'you (f.s.)'.

Drill 3 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

(Use past time expressions, e.g., 'ams 'yesterday', ḡabl ams 'the day before yesterday; ḡabl (sana, ḡahr, 'usbuu9, yawmayn, etc.) '(a year, a month, a week, two days) ago', etc.)

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1. 'ant tudrus kam luḡa? | 8. titalfin la-kulliyat at-tijaara? |
| 2. ḡa-tiHSaḡ 9ala ziyaada. | 9. tikmil kulliyat al-handasa? |
| 3. f-ayy Hiin tiwSaḡ Sa9ḡa? | 10. titxarraḡ haaḡi s-sana? |
| 4. f-ayy Hiin tutruk aḡ-ḡuḡli? | 11. tudrus luḡa 'ingiliiziyya? |
| 5. 9a-tiji la-S-Saff? | 12. 9a-tiwsaḡ b-T-Tayyaara? |
| 6. tuskun gariib min al-baHr? | 13. 9a-tiHSaḡ 9al ḡuḡli nḡalla. |
| 7. tisbaH fi l-baHr? | 14. tudrus fi ma9had al-'idaara
l-9amma? |

Drill 4 Transformation: imperfect → perfect

Change the sentences in Drill 3, above, to: 'antayn 'you (f.p.)' and then to 'iHna 'we'.

Drill 5 Double Substitution

'al-walad aS-SaGiir fi S-Saff al-'awwal w-l-kabiir fi S-Saff ar-raabi9.

'The young(er) boy is in the first grade (class) and the old(er) one is in the fourth grade (class).'

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. second -- third | 7. third -- fourth |
| 2. second -- fifth | 8. sixth -- tenth |
| 3. first -- second | 9. seventh -- tenth |
| 4. third -- sixth | 10. first -- fourth |
| 5. fourth -- sixth | 11. eighth -- ninth |
| 6. fifth -- ninth | 12. eighth -- tenth |

Drill 6 Chain -- Cued

T : 2 -- 3

S₁ : 'aS-SaGiir fi S-Saff aθ-θaani fi l-madrasa l-'ibtidaa'iyya.

'The young one is in the second class in the elementary school.'

S₂ : w-l-kabiir fi S-Saff aθ-θaaliθ fi l-madrasa θ-θaanawiyya.

'And the old one is in the third class in the secondary school.'

Use cues from Drill 5, above.

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

tarakt San9a w-ji't la-jadda. 'I left Sanaa and came to Jadda.'

- | | | |
|----------|--------|-------------|
| 1. 'ant | 6. hum | 11. 'antu |
| 2. 'anti | 7. hiy | 12. 'antayn |

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------|-------------|
| 3. 'al-Hodayda | 8. hin | 13. 'ana |
| 4. 'ana | 9. ta9izz | 14. 'ibb |
| 5. huw | 10. 'iHna | 15. 9amraan |

Drill 8 Substitution

ysiiru yil9abu w-yisbaHu. 'They go to play and swim.'

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. play cards | 8. swim and play |
| 2. talk and drink coffee | 9. finish their work |
| 3. eat and drink | 10. buy rice and meat |
| 4. work and get money | 11. work in trade |
| 5. telephone and return | 12. study engineering |
| 6. work as typists | 13. work as carpenters |
| 7. work as pipe fitters | 14. work as butchers |

Drill 9 Double Substitution

haa a ma9had al-'idaara l-9aamma Hagg jaami9at San9a.

'This is the Sanaa University Institute of Public Administration.'

1. Arabic Language Institute -- Sanaa University
2. College of Engineering -- University of Arizona
3. English Language Institute -- Ministry of Education
4. College of Commerce -- Riyadh University
5. Institute of Commerce -- Ministry of Commerce
6. Institute of Languages -- Sanaa University
7. Teachers' Institute -- Ministry of Education
8. Department of Mechanical Engineering -- College of Engineering
9. Department of Electrical Engineering -- College of Engineering
10. Department of French -- College of Languages

Drill 10 Variable Substitution

sakant fi Jugga b-θalaaθat makaanaat nawm.

'I lived in a three-bedroom apartment.'

- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. ant | 6. 'ana | 11. perfect |
| 2. xamsat | 7. imperfect | 12. hum |
| 3. Guraf | 8. 'iHna | 13. 'antu |
| 4. bayt | 9. Gurfatayn | 14. hiy |
| 5. 'anti | 10. 'antayn | 15. 'iHna |

Drill 11 Translation

1. I can't talk on the telephone because the line is busy.
2. He has been trying to reach me for two hours.
3. They go there to play cards, talk, and have a good time.
4. What time do you (f.s.) go to work? About 8:00 a.m.
5. Who is speaking? Just a minute!
6. Wrong number! Dial the number again!
7. I'm sorry he isn't here. Would you like to leave him a message?
8. Give me the line, please! He has another line. There's no answer.
9. Let me see. He is busy all day tomorrow. Is (day) after tomorrow O.K.?
10. The Ministry of Education, the Ministry of Agriculture, and the Ministry of Public Works are big ministries. I work in the Ministry of Foreign Affairs.
11. Where did you (m.s.) live two years ago?
12. When I arrived here, I lived in an apartment by the sea.
13. They (m.) played crds, swam, and left at about 6:00 p.m.
14. We did not study in the university; we studied in the secondary school for three years.

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Hasan : 'ays b-ti9mal haana?
 9ali : b-astaGil muhandis.
 Hasan : fi 'ayy wazaara?
 9ali : fi wazaarat al-'a/Gaal.
 Hasan : 'ayn darast handasa?
 9ali : fi jaami9at al-kuwayt.
 Hasan : taxarrajt haa6i s-sana?
 9ali : maa/i. taxarrajt gabl sanatayn.

2. kariima : ji'tu haana min mudda Tawiila?
 layla : min muddat xamsat sinin.
 kariima : min 'ayn ji'tu?
 layla : ji'na min ar-raw6a.
 kariima : 'ayn sakantu?
 layla : fi gaa9 al-yahuud.
 kariima : w-anti bi-tudrusi 6alHiin?
 layla : 'akmalt al-jaami9a w-taxarrajt min kulliyat
 al-mu9allimaat.
 kariima : 'ays bi-ti9mali 6alHiin?
 layla : mudarrisa fi l-madrasa 0-0aanawiyya.

UNIT 30

I. TEXT

fi maT9am balgiis

maT9am balgiis mawjuud fi fundug saba' fi t-taHriir. 'ams al-9aafi 'ana w-Sadiigi Hasan ruHna la-maT9am balgiis 9alasibb na'kul. 'al-maT9am Gaali gawi bass 'al-'akl hownaak Tayyib. kunna jaawi9iin w-9aaTisiin w-'ana kunt taa9ib ba9da. 'al-jaww kaan miGbir. 'akalna marag w-rizz w-laHm. 'ana sribt biira w-Sadiigi sirib baarid. ba9d al-'akl 'akalna Halaawa. ba9da sribna gahwa: Sadiigi sirib kaafi w-ana sribt bunn. gult la-lmubaa'sir: "'iddii-li l-faatura!" Sadiigi gaal: "'al-Hisaab 9alayy." gult: "maafi." dafa9t Hisaab al-maT9am. ba9d al-9a'aa' ruHna la-s-sinama. kaan fii film 'amriiki. Sadiigi gaal: "'ant 9ayyaftani 9ala l-9a'aa'. 9aman at-ta9aakir 9alayy." ba9d as-sinama sirna l-bayt. 'ana kunt taa9ib gawi w-numt fiisa9.

II. TRANSLATION

At Bilgis Restaurant

Bilgis Restaurant is in the Sheba Hotel in Tahrir Square. Last night I and my friend Hasan went to Bilgis Restaurant in order to eat. The restaurant is very expensive but the food there is delicious. We were hungry and thirsty, and I was tired too. The weather was dusty. We had meat broth, rice, and meat. I had beer and my friend had a soft drink. After the food, we had dessert. Later on, we had coffee: my friend had coffee and I had Yemeni coffee. I said to the waiter, "Give me the bill!" My friend said, "The bill is on me." I said, "No." I paid the restaurant bill. After dinner, we went to the cinema. There was an American film. My friend said, "You treated me to dinner. The tickets are on me." After the cinema we went home. I was very tired, and fell asleep fast.

III. VOCABULARY

'ams al-9aʃi	adv. last night	kaan fii	there was; there were
raaH	(yaruUH) to go	film	('aflaam) film, movie
'akal	(ya'kul) to eat	ʃirib	(yiʃrab) to drink
kaan	(ykuun) to be	biira	beer
jaawi9	(-iin) hungry	Halaawa	dessert
9aaTiʃ	(-iin) thirsty	gaal	(yguul) to say
taa9ib	(-iin) tired	dafa9	(yidfa9) to pay
marag	meat broth; gravy	siinama	cinema
ʃayyaf (9ala)	(yʃayyif) to entertain s.o. (to s.th.); to treat s.o. as a guest		
gaman	('aəmaan) price, cost; value		
saar	(yʃiir) to go; to leave; to walk		
naam	(ynuum) to fall asleep; to sleep		

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

dars	(duruus) lesson	'al'usbuu9 al-maaʃi	last week
ʃaaf	(yʃuuf) to see	'aʃ-ʃahr al-maaʃi	1st month
ta9allam	(yit9allam) to learn	'al-9aam al-maaʃi	last year
takallam	(yitkallam) to speak	'as-sana l-maaʃiya	last year
katab	(yuktub) to write	'as-sabt al-maaʃi	last Saturday
li9ib	(yil9ab) to play		
maaʃi	adj. (-yiin) past; last (e.g., last month)		

V. GRAMMAR

1. Perfect Tense

The verbs 'akal 'to eat', katab 'to write' and dafa9 'to pay' are conjugated like daras 'to study'.

ʃirib 'to drink' and li9ib 'to play' are irregular. Below is the conjugation of ʃirib.

huw <i>ʃirib</i>	hin <i>ʃirbayn</i>	'anti <i>ʃiribt</i>
hum <i>ʃirbu</i>	'ant <i>ʃiribt</i>	'antayn <i>ʃiribtayn</i>
hiy <i>ʃirbat</i>	'antu <i>ʃiribtu</i>	'ana <i>ʃiribt</i>
	'iHna <i>ʃiribna</i>	

There are six more verbs in this lesson: kaan 'to be' gaal 'to say', raaH 'to go', ʃaaf 'to see', naam 'to sleep', and saar 'to go; to walk; to leave'. This class of verbs is known as hollow verbs; they are characterized by the long medial vowel -aa- followed by a final consonant. The first five verbs have two stems: CaaC-, which is used with the third person endings, and CuC-, which is used with the endings of the other persons. Below is the conjugation of kaan 'to be':

huw <i>kaan</i>	hin <i>kaanayn</i>	'anti <i>kunti</i>
hum <i>kaanu</i>	'ant <i>kunt</i>	'antayn <i>kuntayn</i>
hiy <i>kaanat</i>	'antu <i>kuntu</i>	'ana <i>kunt</i>
	'iHna <i>kunna</i>	

saar 'to go; to walk; to leave' also has two stems: CaaC- and Cic-: saar, saaru, saarat, saarayn, sirt, sirtu, sirti, sirtayn, sirt, and sirna.

2. kaan fii 'there was; there were'

Note that fii with the stressed long vowel ii means "there is; there are". The perfect of fii is kaan fii. kaan in this construction is invariable, i.e., not inflected for gender or number:

kaan <i>fii</i> <i>film</i> .	'There was a movie.'
kaan <i>fii</i> 'aflaam.	'There were movies.'
kaan <i>fii</i> <i>TamaaTiis</i> .	'There were tomatoes.'

The negatives of fii and kaan fii are maabif and ma kaanf fii, respectively.

maabif film.	'There's no movie.'
makaanf fii film.	'There was no movie.'
ma kaanf fii naas.	'There were no people.'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

Use past time expressions, e.g., 'al-'usbuu9, 'af-fahr, 'al-9aam, 'as-sabt (al-maaḡi) '(last) week, month, year, Saturday' in place of the present or future time expressions.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 9a-yfuuf al-film Gudwa. | 9. yudrus 'idaara fi l-ma9hud. |
| 2. ynuum saa9at Hda9f. | 10. 9a-yutruk w-ysiir. |
| 3. yitkallam 9arabi naahi. | 11. yiwSal Sa9da l-yawm. |
| 4. yit9allam handasa. | 12. yuktub 'isma b-l-9arabi. |
| 5. 9a-yidfa9 al-fuluus Gudwa. | 13. yguul ma9 inda 9amal. |
| 6. yidfa9 al-Hisaab. | 14. yifrab kaafi fi l-fundug. |
| 7. ysiir al-bayt ḡalHiin. | 15. 9a-yḡayyifni 9ala l-9asaa'. |
| 8. huw jaawi9 ḡalHiin. | 16. huw 9aaTif ḡalHiin. |

Drill 2 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

Change the sentences in Drill 1, above, to hiy, then to huw.

Drill 3 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 'iHna nidfa9 al-Hisaab. | 9. 'al-jaww baarid al-yawm. |
| 2. 'aT-TamaaTis raxiis. | 10. huw yguul 9inda fuluus. |
| 3. hum taa9ibiin kaθiir. | 11. 'ant tuskun haana? |
| 4. maabif film naahi l-yawm. | 12. 'anuum as-saa9a θna9f. |
| 5. fa-ruuH al-kulliyya Gudwa. | 13. 9a-ytalfin w-yiji. |
| 6. hin yifrabayn w-ya'kulayn. | 14. fii xamsat Tabbaa9iin. |
| 7. 9a-yruuHu l-baHr al-yawm. | 15. 9a-yiwSalu Gudwa S-SubH. |
| 8. 9indahum 9amal Gudwa. | 16. 9a-yiHSal 9ala f-fahaada. |

Drill 4 Chain -- Cued

- | | | |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| T : | raaH al-madrasa ? | 'Did he go to school?' |
| S ₁ : | raaH al-madrasa ? | 'Did he go to school?' |
| S ₂ : | la. ma raaHf. | 'No, he didn't go.' |
-
- | | | | |
|----|-------------------------|-----|------------------------------|
| 1. | kaan haana 'ams ? | 8. | katabti 9inwaanif ? |
| 2. | fribt biira ? | 9. | talfant la-'ahlak ? |
| 3. | dafa9t 0aman al-kutub ? | 10. | numt kull al-layl ? |
| 4. | ruHt as-sinama ? | 11. | sabaHt fi l-baHr ? |
| 5. | kuntu jaawi9iin ? | 12. | kunt taa9ib ? |
| 6. | sakantu fi fugga ? | 13. | taxarrajt al-9aam al-maa9i ? |
| 7. | darasti 9arabi ? | 14. | ji't al-xamiis al-maa9i ? |

Drill 5 Transformation: negative command + negative statement

- | | | |
|-----|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| T : | laa truuH as-sinama! | 'Don't go to the cinema!' |
| S : | ma raaHf as-sinama. | 'He didn't go to the cinema.' |
-
- | | | | |
|----|--------------------------|-----|---------------------------|
| 1. | laa tnuum haana! | 8. | laa tkuun majnuun! |
| 2. | laa tutruk al-ma9had! | 9. | laa titxarrajt fi S-Sayf! |
| 3. | laa t9uufi l-film! | 10. | laa ta'kul ka0iir! |
| 4. | laa tuktub haana! | 11. | laa tiji Gudwa! |
| 5. | laa tudrus haa9i l-luGa! | 12. | laa tguul haa9a Sa9b! |
| 6. | laa tsiiri ma9aahum! | 13. | laa tguulu maabif! |
| 7. | laa truuH hownaak! | 14. | laa tidfa9 al-Hisaab! |

Drill 6 Chain -- Cued

- | | | |
|------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| T : | institute | |
| S ₁ : | man kaan fi l-ma9had ? | 'Who was at the Institute?' |
| T : | director | |
| S ₂ : | 'al-mud'ir kaan fi l-ma9had. | 'The director was at the Institute.' |

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. apartment -- pipe fitter | 8. work -- workman |
| 2. Hudaida -- masc. | 9. department -- secretary (f.) |
| 3. class -- students | 10. house -- carpenters |
| 4. sea -- boys | 11. shop -- butcher |
| 5. cinema -- they (m.) | 12. home -- my father |
| 6. college -- teachers (f.) | 13. kitchen -- my mother |
| 7. office -- typists | 14. living room -- my friends |

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

huw kaan hownaak yawm as-sabt. 'He was there on Saturday.'

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. 'ana | 8. 'ant |
| 2. 'as-sabbaak | 9. 'iHna |
| 3. on Friday | 10. negative |
| 4. at 1:30 p.m. | 11. on Tuesday |
| 5. 'al-bannaat | 12. 'ant |
| 6. on Thursday | 13. hum |
| 7. at 5:15 p.m. | 14. hin |

Drill 8 Questions (based on TEXT)

1. maa 9inwaan dars 9alaa0iin ?
2. 'ayn mawjuud maT9am balgiis ?
3. f-ayy Hiin ruHna la-maT9am balgiis ?
4. maT9am balgiis raxiis ? kayf al-'akl hownaak ?
5. man kaan jaawi9 w-9aaTif ? man kaan taa9ib ?
6. kayf kaan al-jaww ?
7. 'ayf 'akalna ? 'akalna dajaaj w-Huut ?
8. man sirib biira gabl al-'akl ?
9. Hasan sirib baarid gabl al-'akl 'aw ba9d al-'akl ?
10. man sirib bunn ba9d al-'akl ?
11. man gaa', "'al-Hisaab 9alayy." ?
12. man dafa9 Hisaab al-maT9am ?
13. 'ayn sirna ba9d al-9a9aa' ?

14. man dafa9 0aman at-ta0aakir ?
15. man naam fiisa9 ?

Drill 9 Transformation: singular + plural

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. kunt jaawi9 ka0iir. | 8. ta9allamat luGatayn. |
| 2. huw daras 9arabi. | 9. 'ana sakant fi sugga. |
| 3. 0ayyafta 9ala l-9a9aa'. | 10. hiy ma kaanats fi S-Saff. |
| 4. hiy saafat al-film. | 11. ma kaan fii film naahi. |
| 5. numt fi l-fundug. | 12. ma kunt9 jaawi9 ? |
| 6. f-ayy Hiin wuSult ? | 13. Hiin 'awSal 'atalfin-lak |
| 7. talfant-la 'ams al-9a9i. | 14. daras handasa fi 'amriika. |

Drill 10 Translation

1. When I get a job, I will buy a new car.
2. When he went there, he had a beer.
3. I have to see that film when it comes to Sanaa.
4. We went to the movies to see "Lawrence of Arabia".
5. Last year I went to Cairo in the summer.
6. When he got here, he went to eat because he was very hungry and thirsty.
7. Give me the line, please! I can't because he has another line.
8. I have been trying to reach you for two hours, and the phone was busy.
9. This is the Ministry of Public Works. You have the wrong number.
10. I am sorry! What's his number? I don't know. Call the operator.

Drill 11 Translation

1. We went to see the movie.
2. They went to the restaurant last night in order to eat kabob.
3. She came here in order to see the school.
4. I went to Bilgis Restaurant to have a beer because I was very thirsty.

5. Last week we went to Taiz in order to see our folks.
6. Last year I traveled to Kuwait to see my brother.
7. She goes to the fish market every day to buy fish.
8. He does all of this for the sake of his country.
9. They are studying Arabic so that they might be able to speak Arabic well.
10. He is a very good man. I know that he would like to help you.

Drill 12 Transformation

Change the text of UNIT 30 into the imperfect tense.

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the passage on tape and then summarize it in approximately 100 words.

UNIT 31

REVIEW

DRILLS

Drill 1 Aural Comprehension

Listen twice to the following passage on tape, and then give complete answers to the questions below.

9indi Sadiig 'isma SaaliH min ɔamaar fi l-yaman. Sadiigi SaaliH mutazawwij w-9inda ɔalaaɔat jahhaal: walad waaHid w-bintayn. SaaliH 9umra 'iɔnayn w-ɔalaaɔiin sana walaakin zawjata tagiyya 9umraha 9isriin sana bass. tagiyya rabbat bayt ("housewife"). SaaliH yiſtaGil ſaagi fi wazaarat al-'aſſaal. ya'xuɔ 'alfayn ryaal fi ſ-ſahr bass.

'abu SaaliH w-'umma yuskunu ma9 SaaliH w-'usrata. 'al-bayt maaſ kabiir kaɔiir; yitkawwan min ɔalaaɔat Guraf nawm bass: Gurfa Hagg SaaliH w-zawjata w-θ-θaaniya Hagg al-9iyaal w-θ-θaaliθa Hagg 'abu SaaliH w-'umma. maabiſ diiwaan w-maabiſ Gassaala fi l-bayt. fii ɔallaaja w-Hammaam waaHid bass.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. ma 'ism Sadiigi ? | 9. kam ya'xuɔ fi ſ-ſahr ? |
| 2. min 'ayn SaaliH ? | 10. kam ta'xuɔ fi ſ-ſahr ? |
| 3. kam walad 9inda ? | 11. man yuskun ma9aahum ? |
| 4. kam 9umr SaaliH ? | 12. bayt SaaliH kabiir ? |
| 5. maa 'ism marata ? | 13. kam makaan fii ? |
| 6. kam sana 9umraha ? | 14. kam makaan la-l-9iyaal ? |
| 7. 'ayn ti9mal tagiyya ? | 15. fii ɔallaaja w-Gassaala ? |
| 8. 'ayſ yiſtaGil SaaliH ? | 16. kam Hammaam fi l-bayt ? |

Drill 2 Reproduction

Reproduce the aural comprehension passage in Drill 1 with the following key words:

SaaliH -- δamaar -- 9iyaal -- θalaaθiin
 9iʃriin -- tagiyya -- bayt -- ʃaagi
 ryaal -- bayt -- Guraf -- θallaaja

Drill 3 Aural Comprehension

Listen twice to the following passage on tape, and then indicate whether the statements below are true or false. If the statement is false, say, "GalaT" and correct it.

'ana baHrayni min al-manaama. darast ingiliizi fi daar al-mu9allimiin sanatayn. HaSalt 9ala ʃ-ʃahaada l-9aam al-maaḡi. 'ana mutazawwij al-Hamdu lillaah. HaSalt 9ala ʃuGl mu9allim fi s-su9uudiyya. 'ana ma ruHtʃ 'abu ḡabi min mudda Tawiila. sirna 'ana w-9aa'ilati l-maTaar. dafa9t θaman at-tḡḡaakir bass kaan 9indana ʃimiiT kaθiira. dafa9t tagriib 9iʃriin diinaar baHrayni Hagg az-ziyaada w-diinaarayn ḡariiba Hagg al-maTaar. tarakna l-maTaar w-wuSulna 'abu ḡabi ba9d nuSS saa9a 9ala sibb 'abu ḡabi gariiba min al-baHrayn. 9indi Sadiig fi 'abu ḡabi. kunna ḡuyuuf 9inda. sakanna ma9aa w-ma9 9aa'ilata ʃahr w-ba9da HaSalna 9ala bayt min al-Hukuuma. 'al-bayt fii kuil ʃay': θallaaja w-Gassaala w-magaa9id w-karaasi w-karaayil. 'al-bayt SaGiir walaakin 'iHna ma niʃti bayt kabiir 9ala sibb ma 9indanaaʃ 9iyaal w-'ahlana ma yuskunu ma9aana.

'al-jum9a l-maaḡi sirna 'ana w-zawjati w-Sadiigi w-'usrata l-baHr. li9ibna w-sabaHna w-ba9da sirna na'kul. 'akalna Huut w-ʃiribna biira. Sadiigi dafa9 al-fuluus. ba9d al-'akl ruHna s-sinama 9ala Hisaabi 'ana. kaan fii film 9arabi. yumkin 'ant ma ʃuftʃ 'aflaam 9arabiyya. 'ana min mudda Tawiila ma ʃuftʃ film 9arabi. 'al-film kaan naahi.

'al-9iyaal 'i9jabhum al-film kaøir. ba9d as-sinama kunna taa9ibiin kaøir. sirna l-bayt w-numna 9ala sabb kunna taa9ibiin.

1. darast 'ingiliizi fi l-jaami9a fi l-manaama.
2. HaSalt 9ala f-fahaada gabl sana.
3. 'ana mutazawwij w-9indi 'usra kabfira.
4. gadli 'astaGil fi 'abu øabi sanatayn.
5. 'ana w-zawjati ruHna la-'abu øabi b-s-sayyaara.
6. min al-manaama la-'abu øabi tagriib nuSS saa9a b-s-sayyaara.
7. dafa9t 9ifriin diinaar Hagg az-ziyaada w-diinaarayn øariiba.
8. sakanna ma9 Sadiigi w-'usrata sana waaHida.
9. HaSalt 9ala bayt min al-Hukuuma ba9d fahr waaHid.
10. 'ahli w-'ahl zawjai yuskunu ma9aana fi l-bayt.
11. sirna ma9 Sadiigi w-9aa'ilata l-baHr gabl 'usbuu9.
12. li9ibna w-sabHna w-ruHna s-sinama.
13. 'akalna rizz w-laHm w-fribna faahi.
14. Sadiigi dafa9 øaman af-taøaakir w-l-'akl kaan 9ala Hisaabi.
15. fufna film 9arabi w-kaan al-film naahi.
16. ba9d al-film sirna bayt Sadiigi w-li9ibna baTTa.

Drill 4 Reproduction

Reproduce the listening comprehension passage in Drill 3, above, with the help of the following key words:

baHrayni	-- 'ingiliizi	-- fahaada	-- mu9allim
mutazawwij	-- saar	-- Tayyaara	-- fimiit
øariiba	-- taøaakir	-- nuSS saa9a	-- Sadiig
øuyuuf	-- HaSal 9ala	-- SaGiir	-- øallaaja
baHr	-- Huut	-- biira	-- sinama
Hisaab	-- riji9	-- naam	-- taa9ib

Note to Teacher

Ask individual students to tell short stories or describe events of daily occurrence. Members of the class are encouraged to ask questions or comment on the stories told or the events described.

U N I T 3 2

I. TEXT

Hayya-LLa man jaa'

- 'afraaH : Hayya-LLa man jaa'! 'al-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama!
huda : 'aLLaah ysallimf. w-y9aafiif.
'afraaH : kayf 'anti ?
huda : Tayyiba l-Hamdu lillaah.
'afraaH : 'ayn kunti ? ma 'absartif amin sab9 sanawaat.
huda : gad tammayt al-madrasa 0-0aanawiyya gabl sittat sanawaat
w-ba9da HaSSalt munHa 9ala Hisaab al-Hukuuma w-sirt
'amriika.
'afraaH : 'ayf ta9allanti hownaak ?
huda : ta9allamt 'ingiliizi w-tarbiya. ba9dima taxarrajt w-'axa6t
af-fahaada riji9t la-l-yaman w-darrast fi daar
al-mu9allimaat muddat sanatayn.
'afraaH : w-ba9da jiiti haana ?
huda : na9am. gad-li haana sanatayn.
'afraaH : 'ayn ti9maliin 6alHiin ?
huda : 6alHiin b-afstaGil fi l-'i6aa9a fi gism al-'ingiliizi.
'afraaH : Hayya-LLa biif.

II. TRANSLATION

Welcome Back

- Afrah : Welcome back! Praise be to God for a safe return!
Huda : God protect you.
Afrah : How are you?
Huda : I'm fine. Thank you.
Afrah : Were have you been? I haven't seen you for seven years.
Huda : I finished the secondary school six years ago, and then I got
a government scholarship and went to America.

- Afrah : What did you learn there?
 Huda : I learned English and education. After I had graduated and obtained a degree, I returned to Yemen and taught at the Women's Teacher Training College for two years.
 Afrah : And you returned here later on?
 Huda : Yes. I have been here for two years.
 Afrah : Where are you working now?
 Huda : I am working now at the Broadcasting Station in the English section.
 Afrah : Welcome!

III. VOCABULARY

Hayya	(yHayyi) to welcome s.o.; to greet s.o.
man	rel. pron. who; he who
salaama	v.n. safety; security
sallam	(ysallim) to protect, keep s.o. safe
9aafa	(y9aafi) to keep s.o. safe; to restore good health to s.o.
'absar	(yibsir) to see
tamm	(ytimm) to finish, complete
HaSSal	(yHaSSil) to get, obtain
munHa	(munaH) scholarship, fellowship
riji9	(yirja9) to return, come back
darras	(ydarris) to teach
daar	(duur) house, home; building
daar al-mu9allimaat	(duur -) the women's teacher training college
staGal	(yistaGil) to work
'i9aa9a	v.n. broadcasting
'al-'i9aa9a	(-aat) the broadcasting station
gism	('agsaam) section; part

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

tfaagad	(yitfaagad) to check, inspect
tasallaf	(yitsallaf) to borrow
Gallag	(yGalliG) to shut, close
tazawwaj	(yitzawwaj) to get married; to marry s.o.
'i9jab	(yi9jib) to please s.o.
9imil	(yi9mal) to do; to make
HaTT	(yHuTT) to put
ba9dima	conj. after
9indima	conj. when, at the time when
gablima	conj. before

V. GRAMMAR

1. Perfect Tense

The verbs riji9 'to return' and 9imil 'to make; to do' are conjugated like firih 'to drink'.

huw rijj9	hin rij9ayn	'anti rijj9ti
hum rij9u	'ant rijj9t	'antayn rijj9tayn
hiy rij9at	'antu rijj9tu	'ana rijj9t
	'iHna rijj9na	

Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.' and 9aafa 'to keep s.o. safe; to restore (s.o.) to good health' are defective verbs because of the final weak -a. However, their conjugation is regular in SA, except that 9aafa is normally used with reference to God only:

9aafaani LLaah	'God kept me safe; God restored good health to me.'
'aLLaah y9aafiik!	'God keep you safe! God restore good health to you.'

Below is the conjugation of Hayya:

huw Hayya	hin Hayyayn	'anti Hayyayti
hum Hayyu	'ant Hayyayt	'antayn Hayyaytayn
hiy Hayyat	'antu Hayyaytu	'ana Hayyayt
	iHna Hayyayna	

The phrase Hayyaak aLLa! or 'aLLaah yHayyiik means 'God preserve your life!' Similarly 9aafaak aLLaah! or 'aLLaah y9aafiik! 'God keep you safe! God restore good health to you!'

tamm 'to complete, finish, and HaTT 'to put' are doubled verbs because of the final identical consonants -mm and -TT. Below is the conjugation of tamm.

huw tamm	hin tammayn	'anti tammayti
hum tammu	'ant tammayt	'antayn tammaytayn
hiy tammat	'antu tammaytu	'ana tammayt
	iHna tammayna	

2. Perfect Tense with Suffixed Pronouns

When a suffixed pronoun is added to a perfect-tense or imperfect-tense verb, it functions as the object of that verb. The verb suffixed pronouns and the noun suffixed pronouns are identical (see UNIT 7, GRAMMAR 1), except for the suffixed pronoun -ni that corresponds to 'I'.

darrasa	'He taught him.'	-a
darrashum	'He taught them (m.).'	-hum/ahum
darrasha	'He taught her.'	-ha/-aha
darrashin	'He taught them (f.).'	-hin/-ahin
darrasak	'He taught you (m.s.).'	-ak
darraskum	'He taught you (m.p.).'	-kum/-akum
darrasif	'He taught you (f.s.).'	-if
darraskin	'He taught you (f.p.).'	-kin/-akin

darrasni	'He taught me.'	-ni
darrasna	'He taught us.'	-na/-ana

If the verb form ends with a vowel, e.g., Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.', darasti 'you (f.s.) studied', darastu 'you (m.p.) studied', darasna 'we studied', etc., the vowel is lengthened before adding the suffixed pronoun. Examples:

darastii	'You (f.s.) studied it.'
darastuu	'You (m.p.) studied it.'
darasnaa	'We studied it.'

Note that darasti + -a → darastii 'You (f.s.) studied it.'
 drastu + -a → darastuu 'You (m.p.) studied it.'

Other examples:

'absarnaahum	'We saw them (m.p.)'
'absartuuna	'You (m.p.) saw us.'
'i9jabuuf	'They (m.p.) pleased you (f.s.), i.e., you (f.s.) liked them.'

3. The Verb 'i9jab

For the meaning and use of the verb 'i9jab 'to please s.o.' see UNIT 14, 3. Special Constructions.

NOTES ON TEXT

daar usually means 'house, home' and is synonymous with bayt, though bayt is more commonly used. daar, however, is used in a construct phrase to mean 'the building of, the home of (e.g., orphans, books, broadcasting, etc.)'. Thus:

daar al-mu9allimaat	'the women's teacher training college'
daar al-kutub	'the public library'
daar al-Hamd	lit., "the house of praise" -- name of a hotel in Sanaa
daar al-'iḍaa9a	'the broadcasting station'
daar al-'aytaam	'the home of orphans, i.e., the orphanage'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

- S₁ : Hayya-LLa man jaa!' 'al-Hamdu lillaah 9ala s-salaama.
'Welcome back! Praise be to God for a safe return!'
- S₂ : 'aLLaah ysallimk w-y9aafiik! 'God protect you!'

Drill 2 Chain

- S₁ : kayf ant ? 'How are you ?'
- S₂ : Tayyib al-Hamdu lillaah. 'I am fine. Thank you.'

Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

- S₁ : 'ayn kunti ? 'Where were you (f.s.)?'
T : at home
- S₂ : kunt fi l-bayt. 'I was at home.'

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. at the training college | 8. on the telephone |
| 2. at the broadcasting station | 9. at the garage |
| 3. at the college | 10. in class |
| 4. at the engineering college | 11. with my family |
| 5. at the language institute | 12. at the market |
| 6. at the health department | 13. at work |
| 7. in the apartment | 14. with the pipe fitter |

Drill 4 Repetition

tamm al-madrasa 0-0aanawiyya w-HaSSal munHa.

'He finished high school and got a scholarship.'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. tammayt -- HaSSalt | 6. tammayn -- HaSSalayn |
| 2. tammayti -- HaSSalti | 7. tammayna -- HaSSalna |
| 3. tammaytu -- HaSSaltu | 8. tammat -- HaSSalat |
| 4. tammaytayn -- HaSSaltayn | 9. tamm -- HaSSal |
| 5. tammu -- HaSSalu | 10. tammayt -- HaSSalt |

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

tasallaf fuluus w-tazawwaj. 'He borrowed money and got married.'

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1. 'ant | 5. married | 11. huw |
| 2. bought a house | 7. left | 12. came |
| 3. 'ana | 8. travelled | 13. 'iHna |
| 4. bought a car | 9. 'antu | 14. 'antu |
| 5. hum | 10. married | 15. hum |

Drill 6 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

1. huw yHuTT fuluus fi l-bank kull Jahr.
2. 'ana 'axalliS al-9amal ba9d saa9a.
3. hiy tHaSSil munHa ba9dima tirja9.
4. 'iHna nitimm al-madrasa gablima nitazawwaj.
5. hum yHaSSilu fuluus ba9dima yiS'taGilu.
6. huw ydarris fi daar al-mu9allimiin.
7. hiy tdarris fi daar al-mu9allimaat.
8. yi9jibhum al-jaww al-baarid fi S-Sayf.
9. y9mal Saahi ba9dima yirja9 mir al-9amal.
10. 'ayf ti9malu ? man yiji l-yawm ?
11. 9a-yirja9 ba9dima ytimm 9amala.
12. huw fi l-'i0aa9a w-t-talavizyoon.

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

faaTima darrasat fi daar al-mu9allimaat.

'Fatima taught at the Women's Teacher Training College.'

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. 9aa'ija | 5. 'ana | 9. positive |
| 2. Zaid | 6. 'iHna | 10. 'inti |
| 3. Hasan | 7. learned | 11. hum |
| 4. negative | 8. worked | 12. hin |

Drill 8 Completion

huw jaa' 9ala sibb ... 'He came in order to ...'

1. take money from the bank.
2. finish his work before noon.
3. see the film before he returns home.
4. obtain a degree in English and education.
5. borrow money and get married.
6. check the tires and the battery.
7. close the store and go home.
8. close the door.
9. study commerce and obtain a degree.
10. eat dinner with us.
11. get his car after the mechanic checks it.
12. work at the Yemeni Broadcasting Station.
13. play and swim in the sea.
14. teach engineering at Sanaa University.
15. work as a typist in the Ministry of Agriculture.
16. deposit YR. 1,000 in the bank.

Drill 9 Transformation: imperfect + perfect

- | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 'ant tuskun fi jugga ? | 7. maabij 9amal al-yawm. |
| 2. huw fi l-9amal al-yawm. | 8. 9indima yiji yiHaSSil 9amal. |

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 3. 'ant jaawi9 ḡalHiin ? | 9. 'ana 'adrus fi daar al-mu9allimiin. |
| 4. hiy 9aaTi/fa ḡalHiin ? | 10. hiy fi l-madrasa 0-0aanawiyya. |
| 5. hum yitsallafu fuluus. | 11. yi9jibak haaḡa l-9amal ? |
| 6. maabiḡ jawaab. | 12. 'al-bank yGallig saa9at 0intayn. |

Drill 10 Questions (Based on Text)

1. gabl kam sana tammata huda l-madrasa 0-0aanawiyya ?
2. man HaSSal munHa 9ala Hisaab al-Hukuuma ?
3. 'ayn saarat huda ?
4. 'ayḡ ta9allamat huda fi 'amriika ?
5. 'ayn darrasat huda ba9dima taxarrajat ?
6. kam sana darrast fi daar al-mu9allimaat ?
7. 'ayn tiḡtaGiḡ huḡa ḡalHiin ?

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. jamiila : 'ayn ti9maliin ḡalHiin ya 'amiina ?
 'amiina : fi daar al-mu9allimaat.
 jamiila : kam sana gad-liḡ hownaak ?
 'amiina : sanatayn.
 jamiila : kam ta'xuḡiin fi ḡ-ḡahr ?
 'amiina : 'alfayn ryaal.
 jamiila : 'anti mirtaaHa hownaak ?
 'amiina : mirtaaHa ka0iir al-Hamdu lillaah.

2. 9ali : 'ayn kunt ya Hasan ? ma 'absarnaakḡ min mudda Tawiila.
 Hayya-LLa man jaa'!
 Hasan : 'aLLaah ysallimk w-y9aafiik. kunt fi s-su9uudiyya xams
 sanawaat.
 9ali : 'ayḡ kunt tiḡtaGiḡ ?
 Hasan : 9ammaar.
 9ali : tazawwajt ?
 Hasan : tazawwajt gablima riji9t.

9ali : 9indak 'awlaad ?

Hasan : bintayn w-walad.

UNIT 33

I. TEXT

SaaliH mariiḡ

- 9ali : maa lak ya SaaliH ? mariiḡ ?
SaaliH : maafi. maaf mariiḡ gawi bass gad 'ana taa9ib, ma ragadt/ Taayib Tuul al-layl.
9ali : haaḡa ma ySuHH/! ruH la-l-Hakiim! 'aLLaah yiSfiik w-y9aafiik!
SaaliH : gad ruHt 'ams. tfaagadni l-Hakiim w-gaal fiini Humma. 'addaa-li dawaa' w-gaal, "sta9mil haaḡa d-dawaa' w-'ibga fi l-bayt yawmayn!"
9ali : naahi. xuḡ 'ijaaza w-saafir la-l-gaahira 'aw landan.
SaaliH : gad gaddamt Talab Hagg 'ijaaza w-l-mudiir laazim 9alayh ywaafiq.
9ali : 'al-mudiir rajjaal Tayyib. yisti ysaa9id kull waaHid. huw saa9adni l-9aam al-maaḡi: HaSSalt ziyaada fi ma9aafi.
SaaliH : gaal 'inna maabis 9inda 'ayy maani9.
9ali : 'ayn tiSti tsaafir ?
SaaliH : 'al-gaahira n/aaLLa.
9ali : waHdak 'aw ma9 jamaa9a ?
SaaliH : waHdi. haakaḡa 'aHsan. 'ana ba-saafir waHdi yawmiya.

II. TRANSLATION

SaliH Is Ill

- Ali : What's the matter with you, SaliH? Are you ill?
SaliH : No. I am not very ill, but I am tired. I did not sleep well throughout the whole night.
Ali : This is not all right. Go see the doctor! God cure you and give you good health!

- SaliH : I went yesterday. The doctor examined me and said that I had fever. He prescribed medicine for me and said, "Use this medicine and stay at home for two days."
- Ali : Good! Take leave and travel to Cairo or London!
- SaliH : I submitted an application for leave and the director had to approve (it).
- Ali : The director is a good man. He likes to help everyone. He helped me last year: I got an increase in my salary.
- SaliH : He said that he did not have any objection.
- Ali : Where would you like to travel?
- SaliH : Cairo, God willing.
- Ali : Alone or with a group of people?
- SaliH : Alone. It's better this way. I always travel alone.

III. VOCABULARY

maa l-?	What's the matter with ...?
ragad	(yurgud) to sleep
Tayyib	adv. well
Tuul	v.n. length; tallness
Tuul al-layl	adv. throughout the whole night, all night long
SaHH	(ySuHH) to be all right; to be allowed, permissible
Hakiim	(Hukamaa') medical doctor. syn. <u>Tabiib</u>
fafa	(yiffi) to cure, heal s.o., restore s.o. to health
tfaagad	(yitfaagad) to examine s.o. (medically)
Humma	fever, high temperature
'adda (l-)	(y'addi) to give s.o. (s.th.)
dawaa'	('adwiya) medicine
sta9mal	(yista9mil) to use, utilize
bigi	(yibga) to stay, remain
xuδ	imper. Take (m.s.)!
'ijaaza	(-aat) leave, vacation
saafar	(ysaafir) to travel
gaddam	(ygaddim) to present, submit, e.g., an application
Talab	(-aat) application; request.

gaddam Talab	to submit an application, apply
waafag (9ala)	(ywaafig) to approve (s.th.)
saa9ad	(ysaa9id) to help, assist
ma9aaʃ	(-aat) salary; stipend
'inna	conj. that
maani9	(mawaani9) objection
waHd-	alone, by oneself
haakaḍa	adv. in this manner, this way
'aHsan	elat. adj. better; best
yawmiya	adv. always

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

gaabal	(ygaabil) to meet s.o.; to have an interview with s.o.
jaawab	(yjaawib) to answer (e.g., a letter, a question, the phone, etc.)
xaabar	(yxaabir) to telephone
xaraj	(yuxruj) to go out, come out, get out
daxal	(yudxul) to enter
manzuul	(-iin) having a cold. syn. <u>mazkuum</u>
Gaalit	(-iir) mistaken, having made a mistake
nuzuul	v.n. cold., state of having a cold. syn. <u>zukaam</u>

V. GRAMMAR

1. maa l-, with a suffixed pronoun or a noun after it, means, "What's the matter with ...?" Thus:

maa l-ak ?	'What's the matter with you (m.s.)?'
maa l-akum ?	'What's the matter with you (m.p.)?'
maa l-i/	'What's the matter with you (f.s.)?'
maa l-9ali ?	'What's the matter with Ali?'
maa l-al-jaami9a ?	'What's the matter with the university?'

2. SaHH imperfect ySuHH, is usually used in the negative to mean, "It's not all right; it shouldn't happen; it cannot be": ma ySuHHf. The imperfect may introduce a sentence or a phrase with the meaning of, "It is possible, permissible to ..."

ma ySuHHf truuH. 'It is not possible for you to leave.'

'You shouldn't leave.'

ma ySuHHf aL-xuruuj min haana. 'Exit is not permitted from here.'

ySuHH 'agaddim Talab la-l-mudir ?

'Is it possible for me to apply to the director?

ySuHH ad-duxuul min haana ? 'Is it permitted to enter from here ?'

3. 'inna is a particle which may be used without a suffixed pronoun, in which case it corresponds in meaning to "that" in such constructions as "He said that; he saw that; he informed me that," etc. With a suffixed pronoun it means "that he, I, they", etc.

gaal 'inni/ saafarti. 'He said that you (f.s.) travelled.'

gaal 'inna d-dawaa' Gaali. 'He said that the medicine was expensive.'

4. Perfect Tense

a. The verbs saafar 'to travel', waafag 'to approve s.th.', saa9ad 'to help, assist', gaabal 'to meet s.o.; to have an interview with s.o.', jaawab 'to answer', and xaabar 'to telephone' are regular verbs. The full conjugation of saatar 'to travel' is:

huw saafar	hin _____ an	'anti _____ ti
hum _____ u	'ant _____ t	'antayn _____ tayn
hiy _____ at	'antu _____ tu	'ana _____ t
	'iHna _____ na	

b. The verb 'adda

The verb 'adda l-, imperfect y'addi l-, 'to give s.th. to s.o.' is a defective verb and is conjugated like Hayya. Like 9aafa, 'adda is

also used with reference God only:

'aLLaah yijsfiik w-y9aafiik! 'May God cure you and restore good health to you!'

d. The Verb *bigi*

The verb bigi, imperfect yibga, is also a defective verb, but it is different from Hayya. It is irregular:

huw bigi	hin bigiyayn	'anti bigiiti
hum bigu	'ant bigiit	'antayn bigiytayn
hiy bigyat	'antu bigiitu	'ana bigiit
	'iHna bigiina	

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain -- Cued

T :	mariiḡ	'sick'
S ₁ :	maa lak ya ...? marriḡ ?	'What's the matter with you,...? Sick?
S ₂ :	'ii na9am. mariiḡ.	'Yes, I am sick.'

1. jaawi9	5. manzuul	9. fiik Humma
2. 9aaTij	6. mazkuum	10. jaawi9
3. taa9ib	7. majnuun	11. mariiḡ
4. mariiḡ	8. maaj Tayyib	12. taa9ib

Drill 2 Repetition

huw jaa' w-bigiy yawmayn. 'He came here and stayed two days.'

1. hum jaw w-bigiyu yawmayn.	6. 'anti ji'ti w-bigiiiti yawmayn.
2. hiy jaa'at w-bigyat yawmayn.	7. 'antayn ji'tayn w-bigiiitayn yawmayn.
3. hin jayn w-bigiyayn yawmayn.	

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 4. 'ant ji't w-bigiit yawmayn. | 8. 'ana ji't w-bigiit yawmayn. |
| 5. 'antu ji'tu w-bigiitu
yawmayn. | 9. 'iHna ji'na w-bigiina yawmayn. |
| | 10. huw jaa' w-bigi yawmayn. |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

bigi fi l-bayt. 'He stayed at home.'

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. hum | 6. ma9aana | 11. 'anti |
| 2. mustajfa | 7. 'ant | 12. 'antayn |
| 3. hiy | 8. haana | 13. 'ana |
| 4. madrasa | 9. 'antu | 14. 'iHna |
| 5. hin | 10. 'usbuu9 | 15. bayt |

Drill 4 Chain -- Cued

- S₁ : ruH la-l-Hakiim! 'Go to the doctor!'
 S₂ : tamaam. laazim 9alayy 'aruuH la-l-Hakiim.
 'Right! I have to go to the doctor.'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. ruH tazawwaj! | 7. ruH waHdak! |
| 2. ruuHu tazawwaju! | 8. ruuHi waHdis! |
| 3. ruuHi saa9idi 'ummi9! | 9. ruH 'addii-la l-ma9aas! |
| 4. ruH sta9mil as-sayyaara! | 10. ruH HuTT fuluus fi l-bank! |
| 5. ruuHi 'i9rabi d-dawaa'! | 11. ruuHayn 'udrusayn! |
| 6. ruH 'urgud! | 12. ruuHa naamu! |

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

gaddamt Talab w-l-mudiir waafag 9alayh.

'I submitted an application and the director approved it.'

- | | | |
|--------|----------|-------------|
| 1. huw | 5. 'iHna | 9. 'ana |
| 2. hum | 6. hin | 10. 'antayn |

- | | | |
|---------|----------|-----------|
| 3. hiy | 7. 'antu | 11. 'iHna |
| 4. 'ant | 8. 'anti | 12. huw |

Drill 6 Substitution

haaḡa rajjaa Tayyib. 'This is a good man.'

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. Hakiim | 5. 'akl | 9. najjaar |
| 2. mu9allim | 6. Tabbaa9 | 10. muhandis |
| 3. rijaa | 7. 9ammaar | 11. Tabiib |
| 4. banaat | 8. sabbaak | 12. Ta9aam |

Drill 7 Substitution

huw saa9adni 1-9aam al-maaḡi'. 'He helped me last year.'

Example: T : 'ant -- me 'you -- I'
 S : 'ant saa9adtani 1-9aam al-maaḡi.
 'You helped me last year.'

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 'ana -- huw | 6. hiy -- 'anti | 11. 'iHna -- 'antu |
| 2. 'ant -- huw | 7. hiy -- hin | 12. 'ant -- 'ana |
| 3. huw -- 'ana | 8. hum -- 'ana | 13. 'antu -- 'ana |
| 4. huw -- hiy | 9. hum -- 'iHna | 14. 'antu -- hum |
| 5. huw -- 'ant | 10. 'iHna -- 'antayn | |

Drill 8 Variable Substitution

huw yiḡti ysa29id. 'He likes to help.'

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. ysaafir | 5. tuxruj | 9. 'asaa9id |
| 2. yurgud | 6. tudxul | 10. hum |
| 3. yibga | 7. ta'kul | 11. 'iHna |
| 4. hiy | 8. 'ana | 12. hin |

- | | | |
|--------|----------|-------------|
| 1. huw | 5. 'iHna | 9. 'ana |
| 2. hum | 6. hin | 10. 'antayn |

Drill 9 Double Substitution

huw gaal-li 'inna maabiſ 9inda 'ayy maani9.
'He told me that he did not have any objection.'

Example: T : hiy -- hiy 'she -- they (m.)'
S : hiy gaalat-li 'ina maabiſ 9indaha 'ayya maani9.
'She told me that she did not have any objection.'

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. huw -- hum | 7. 'ant -- huw |
| 2. huw -- hiy | 8. 'antu -- 'antu |
| 3. hiy -- 'iHna | 9. hin -- hin |
| 4. hiy -- huw | 10. hin -- huw |
| 5. hiy -- 'antu | 11. 'antayn -- hiy |
| 6. hum -- hum | 12. 'ant -- huw |

Drill 10 Chain -- Cued

T : hiy 'she'
S₁ : 9a-tsaafir ma9 jamaa9a ?
'Is she going to travel with (some) people?'

S₂ : maaſi. waHdaha. haakaɔa 'aHsan.
No, by herself. It's better this way.'

- | | | |
|---------|------------|-----------|
| 1. huw | 5. 'anti | 9. hin |
| 2. hum | 6. 'antu | 10. huw |
| 3. hin | 7. 'antayn | 11. hiy |
| 4. 'ant | 8. hiy | 12. 'anti |

Drill 11 Translation

1. He used the medicine and slept throughout the whole night.
2. The doctor examined me and said that I had fever.
3. What's wrong with you? This is not right! Go see the doctor!
4. He prescribed medicine for me and said, "Stay in bed for two days!"
5. I submitted an application for leave; the minister approved it and I travelled to Cairo.
6. How much is your salary? Can you buy a house?
7. I am a workman in the Ministry of Public Works. My salary is insufficient. I cannot buy a new house.
8. I always have Yemeni coffee after dinner.
9. Can you chew qat every day? I know that your salary does not go far.
10. He said that he did not have any objection. I can take my leave after the director returns from London.

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSION

Listen to the following passage on tape, and then summarize it in your own words.

I. TEXT

'ayn as-safaara l-'amriikiyya ?

Hasan : 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!

9ali : wa 9alaykum as-salaam.

Hasan : mumkin 'as'alkum su'aal?

9ali : tafaṣṣal!

Hasan : gul-li law samaHt 'ayn as-safaara l-'amriikiyya.

9ali : 'al-masaafa tagriib xams dagaa'ig b-s-sayyaara. 'ant tisti tuxTi 'aw truuH b-s-sayyaara ?

Hasan : 'asti 'aruuH b-s-sayyaara. 9indi sayyaara.

9ali : naahi. haaḍa 9aari9 az-zubayri. 'irja9 ware haana w-ba9da ruH saani w-9ind ad-daa'ira l-'awwala liif 9aia l-yamiin w-'udxul 9aari9 9ali 9abd al-muGni tlaagi fundug saba' 9ala l-yasaar w-ba9da maktab al-bariid fi t-taHriir. haanak liif 9imaal w-ba9da 'udxul fi 9aari9 sitta w-9i9riin sabtambir. sir galiil tlaagi binaayatayn: binaaya 9ala yasaarak w-l-binaaya 0-0aaniya 9ala yamiinak hiy as-safaara l-'amriikiyya. 'is'al hownaak ywarruuk as-safaara. kull waaHid y9rifha. 'aLLa ma9ak!

Hasan : nawwar aLLaah galbak.

II. TRANSLATION

Where Is the American Embassy?

Ali: Peace be upon you!

Hasan : May I ask you a question?

Ali : Go ahead!

Hasan : Tell me, please, where the American Embassy is!

Ali : The distance takes about five minutes by car. Do you want to walk or go by car?

Hasan : I want to go by car. I have a car.

Ali : Fine. This is Zubairi Street. Back up here and then go straight. At the first circle (roundabout) turn right and enter Ali Abdul Mughni Street. You will find the Sheba Hotel on the left and, farther down, the Post Office in Tahrir Square. Turn left there and then enter September 26 Street. Go a little farther and you will find two buildings: one on your left and the other building, on your right, is the American Embassy. Ask there and they will show you the Embassy. Everyone knows it. God be with you!

Hasan : Thank you!

III. VOCABULARY

mumkin	(with foll. imperf.) May ...? Is it possible that ...?
sa'ʔi	(yis'al) to ask
su'aal	('as'ila, -aat) question
gul!	say (m.s.)! Speak up!
gul-li	tell (m.s.) me!
safaara	(-aat) embassy
dagiiga	(dagga'ig) minute
xuTi	(yuxTu) to walk, go on foot
ware	adv. behind; backwards syn. <u>xalf</u>
riji9 ware	He backed up, went in reverse
saani	adv. straight, straight ahead
daa'ira	(dawaa'ir) circle, roundabout
laff	(yliff) to turn (left, right, etc.)
yamiin	adv. right; n. right hand
laaga	(ylaagi) to find s.th.; to encounter
yasaar	adv. left; n. left hand
bariid	mail, letters
maktab al-bariid	the post office
ʃimaal	adv. left; n. left hand. syn. <u>yasaar</u>
saar	(ysiir) to walk; to go to a place

binaaya	(-aat) building
warra	(ywarri) to show s.o. or s.th.
9irif	(yi9rif) to know
nawwar	(ynawwir) to enlighten fill with light
galb	(guluub) heart

IV. GRAMMAR

1. Perfect Tense

a. The verb laff 'to turn, e.g., right, left, etc.' is conjugated like tamm (UNIT 32, GRAMMAR 1):

huw laff	hin ___ ayn	'anti ___ ayti
hum ___ u	'ant ___ ayt	'antayn ___ aytayn
hiy ___ at	'antu ___ aytu	'ana ___ ayt
	'iHna ___ ayna	

b. warra 'to show s.o. s.th.' is conjugated like Hayya (UNIT 32, GRAMMAR 1).

2. Imperatives

The second person masculine singular form of the imperative of kaan 'to be', gaal 'to say' and saaf 'to see' are kun, gul, and fuf, respectively. For the other forms the short vowel -u- is lengthened, i.e., -uu-. Below are the imperative forms of gaal:

gul! guuli! guulu! guulayn!

saar 'to walk; to go to a place' has the following forms:

sir! siiri! siiru! siirayn!

naam 'to sleep':

nam! naami! naamu! naamayn!

3. Note that the following sentences are possible for 'to turn left, right, etc.':

laff yasaar.

laff *simaal*.

laff 9ala l-yasaar.

laff 9ala *s-simaal*.

laff 9ala yasaara.

laff 9ala *simaala*.

NOTE ON TEXT

nawwar aLLa galbak! literally means "May God fill your heart with light" and the implication is that so you might see the correct path. It is a polite formula and is best learned as a set phrase.

V. DRILLS

Drill 1 Chain

S₁ : mumkin 'as'alak su'aal ? 'May I ask you (m.s.) a question?'

S₂ : tafaṣṣal! 'Go ahead!'

Drill 2 Substitution

gul-li law samaHt 'ayn as-safaara l-'amriikiyya!

'Tell me, if you please, where the American Embassy is!'

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. post office | 8. ministry of the interior |
| 2. agriculture department | 9. French Embassy |
| 3. college of commerce | 10. Zubairi Street |
| 4. engineering college | 11. Tahrir Square |
| 5. teacher training college | 12. electric department |
| 6. broadcasting station | 13. Sanaa University |
| 7. passports office | 14. electricity building |

Drill 3 Substitution

haaḍi binaaya kabiira. 'This is a big building.'

- | | | |
|----------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. new | 6. dirty | 11. big |
| 2. old | 7. excellent | 12. small |
| 3. good | 8. not good | 13. very old |
| 4. big | 9. not old | 14. not big |
| 5. clean | 10. very clean | 15. not small |

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

'irja9 ware haana w-ba9da ruH saani!

'Back up here and then go straight!'

- | | |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. hownaak | 7. hownaak |
| 2. 9ala l-yamiin | 8. 'ant |
| 3. 'anti | 9. 9ala yamiinak |
| 4. haana | 10. 9ala yisaarak |
| 5. 9ala l-yasaar | 11. 'antu |
| 6. liffi | 12. haana |

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

liff 9ala l-yamiin! 'Turn (m.s.) right!'

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. left | 5. left | 9. neg. command |
| 2. your left | 6. right | 10. you (m.s.) |
| 3. you (f.s.) | 7. you (m.p.) | 11. your right |
| 4. your right | 8. left | 12. you (m.p.) |

Drill 6 Chain -- CuedS₁ : 'ayy daa'ira haaḍi ?

T : ḥalaaḥa 'three'

S₂ : haaḍi d-daa'ira ḥ-ḥaaliḥa. 'This is the third circle.'

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. 'ienayn | 5. sab9a | 9. 'ienayn |
| 2. waaHid | 6. ḥalaaḥa | 10. xamsa |
| 3. xamsa | 7. waaHid | 11. 'arba9a |
| 4. sitta | 8. ḥamaaniya | 12. waaHid |

Drill 7 Double Substitution'al-masaafa tagriib xams daga'a'ig b-s-sayyaara.

'The distance takes about five minutes by car.'

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. 10 minutes -- car | 7. 50 minutes -- taxi |
| 2. 15 minutes -- car | 8. 20 minutes -- taxi |
| 3. 20 minutes -- bus | 9. 17 minutes -- car |
| 4. 30 minutes -- bus | 10. 1 1/2 hours -- plane |
| 5. two hours -- plane | 11. 2 hours -- car |
| 6. four hours -- plane | 12. 25 minutes -- plane |

Drill 8 Substitution'as-safaara l-'amriikiyya 9ala l-yamiin.

'The American Embassy is on the right.'

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. on your (m.s.) right | 7. on the fourth floor |
| 2. on your (f.s.) right | 8. on the second street |
| 3. on your (m.p.) left | 9. over there |
| 4. on the left | 10. by the sea |
| 5. behind the post office | 11. in front of you |
| 6. on the right | 12. far from here |

Drill 9 Transformation: perfect + imperfect

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. huw sa'ai su'aal. | 8. saarat masaafa Tawiila. |
| 2. sa'alu 'as'ila kaθiira. | 9. warraani maktab al-bariid. |
| 3. gaal maabis 9inda maani9. | 10. 9irif al-miskila. |
| 4. xuTi masaafat kiilomitr. | 11. HaTT aS-samTa 9ala l-miizaan. |
| 5. riji9 ware. | 12. saafaru waHdahum. |
| 6. laffu 9ala l-yamiin. | 13. daxalat aS-Saff. |
| 7. laaga binaaya kabiira. | 14. xaraju min haana. |

Drill 10 Transformation: masculine + feminine

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. mumkin 'as'alak su'aal ? | 9. daxalu min haana. |
| 2. tafaṣṣal 'is'al! | 10. xaraj gabì saa9a. |
| 3. nawwar aLLaah galbak! | 11. warraani s-safaara. |
| 4. gul-li 'ayn as-safaara! | 12. huw yi9rif kayf yruuH. |
| 5. HaTT al-kitaab haana. | 13. 'udxulu min haana! |
| 6. 'irja9 ware! | 14. kam ma9aafak ? |
| 7. liif 9ala l-yamiin! | 15. SabbaHak aLLaah b-l-xayr! |
| 8. laaga miskila kabiira. | 16. 'al-mudiir waafag. |

VI. CONVERSATIONS

1. yaHya : ta9rif bayt 9ali 9abd al-gaadir?
 zayd : 'ii na9am. 'al-bayt Hagga ware t-taHriir, bayn ("between")
 at-taHriirw-gaa9 al-yahuud.
 yaHya : gariib min as-safaara l-miSriyya ?
 zayd : tamaam.
 yaHya : Sukran ya 'ax!
 zayd : ma9 as-salaama.
2. tagwa : maa liif ya maryam ? mariiṣa ?
 maryam : mazkuuma ya tagwa. fiini zukaam gawi.
 tagwa : fiif Humma ? sirti l-Hakiim ?
 maryam : Humma swayya bass. ruHT aT-Tabiib gabl 'usbuu9 w-'addaa-li
 dawaa'.

tagwa : sta9malti d-dawaa' ?
maryam : sta9malta bass ma 'anaam Tuul al-layl.
sa-siir aT-Tabiib marra 0aaniya Gudwa n/saaLLa.
maryam : 'aLLaah yiffiif w-y9aafiif!
tagwa : baarak aLLa fiif!

U N I T 3 5

I. TEXT

'ayn maktab al-bariid ?

'aHmad : gul-li law samaHt 'ayn maktab al-bariid! ba9iid min haana ?

9abd ar-raHmaan . la maa9 ba9iid ba0iir. 'i0a 'ant mista9jil xu0 taksi.

'aHmad : la maa9 mista9jil. 'agdar 'aruUH b-r-rijl, SaHiiH ?

9abd ar-raHmaan : ma tigdar9 b-r-rijl. b-l-baaS mumkin. 'ant 0alHiin fi januub al-madiina. maktab al-bariid fi samaal al-mdiina, ya9ni guddaamak.

'aHmad : 'i0an laazim 9alayy 'asiir saani, SaHiiH ?

9abd ar-raHmaan : tamaam! sir saani tagriib masaafat kiilomitrayn tlaagi al-gunSuliyya r-ruusiyya w-ba9da liff 9ala yaddak a9-9imaal 9ind ad-daa'ira 0-0aaniya. maktab al-bariid 9ind ar-rukun fi t-taHriir w-ykuun 9ala l-yasaar. la tinsa tliff yasaar!

'aHmad : Tab9an. 9ukran ya 'ax!

9abd ar-raHmaan : 9afwan.

II. TRANSLATION

Where Is the Post Office?

Ahmad : Tell me please where the post office is! Is it far from here?

Abd Al-Rahman : No, not very far. If you are in a hurry, take a taxi.

Ahmad : No, I am not in a hurry. I can go on foot, can't I?

Abd Al-Rahman : You can't (go) on foot. It's possible by bus. You are now in the south(ern)(part) of the city. The post office is in the north(ern)(part) of the city, i.e., ahead of you.

- Ahmad : Then, I have to go straight, don't I?
 Abd Al-Rahman : Exactly! Go straight for a distance of approximately
 two kilometers. You will find the Russian Consulate,
 and then turn left at the second circle. The post
 office is at the corner in Tahrir Square, and it will
 be on the left. Don't forget to turn left!
 Ahmad : Of course! Thank you, brother!
 Abd Al-Rahman : You are welcome.

III. VOCABULARY

'iḡa	if
mista9jil	adj. (-iin) in a hurry
'axaḡ	(ya'xuḡ) to take
rijl	('arjil) foot, one's foot (f.)
b-r-rijl	adv. on foot
januub	south (of), southern part (of)
ḡamaal	north (of), northern part (of)
ya9ni	that is to say, namely
guddaam	prep. in front of; adv. in front, forward. var. <u>'amaam</u>
'iḡan	then, therefore
kiilomitr	kilometer
ruusi	(ruus) Russian
hindi	(hunuud) Indian; of India
rukḡ	('arkaam) corner
nisi	(yinsa) to forget
Tab9an	of course, certainly

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

ḡarg	east, eastern part (of)
Garb	west, western part (of)
ḡamaal ḡarg	northeast (of)
januub Garb	southwest (of)
maydaan	(mayaadiin) square

daaxil	prep.; adv. inside
xaarij	prep.; adv. outside
b-jamb	prep. beside, next to
Haara	(-aat) neighborhood, quarter, section (of a city)
safiir	(sufaraa') ambassador
gunSul	(ganaaSul) consul
ruusya	Russia

V. GRAMMAR

1. Perfect Tense

'axaδ 'to take' is conjugated like 'akal 'to eat' or daras 'to study' (UNIT 30). The imperative forms (first person masculine singular) of 'axaδ and 'akal are xuδ! and kul!, respectively.

2. ya9ni literally means 'it means' and it is equivalent in meaning and usage to English 'that is to say, namely, I mean, etc.'

3. in SA SaHiiH ? 'Isn't it so?' is added to a statement to signal what is known in grammar as a "tail question":

huw haana, SaHiiH ?	'He is here, isn't he?'
'ant ruHt, SaHiiH ?	'You went, didn't you?'
'agdar 'aruuH b-r-rijl, SaHiiH ?	'I can go on foot, can't I?'
'ant ma ruHt, SaHiiH ?	'You didn't go, did you?'
9a-tiji Gudwa, SaHiiH ?	'She will come tomorrow, won't she?'

4. In UNIT 8 we had 9ind- as a verb-like expression meaning approximately 'to have'. 9ind, as a preposition, means 'at' and is followed by a non-human noun:

9ind ad-daa'ira l-'awwala	'at the first circle, roundabout'
9ind ar-rukn fi t-taHriir	'at the corner in Tahrir Square'

9ind followed by a human noun expresses the general meaning of 'with' or 'to have with s.o.', not necessarily 'to own' -- or 'at s.o.'s place', similar to French chez --:

9ali 9ind 'ibraaHiim. 'Ali is at Ibrahim's'
 9ind 'ibraaHiim kitaab. 'Ibrahim has a book.'
 'Ibrahim has a book (with him).'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Completion

T : 'iḡa 'ant mista9jil ...

S : 'iḡa 'ant mista9jil xuḡ taksi. 'If you are in a hurry, take a taxi.'

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. 'iḡa 'ant jaawi9 ... | 8. 'iḡa hiy mariiḡa ... |
| 2. 'iḡa 'ant 9aaTiḡ ... | 9. 'iḡa tsiir saani ... |
| 3. 'iḡa maabiḡ gahwa ... | 10. 'iḡa truuH b-r-riḡl ... |
| 4. 'iḡa 'ant mista9jil ... | 11. 'iḡa 9indak fuluus ... |
| 5. 'iḡa huw nisi ... | 12. 'iḡa 'ant Gaalit ... |
| 6. 'iḡa tuskin fi haaḡi l-Haara ... | 13. 'iḡa tibga haana ... |
| 7. 'iḡa l-gunSuliyya ba9iḡida ... | 14. 'iḡa fiik Humma ... |

Drill 2 Completion

'ana ma 'a9rif ... 'I do not know ..."

1. in which street the American Embassy is
2. where the post office is
3. where Tahrir Square is
4. how far Sanaa University is from here
5. where he got this car from
6. why he always travels alone
7. why she doesn't help her mother

8. what the problem is
9. what the name of the ambassador is
10. whether he is outside or inside
11. whether she is a teacher of a typist
12. whether Dar Al-Hamd Hotel is beside the Broadcasting Station

Drill 3 Substitution

maktab al-bariid fi januub al-madiina.

'The post office is south of the city.'

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. north of the city | 7. about 15 minutes from here |
| 2. next to the Saudi Embassy | 8. northeast of the city |
| 3. at the corner in Tahrir Square | 9. at the first circle |
| 4. on your (m.s.) right | 10. in Zubairi Street |
| 5. on the left | 11. near the Sheba Hotel |
| 6. about 2 kms. from here | 12. next to the Ministry of Comm. |

Drill 4 Transformation

T : 9indi su'aal.

'I have a question.'

S : 9indi su'aal ya9ni "I have a question" b-l-'ingiliizi.'

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 'ii na9am. | 7. 'aLLaah yijsfiik w-y9aafiik! |
| 2. masaafat miyat mitr | 8. maabi9 9indi 'ayy maani9. |
| 3. januub Garb | 9. 'irja9 ware w-sir saani! |
| 4. samaal farg | 10. fiini Humma w-mazkuum. |
| 5. maabi9 9amal | 11. nawwar aLLa galbak! |
| 6. liff 9ala l-yamiin! | 12. Hayya LLa man jaa'! |

Drill 5 Completion

Deduce from the statement the teacher gives what fits the meaning.

Example: T : huw ma 'akals ɔl-yawm. 'He did not eat today.'

S : 'iɖan huw jaawi9. 'Therefore, he is not hungry.'

- | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. maryam jaawi9a kaθiir. | 8. 9inda 'usra kabiira. |
| 2. Saadi9 marii9. | 9. 'amiina fi -l-mustafsa. |
| 3. hum mista9jiliin. | 10. 'al-jaaw Haami l-yawm. |
| 4. hiy ma tigdar9 tim9i. | 11. ma HaSalt9 9ala ziyaada. |
| 5. 'ana ma STabaH9i. | 12. 'aT-TamaaTiis raxiis al-yawm. |
| 6. huw yi9ti yisaa9idni. | 13. maabi9 tuffaH fi s-suug. |
| 7. li haana xams sinin. | 14. 'al-masaafa ba9iida. |

Drill 6 Question -- Answer

T : 'as-safaara r-ruusiyya ba9iida min haana, SaHiH ?

'The Russian Embassy is very far from here, isn't it?'

S : Tab9an. ba9iida kaθiir. 'Of course. It's very far.'

1. 'ant axaθt taksi, SaHiH ?
2. fii safaara ruusiyya haana, SaHiH ?
3. 'al-jaww baarid gawi l-yawm, SaHiH ?
4. 'as-su9uudiyya 9amaal al-yaman, SaHiH ?
5. 'al-'as9aar Gaaliya fi l-yaman, SaHiH ?
6. huw yi9rab biira, SaHiH ?
7. maktab al-bariid 9ind ar-rukni fi t-taHriir, SaHiH ?
8. 'ant 'akalt gablima ji't, SaHiH ?
9. huw gaddam Talab Higg 'ijaaza, SaHiH ?
10. 'al-maT9am b-jamb al-fundug, SaHiH ?

Drill 7 Substitution

ruH siida tagriib masaafat miyat mitr!

'Go straight for a distance of about 100 meters!'

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. 100 meters | 6. 400 meters | 11. 200 meters |
| 2. 300 meters | 7. 500 meters | 12. 350 meters |

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 3. 700 meters | 8. 150 meters | 13. 7 kilometers |
| 4. 600 meters | 9. 2 kilometers | 14. 10 kilometers |
| 5. 900 meters | 10. 10 kilometers | |

Drill 8 Double Substitution

'as-safaara 9ind ad-daa'ira al-'awwala.
'The Embassy is at the first circle.'

- | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. 2nd Circle | 8. corner in Tahrir Square |
| 2. 3rd Circle | 9. Teacher Training College |
| 3. 4th Circle | 10. French School |
| 4. 5th Circle | 11. Government Hospital |
| 5. Institute of Administration | 12. Blood Bank |
| 6. Dept. of Water & Electricity | 13. Ministry of Agriculture |
| 7. Foreign Ministry | 14. Ministry of the Interior |

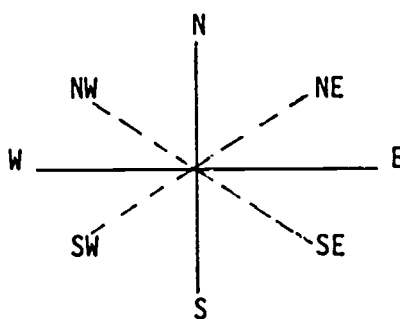
Drill 9 Variable Substitution

mumkin tguul-li 'ayn ? 'Will you (m.s.) please tell me where ?'

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. how | 6. which square | 11. how much |
| 2. you (m.p.) | 7. why | 12. you (m.s.) |
| 3. from where | 8. where | 13. how |
| 4. you (f.s.) | 9. who | 14. which hotel |
| 5. how much | 10. how many | 15. which one |

Drill 10 Directions

T. puts the following drawing on the board and asks individual students to give the directions indicated in Arabic.



Drill 11 Directions

Bring a map to class. Ask individual students to give the location of the Yemen Arab Republic in relation to each neighboring country.

Drill 12 Question -- Answer

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. 'ant ruusi 'aw 'alMaani ? | 8. 'ayn taskun ? |
| 2. kam lak fi l-yaman ? | 9. taskun fi sugga 'aw bayt ? |
| 3. 'ayn ta9mal ? 'ant muhandis ? | 10. 'al-bayt ba9iid min al-9amal ? |
| 4. kam ma9aaʃak fi ʃ-ʃahr ? | 11. kam tadfa9 'iijaar ? |
| 5. 'i9jabatak al-yaman nʃaaLLa ? | 12. kayf al-'as9aar fi l-yaman ? |
| 6. 'ant mutazawwij ? | 13. 'axa8t 'ijaaza ? |
| 7. 9indak 'awlaad ? | 14. 'ayn saafart ? |

UNIT 36

I. TEXT

9iid al-fiTr

gab1 ams 'abu 9ali kaan yiſti ysiir la-s-suug. 'as-sayyaara Haggaa kaanat mu9aTTala. 'axa6 taksi w-raaH la-s-suug w-ſtara rizz w-laHm la-l-bayt w-ba9da ſtara Halawiyyaat w-malaabis w-ganaadir Hagg marata w-'awlaada 9ala sabb Gudwa 9iid al-fiTr. n-naas fi 9iid al-fiTr yilbasu 'aHsan ſay' 9indahum min al-malaabis w-yruuHu ysallimu 9ala 'ahlahum w-jamaa9athum w-yiſrabu gahwa. 'abu 9ali 9indima riji9 min as-suug marata gaalat-la : "lilma ſtaraytſ Haliib ya 'abu 9ali ?" 'abu 9ali gaal : "waLLa nisiit." gaalat-la : "maaſ ſaruuri. 9a-truuH Gudwa. 9indana Haliib baagi min 'ams."

II. TRANSLATION

The Ramadhan Feast

The day before yesterday Abu Ali wanted to go to the market. His car was out of order. He took a cab and went to the market and bought rice and meat for the house, and later on he bought sweets and shoes for his wife and children because tomorrow is the Ramadhan Feast. People during the Ramadhan Feast wear the best clothes they have and go to greet their folks and relatives and drink coffee. When Abu Ali returned from the market, his wife said to him, "Why didn't you buy milk, Abu Ali?" Abu Ali said, "By gosh! I forgot!" She said to him, "It's not necessary. You will go tomorrow. We have milk left from yesterday."

III. VOCABULARY

kaan yiſti (with foll. imperf.) he wanted to ...
mu9aTTal (-iin) out of order; shut-down, stopped

stara	(yistari) to buy
Halawiyyaat	sweets; sweet pastry; candies
malaabis	clothes; clothing. syn. <u>thetaab</u>
gundara	(ganaadir) pair of shoes
mara	(nisaa') woman; wife
9iid	('a9yaad) feast, festival; holiday
ramaṣaan	Ramadhan, the holy month of fasting
9iid al-fiTr	the Ramadhan Feast
libis	(yilbas) to wear; to put on
sallam 9ala	(ysallim) to greet s.o.; to shake hands with s.o.
lilma ?	interrog. part. Why?
baagi	act. part. remaining, left-over

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

famiiz	(sumzaan, summaz) shirt
faaniila	(-aat) undershirt, T-shirt
banTaloon	(-aat) trousers, pants
kuut	('akwaat) jacket
dajla	(-aat) overcoat
fustaan	(fasaatiin) dress, woman's dress
bluuz	(-aat) blouse
gubba9a	(-aat) hat, western hat. syn. <u>Tarbuuf</u> p. <u>Taraabiiſ</u>
SummaaTa	(SummaT) head dress
9imaama	(9amaa'im) turban
Sandal	(Sanaadil) pair of sandals
Hiia	('aHoi) pair of slippers. syn. <u>ſibſib</u> p. <u>ſabaafib</u>

V. GRAMMAR

1. Perfect Tense

a. In Sa there is no perfect-tense verb corresponding to yisti 'he wants, likes'. The perfect-tense is usually expressed by using kaan 'to be' before yisti. Both verbs have to agree with the same subject:

kaan yisti yruuH.	'He wanted to go.'
kunt 'atsti 'aji.	'I liked to come.'
kaanayn yistayn ysiirayn.	'They (f.) liked to walk.'

Invariable kaan is used before such pseudo-verbs as 9ind- 'to have', fii 'there is; there are', etc. to express past time:

kaan 9indi sayyaara.	'I had a car.'
kaan 9indahum Haliib.	'They had milk.'
kaan fii 9iid.	'There was a holiday.'
kaan fii nisaa'.	'There were women.'
kaan ma9aa Halawiyyaat.	'He had sweets.'

b. The verb stara 'to buy' is a defective verb and is conjugated like Hayya 'to greet s.o.'

c. The verb libis 'to wear; to put on' is conjugated like the verb sirib 'to drink' (UNIT 30).

2. The negative particle ma and -f suffixed to the verb are used to negate a past-tense verb:

ma starayt _f gundara.	'I did not buy a pair of shoes.'
ma kunt _f hownaak.	'I was not there.'

NOTE ON TEXT

Ramadhan is the Muslim holy month of fasting. During this month Muslims fast every day from early morning to sunset. After Ramadhan Muslims celebrate a holiday known as The Ramadhan Feast, which usually last^s three or four days. During this holiday, especially on the first day, Muslims wear their best clothes, go to the mosque for the early morning Ramadhan Feast prayer, visit relatives and friends, and exchange gifts.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

yifti yiftari Haliib. 'He wants to buy milk.'

- | | | |
|------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. sweets | 6. shirt | 11. turban |
| 2. clothes | 7. undershirts | 12. head dress |
| 3. shoes | 8. jackets | 13. blouses |
| 4. shirts | 9. overcoat | 14. dresses |
| 5. pants | 10. hat | 15. sandals |

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

kaan yifti ysiir as-suug. 'He wanted to go to the market.'

- | | | |
|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. 'abu 9ali | 6. 'ana | 11. positive |
| 2. 'abu yaHya | 7. 'al-maTaar | 12. 'antu |
| 3. 'umm 9ali | 8. negative | 13. hin |
| 4. 'iHna | 9. 'al-bayt | 14. 'antayn |
| 5. 'ant | 10. hum | 15. huw |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

ftara sumzaan. 'He bought shirt.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-------------------|
| 1. hiy | 6. dresses | 11. blouse |
| 2. coats | 7. clothes | 12. turban |
| 3. shoes | 8. sandals | 13. overcoats |
| 4. hum | 9. hat | 14. 'ana |
| 5. hin | 10. 'iHna | 15. hubble-bubble |

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

libis famiiza. 'He put on his shirt.'

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. hiy | 5. undershirt | 9. turban |
| 2. dress | 6. 'ant | 10. shoes |
| 3. jaket | 7. huw | 11. 'anti |
| 4. 'ana | 8. pants | 12. slippers |

Drill 5 a. Substitution

huw sallam 9alayna. 'He greeted us.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. 'ant | 5. 'iHna | 9. hum |
| 2. 'anti | 6. 'antayn | 10. hiy |
| 3. 'antu | 7. hin | 11. 'iHna |
| 4. 'ana | 8. huw | 12. 'ant |

b. Double Substitution

huw sallam 9alayna. 'He greeted us.'

- | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 'ana -- huw | 6. 'iHna -- 'antu | 11. 'ant -- 'ana |
| 2. 'ana -- hiy | 7. huw -- 'ana | 12. 'anti -- hiy |
| 3. 'ana -- 'ant | 8. 'ana -- hum | 13. 'antu -- 'ana |
| 4. hum -- hiy | 9. huw -- hin | 14. 'antayn -- hin |
| 5. hiy -- 'iHna | 10. hum -- 'ana | |

Drill 6 Double Substitution

huw ʃtara gundara. 'He bought (a pair of) shoes.'

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. hum -- malaabis | 8. huw -- gubba9a |
| 2. hiy -- fustaan | 9. hum -- Halawiyyaat |
| 3. hin -- fasaatiin | 10. 'ana -- SummaaTa |
| 4. 'ant -- kuut | 11. 'ana -- faaniilaat |
| 5. 'antu -- ʃumzaan | 12. 'iHna -- ganaadir |
| 6. 'antayn -- 'aHsi | 13. hin -- bluuzaat |
| 7. huw -- banTaloon | 14. hiy -- Sandal |

Drill 7 Chain -- Cued

- T : huw -- Halawiyyaat 'he -- sweets'
 S₁ : lilma ma staraaf Halawiyyaat ?
 'Why didn't he buy me sweets?'
 S₂ : nisi. 'He forgot.'

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. huw -- gundara | 8. 'antayn -- Halawiyyaat |
| 2. hum -- malaabis | 9. 'antayn -- 'aHsi |
| 3. hiy -- fustaan | 10. hum -- 9amaa'im |
| 4. hin -- fasaatiin | 11. huw -- dajla |
| 5. 'ant -- samiiz | 12. hiy -- gundara |
| 6. 'anti -- kuut | 13. 'ant -- SummaaTa |
| 7. hiy -- faaniilaat | 14. 'antu -- banTaloonaat |

Drill 8 Substitution

marata gaalat : "maaf ɣaruuri." 'His wife said, "Never mind!"'

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. his father | 8. my paternal uncle |
| 2. her father | 9. his maternal uncle |
| 3. my mother | 10. her paternal aunt |
| 4. my brother | 11. his maternal aunt |
| 5. my sister | 12. my niece |
| 6. his wife | 13. her nephew |
| 7. her husband | 14. my cousin |

Drill 9 Transformation: masculine → feminine

1. 'axuuha gaal : "maaf ɣaruuri."
2. 'abu Husayn kaan yisti ysiir as-suug.
3. daxal w-sallam 9alayna.
4. libis malaabisa w-xaraj.
5. 'ant starayt simiiz ?
6. 'antu staraytu banTaloonaat ?

7. hum *Staru Halawiyyaat.*
8. *jaa' w-tkallam ma9aana 'ams.*
9. *'ant nisiit tiStari laHm ?*
10. *huw nisi l-miftaaH fi l-bayt.*
11. *haa9a 'aHsan Say' 9indak ?*
12. *yista9mil as-sayyaara yawmiya.*
13. *huw 'addaa-li fuluus w-saafar.*
14. *maa ti9mal fi 9iid al-fiTr ?*

Drill 10 Questions (Based on TEXT)

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>men saar la-s-suug 'ams ?</i> | 6. <i>'aysf Stara Hagg 'usrata ?</i> |
| 2. <i>liilma 'abu 9ali raaH la-s-suug ?</i> | 7. <i>maa yi9malu n-naas fi l-9iid ?</i> |
| 3. <i>kayf raaH la-s-suug ?</i> | 8. <i>Gudwa 9iid al-fiTr ?</i> |
| 4. <i>liilma ma raaHf b-sayyaarata ?</i> | 9. <i>'abu 9ali Stara Haliib ?</i> |
| 5. <i>'aysf Stara la-l-bayt ?</i> | 10. <i>man gaal : "maaf 9aruuri" ?</i> |

Drill 11 Question -- Answer

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>sirt as-suug al-yawm ?</i> | 8. <i>sayyaaratak mu9aTTala ?</i> |
| 2. <i>kayf sirt la-s-suug ?</i> | 9. <i>'at-talafoon mu9aTTal ?</i> |
| 3. <i>'aysf Starayt ?</i> | 10. <i>'ayn al-gunSuliyya ar-ruusiyya ?</i> |
| 4. <i>Starayt Halawiyyaat ?</i> | 11. <i>ba9iida min haana ?</i> |
| 5. <i>f-ayy Hiin 9iid al-fiTr ?</i> | 12. <i>'al-yaman farg as-su9uudiyya ?</i> |
| 6. <i>maa ti9mal fi l-9iid?</i> | 13. <i>9amraan Garb San9a ?</i> |
| 7. <i>kaan fii naas ka9iir fi
s-suug ?</i> | 14. <i>'ayn al-Hodayda ?</i> |

VII. LISTENING COMPREHENSIONS

Listen to the following passage on tape, and then summarize it in your own words.

U N I T 3 7

I. TEXT

'al-'a9yaad

- joorj : fii 9uTla Gudwa ya Hasan ?
Hasan : 'aywa. Gudwa 9iid al-fiTr. kull 9aam w-'antu b-xayr!
joorj : fii 'a9yaad 0aaniya Gayr haa0a l-9iid ?
Hasan : na9am. fii 9iid al-'a0Ha w-9iid mawlid an-nabi w-9iid
a0-0awra, 0awrat sitta w-9i/sriin September, w-9iid al-9ummaal
w-9iid al-'umm w-9iid a/s-sijara. w-antu fi 'amriika ma
9indakum min 'a9yaad ?
joorj : 9indana 9iidayn kibaar : 9iid al-millaad ya9ni "Christmas"
w-9iid ra's as-sana ya9ni "New Year's". kayf yiHtafilu n-naas
fi l-'a9yaad 9indakum ?
Hasan : 'aS-SubH ysiiru la-l-masjid w-ySallu Salaat al-9iid w-ba9da
yruuHu y9ayyidu 9ala 'ahlahum w-'aSdigaa'ahum w-'agraribhum
w-ysiiru la-l-muntazahaat w-l-Hadaa'ig al-9amma mi0l muntazah
at-taHriir w-muntazah baab al-gaa9 w-Hadiigat al-'aTfaal
w-Hadiigat mustaffa 0-0awra.
joorj : kull 9aam w-'antu b-xayr ya 'ax Hasan!
Hasan : w-antu b-xayr. 'aLLaah y9iida 9alaykum w-9alayna b-l-xayr
w-l-masarraat.

II. TRANSLATION

Feasts and Holidays

- George : Is there a holiday tomorrow, Hasan?
Hasan : Yes. Tomorrow is the Ramadhan Feast. Happy Feast!
George : Are there other holidays (that) you have here, other than
this holiday?
Hasan : Yes. There are the Sacrifice Feast, the Prophet's Birthday,
Revolution Day, the Revolution of September 26, May Day,

Mother's Day, and Arbor Day. And you in America, what holidays do you have ?

George : We have two big holidays: the holiday of the birth, i.e., Christmas and the holiday of the beginning of the year, i.e., New Year's. How do people celebrate holidays in your country?

Hasan : In the morning they go to mosque and pray the Feast Prayer, and later on they go to celebrate the holiday with their folks, friends, and relatives, and they go to parks and public gardens, such as the Independence Park, Bab Al-qaa' Park, the Children's Garden, and the Revolution Hospital Garden.

George : Happy Holiday, brother Hasan!

Hasan : Happy Holiday to you! I hope we will celebrate it again in prosperity and happiness!

III. VOCABULARY

'aywa	yes. syn. <u>na9am</u> , 'ii
9aam	('a9waam) year. syn. <u>sana</u> p. <u>-waat</u>
Gayr	(with foll. n.) other than, different from; (with foll. adj.) not, un-, etc.
9iid al'aṣḥa	the Sacrifice Feast, also known as the Pilgrimage Feast
mawlid	(mawaalid) birthday of a prophet or a saint
nabi	('anbiyaa') prophet
mawlid an-nabi	the Prophet's (Muhammad's) Birthday
9aam'il	(9ummaal) laborer, workman. syn. <u>saagi</u> p. <u>sugaa</u>
9iid al-9ummaal	May Day
9iid al-'umm	Mother's Day
ṣijar	coll. trees. s. <u>ṣijara</u>
miilaad	v.n. birth; nativity; birthday
9iid al-miilaad	Christmas
ra's	(ru'uus) head; beginning
ra's as-sana	New Year; the beginning of the year
9iid ra's as-sana	New Year's Day

Htafal b-	(yiHtafil) to celebrate s.th.
masjid	(masaaqid) mosque
Salla	(ySalli) to pray
9ayyad 9ala	(y9ayyid) to celebrate a feast with s.o.
gariib	('agaarib) relative, relation
muntazah	(-aat) park
Hadiiga	(Hadaa'ig) garden
Hadiiga 9aamma	public garden
miθl	prep. like, similar to
Tifl	('aTfaal) infant; child
9aad (9ala)	(y9iid) to repeat, do again (to s.o.)
masarra	(-aat) joy, happiness

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

9iid miilaad	('a9yaad ___) birthday
Hafla	(-aat) party; ceremony; celebration
Haflat 9iid miilaad	birthday party
zaar	(yzuur) to visit
jaami9	(jawaami9) great, central mosque, such as <u>'al-jaami9 al-kabiir</u> the Grand Mosque in Sanaa
kaniisa	(kanaa'is) church
kaniis	(no known plural) synagogue; temple
gara'	(yigra') to read
'al-gur'aan	the Quran

V. GRAMMAR

1. Perfect Terise

a. Salla 'to pray' is a defective verb and it is conjugated like Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.' (UNIT 32).

b. 9aad 'to repeat s.th.' is a hollow verb and it is conjugated like saar 'to go; to walk' (UNIT 30).

2.. Adjective Agreement with Dual Nouns

It was pointed out in previous lessons that if the noun is singular the adjective agrees with it in gender and definiteness. If the noun is plural the adjective is either singular or plural if the noun modified is nonhuman; if the noun is human, the adjective is plural. Examples:

	'al-bayt al-kabiir	'the big house'
	'al-buyuut al-kabiira	'the big houses'
or:	'al-buyuut al-kibaar	
	'al-banaat al-Haaliyaat	'the beautiful girls'
	'ar-rijaal al-Haaliyiin	'the handsome men'

In this lesson we have a dual noun modified by a plural adjective. We may state the rule in this way: in SA a dual noun (masculine or feminine) is modified by a masculine plural adjective:

9iidayn kibaar	'two big feasts'
bintayn kibaar	'two big, old girls'

Note that in SA a dual may be expressed by 'i0nayn (m.) or 0intayn (f.) followed by the plural; the modifying adjective remains masculine plural:

'i0nayn 'a9yaad kibaar	'two big feasts'
0intayn banaat kibaar	'two big, old girls'

NOTE ON TEXT

kull 9aam w-antu b-xayr! literally means '(I hope) every year you are fine!' and it corresponds to English 'Happy Holiday!'. It is used during the Ramadhan and the Sacrifice Feasts. It would also be used for 'Merry Christmas!' or 'Happy New Year!'. It is invariable, regardless of who you are talking to. The response is the short w-antu b-xayr, or

you may add to it 'allaah y9iida 9alaykum w-9alyna b-l-xayr w-l-masarraat, etc.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

ba9d Gudwa 9iid al-'aḡHa. 'After tomorrow is the Sacrifice Feast.'

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. two days | 6. one month | 11. 2 1/2 weeks |
| 2. five days | 7. two months | 12. 1 1/2 weeks |
| 3. twenty days | 8. three months | 13. 1 1/2 months |
| 4. one week | 9. twelve days | 14. tomorrow |
| 5. two weeks | 10. forty days | |

Drill 2 Substitution

9iid al-'aḡHa ba9d Gudwa. 'The Sacrifice Feast is after tomorrow.'

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Ramadhan Feast | 8. Revolution Day |
| 2. Christmas | 9. Christmas |
| 3. New Year's | 10. Sacrifice Feast |
| 4. Prophet's Birthday | 11. Ramadhan Feast |
| 5. May Day | 12. New Year's |
| 6. Mother's Day | 13. May Day |
| 7. Arbor Day | 14. Prophet's Birthday |

Drill 3 Repetition

kull 9aam w-ant b-xayr!
 kull 9aam w-anti b-xayr!
 kull 9aam w-antu b-xayr!
 kull 9aam w-antayn b-xayr!

Drill 4 Repetition

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. huw Salla fi l-jaami9. | 6. 'ant Sallayt fi l-jaami9. |
| 2. hiy Sallat fi l-jaami9. | 7. 'anti Sallayti fi l-jaami9. |
| 3. hum Sallu fi l-jaami9. | 8. 'antu Sallaytu fi i-jaami9. |
| 4. hin Sallayn fi l-jaami9. | 9. 'antayn Sallaytayn fi l-jaami9. |
| 5. 'ana Sallayt fi l-jaami9. | 10. 'iHna Sallayna fi l-jaami9. |

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

huw gara' gur'aan fi l-masjid. 'He read Quran in the mosque.'

- | | | |
|----------|----------|---------------|
| 1. hiy | 6. 'anti | 11. fi l-bayt |
| 2. hum | 7. huw | 12. negative |
| 3. 'iHna | 8. Salla | 13. 'antu |
| 4. 'antu | 9. 'iHna | 14. 'ana |
| 5. 'ant | 10. 'ana | 15. hum |

Drill 6 Double Substitution

huw 9ayyad 9alayna. 'He celebrated a merry feast with us.'

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. hum -- hum | 8. hum -- 'ant |
| 2. huw -- 'antu | 9. hum -- 'anti |
| 3. hiy -- hin | 10. 'anti -- hiy |
| 4. hiy -- 'antayn | 11. 'ant -- 'iHna |
| 5. 'ant -- huw | 12. 'iHna -- 'antu |
| 6. 'antu -- 'iHna | 13. hin -- 'antayn |
| 7. 'iHna -- 'antu | 14. 'antayn -- 'iHna |

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

huw zaar mHammad fi l-mustaffa.

'He visited Mohammad in the hospital.'

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. hiy | 6. 'anti | 11. 'agribaa'ana |
| 2. hum | 7. 'antu | 12. 'ummana |
| 3. hin | 8. 'iHna | 13. 'ana |
| 4. 'ana | 9. zurna | 14. negative |
| 5. 'absart | 10. gariibana | 15. 'iHna |

Drill 8 Chain -- Cued

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| T : | 'ant | 'you (m.s.)' |
| S ₁ : | 'ayn Sallayt ? | 'Where did you pray?' |
| T : | masjid | 'mosque' |
| S ₂ : | Sallayt fi l-masjid. | 'I prayed in the mosque.' |

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. 'anti -- jaami9 | 8. 9aa'ija -- masjid |
| 2. huw -- masjid | 9. Husayn -- diiwaan |
| 3. hiy -- bayt | 10. 'al-mara -- bayt |
| 4. 'antu -- madrasa | 11. 'aT-Tullaab -- jaami9 |
| 5. hum -- muntazah | 12. 'ant -- suug |
| 6. hum -- kaniisa | 13. 'antu -- daaxil |
| 7. maryam -- bayt | 14. huw -- neighborhood |

Drill 9 Transformation: singular + plural

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. kull 9aam w-ant b-xayr! | 9. 'as-sayyaara mu9aTTalu. |
| 2. Salla fi l-Hadiiga. | 10. saafart xaarij al-yaman. |
| 3. 9imil Haflat zawaaj. | 11. zaarat gariibaha. |
| 4. gad huw Tifl SaGiir. | 12. li9ibt fi l-muntazah. |
| 5. Htafal b-l-9iid ma9aana. | 13. miel haasa ma tlaagiif. |
| 6. maabis Gayr haa9a l-9iid. | 14. 'asti 'azuur gariibi. |
| 7. starat gundara. | 15. 9ayyad 9alayh. |
| 8. starayt samiiz w-bluuz. | 16. 9ayyadat 9alayha. |

Drill 10 Transformation: perfect → imperfect

- | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Htafalt b-l-9iid ? | 8. 'ana kunt mazkoom. |
| 2. /start malaabis w-'aH6i. | 9. maa kaan fii gahwa. |
| 3. Sallu fi l-masjid 'ams. | 10. HaTT al-malaabis fi l-kabat. |
| 4. 'al-'aTfaal li9bu fi l-Hadiiga. | 11. raaH la-s-suug b-r-rijl. |
| 5. huw Salla fi l-kaniis. | 12. libis gubba9a w-famiiz. |
| 6. 9ayyad 9alayna kull 9aam. | 13. nisi yiji l-yawm. |
| 7. libist malaabisi w-xarajt. | 14. maa /ribt/ biira. |

Drill 11 Translation

1. I hope you will celebrate the feast again in prosperity and happiness!
2. Are there any other holidays that you celebrate here in Yemen?
3. We would like to invite you to a birthday party next week. We hope you will be able to come.
4. He entered the building and found many people there.
5. Will you please tell me where the Post Office is?
6. Do you have a car or do you want to go on foot?
7. His car was out of order yesterday. He took it to the garage to have it checked.
8. Go (m.s.) straight to Al-Zubairi Street and then turn right at the Second Circle.
9. The Consulate is beside the Embassy. Why do you want to go there? Do you have a passport?
10. I wanted to come to celebrate the feast with you last week. I called you but you were not home.
11. The distance from here to there is very far; so, you will have to go by car.
12. Turn left at the Russian Embassy and the Post Office will be in front of you.

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. Husayn : kull 9aam w-antu b-xayr ya yuusif!
 yuusif : w-antu b-xayr. 'aLLaah y9iida 9alaykum w-9alayna b-l-xayr
 w-l-masarraat!
 Husayn : 'ays 9imilt al-yawm ?
 yuusif : 'aS-SubH Sallayt Salaat al-9iid fi l-jaami9 al-kabiir
 w-ba9da ruHt 9ayyadt 9ala 'ahli w-'aguaribi.
 Husayn : w-ba9da 'ays ti9mal ?
 yuusif : Sa-ruuH al-Hadiiga l-9aama 'ana w-'ustrati.
 Husayn : Tayyib. 'aLLaah ma9aakum!
2. faaTima : ha! 'ayy Hiin riji9ti min as-suug ?
 'aamina : gabl nuSS saa9a.
 faaTima : kayf al-'as9aar ?
 'aamina : kull say' Gaali 9ala sibb al-9iid.
 faaTima : maa starayti ?
 'aamina : ma starayts ka0iir. starayt fustaan Haggi w-malaabis
 w-ganaadir Hagg al-'awlaad w-samiiz w-Hi8a Hagg zawji.

U N I T 3 8

I. TEXT

fi maktab al-bariid

- muTahhar : 'aṣṭi 'arsil haaḡi r-risaala la-'amriika.
'al-muwaḡḡaf : tiṣṭiḡa 9aadiyya 'aw musajjala ?
muTahhar : jawwiyya law samaHt.
'al-muwaḡḡaf : Tayyib. haaḡa Taabi9 b-'arba9a ryaal.
muTahhar : tafaḡḡal! 9indi Tard w-Sanduug SaGiir 'aṣṭi 'arsilhum
la-s-su9uudiyya.
'al-muwaḡḡaf : ruH aT-TarHa 9-9aaniya! maktab aT-Turuud hownaak.
- muTahhar : 'aṣṭi 'arsil haaḡa T-Tard w-S-Sanduug la-s-su9uudiyya.
'al-muwaḡḡaf : ma fii daaxilhum ?
muTahhar : 'aT-Tarad fii kutub w-'awraag,.... w-S-Sanduug fii
9iyaab w-malaabis aTfaal,....
'al-muwaḡḡaf : 9aadi 'aw jawwi ?
muTahhar : 9aadi bass musajjal. 'uuzinhum law samaHt!
'al-muwaḡḡaf : HuTTahum 9ala l-miizaan! 'i9nayn kiiloGraam
w-xamsiin Graam. ykallifuuk xamsa w-sittiin ryaal.
muTahhar : 'al-waSl law samaHt!
'al-muwaḡḡaf : tafaḡḡal!
muTahhar : baarak aLLa fiik!

II. TRANSLATION

At the Post Office

- Mutahhar : I want to send this letter to America.
Employee : Do you want it ordinary or registered (mail)?
Mutahhar : Airmail, if you please.
Employee : O.K. This is a four-riyaal stamp.
Mutahhar : Here! I have a parcel and a small box which I want to send
to Saudi Arabia.

- Employee : Go to the Second Floor! The parcel office is over there.
- Mutahhar : I want to send this parcel and this box to Saudi Arabia.
- Employee : What is inside them?
- Mutahhar : There are books, papers,... etc. in the parcel. There are clothes and children's clothes in the box.
- Employee : Ordinary or airmail?
- Mutahhar : Ordinary but registered (mail). Weigh them, please!
- Employee : Put them on the scales! Two kilograms and fifty grams. They cost you sixty-five riyals.
- Mutahhar : The receipt, please!
- Employee : Here!
- Mutahhar : God bless you!

III. VOCABULARY

'arsal	(yirsil) to send
risaala	(rasaa'il) letter. syn. <u>maktuub</u> p. <u>makaatiib</u>
musajjal	(-iin) registered, certified
jawwi	(-yyiin) adj. air; airmail
:aabi9	(Tawaabi9) postage stamp
Tard	(Turuud) parcel, package
Sanduug	(Sanaadiig) box, crate; trunk
maktab aT-Turuud	the parcel (post) office
θiyaab	clothes. syn. <u>malaabis</u>
wazan	(yuuzin) to weigh
kiiloGraam	(-aat) kilogram
Graam	(-aat) gram
kallaf	(ykallif) to cost
waSl	(wuSuul) receipt
baarak	(ybaarik) to bless s.o.

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

wuSul	(yiwSal) to arrive in a place
saal	(yfiil) to carry; to lift
fall	(yfiil) to carry; to lift; to steal
b-l-baHr	adv. by sea
Sanduug bariid	(Sanaadiig _____) mail box
9inwaan	(9anaawiin) address
mursil	(-iin) sender
bargiyya	(-aat) telegram, cable. var. <u>bargiya</u>
xafiif	(xifaaf) light, not heavy
oagiil	(-iin) heavy
sajjal	(ysajjil) to register; to record
saag	(ysuug) to drive, e.g., a car

V. GRAMMAR

Perfect Tense

1. wazan 'to weigh', imperf. yuuzin, is a regular perfect-tense verb. The imperfect-tense is also regular, except for the first person masculine singular form; it is 'awzin 'I weigh'.
2. wuSul 'to arrive', imperf. yiwSal; the first person masculine singular form is 'awSal.
3. saal 'to carry; to lift' has two perfect stems: saal- and fiil-, like saar 'to go; to walk'. It is conjugated like saar.
4. fall 'to carry; to lift; to steal; is conjugated like tamm 'to complete, finish' (UNIT 32).
5. saag 'to drive', like kaan 'to be' has two perfect stems, i.e., saag- and sug-; it is conjugated like kaan, 'to be'.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

'a'sti 'arsil haaḍi r-risaala la-'ingiltara.

'I would like to send this letter to England.'

- | | | |
|-----------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. London | 6. Bahrain | 11. Amran |
| 2. America | 7. Ibb | 12. Hajja |
| 3. Kuwait | 8. Jordan | 13. Tunisia |
| 4. Saudi Arabia | 9. Hudaida | 14. U.A.E. |
| 5. Syria | 10. Iraq | 15. QaTar |

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'a'sti 'arsil haaḍi r-risaala la-'ingiltara.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. Tard | 6. Tard | 11. 'ant ? |
| 2. bargiyya | 7. 'iHna | 12. 'anti ? |
| 3. huw | 8. hum | 13. Sanduug |
| 4. hiy | 9. 'ana | 14. 'antu |
| 5. gaTar | 10. 9ali | 15. hin |

Drill 3 Chain -- Cued

T : regular -- air

S₁ : ti'stiiha 9aadiyya 'aw musajjala ?

'Do you want it (f.s.) regular or airmail?'

S₂ : 9aadiyya law samaHt! 'Regular, please!'

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. regular -- registered | 8. new -- old |
| 2. air -- by sea | 9. black -- white |
| 3. by sea -- air | 10. long -- short |
| 4. heavy -- light | 11. now -- later |
| 5. big -- small | 12. hot -- cold |

6. expensive -- cheap

13. German -- American

7. fried -- baked

14. here -- there

Drill 4 Variable Substitution

'addii-li Tabi9 b-ryaalayn! 'Give (m.s.) me a two-riyal stamp!'

1. 5 riyals

6. 20 fils

11. 1 1/2 riyals

2. 2 dinars

7. give them

12. give me

3. give us

8. 1/4 dinar

13. \$.50

4. 10 riyals

9. 1/2 dinar

14. 5 cents

5. give her

10. 1 riyal

15. \$3.50

Drill 5 Variable Substitution

'asti 'arsila jawwi. 'I want to send it airmail.'

1. regular

6. huw

11. 'antu ?

2. registered

7. 'ant ?

12. 'antayn ?

3. huw

8. airmail

13. airmail

4. 'iHna

9. 'anti ?

14. hum

5. by sea

10. regular

15. 'iHna

Drill 6 Repetition

1. HuTTaha 9ala l-miizaan!

'Put (m.s.) it (f.s.) on the scales!'

2. HuTTa 9ala l-miizaan!

'Put (f.s.) it (m.) on the scales!'

3. HuTTahum 9ala l-miizaan!

'Put (m.s.) them on the scales!'

4. HuTTiha 9ala l-miizaan!

'Put (f.s.) it (f.) on the scales!'

5. HuTTii 9ala l-miizaan!

'Put (f.s.) it (m.) on the scales!'

6. HuTTiihum 9ala l-miizaan!

'Put (f.s.) them on the scales!'

7. HuTTuuha 9ala l-miizaan!

'Put (m.p.) it (f.) on the scales!'

8. HuTTuu 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (m.p.) it (m.) on the scales!'
 9. HuTTuuhum 9ala l-miizaan! 'Put (m.p.) them on the scales!'

Drill 7 Substitution

- a. T : 2.50 kgm.
 S : kiilowayn w-xamsmiyat Graam.
 'Two kilos and 500 grams.'

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. 1 1/2 kgm. | 6. 2.350 kgm. | 11. 4.820 kgm. |
| 2. 2 kgm. | 7. 2.050 kgm. | 12. 12.580 kgm. |
| 3. 5 kgm. | 8. 2.700 kgm. | 13. 15.240 kgm. |
| 4. 1 1/4 kgm. | 9. 3.620 kgm. | 14. 14.860 kgm. |
| 5. 1.300 kgm. | 10. 3.100 kgm. | 15. 1/3 kgm. |

- b. ykallifak xamsa w-9i/riin ryaal.
 'It (m.s.) costs you (m.s.) YR. 25.'

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. 2 dinars | 6. \$1 1/2 | 11. \$2,500 |
| 2. 45 riyals | 7. 3 1/2 dinars | 12. 150 fils |
| 3. 1 1/2 dinar | 8. 1/3 dinar | 13. 200 fils |
| 4. \$2.00 | 9. 153 riyals | 14. 2 1/2 riyals |
| 5. \$5.00 | 10. \$1,000 | 15. 75 riyals |

Drill 8 Question--Answer

- S₁ : f-ayy Hiin yiwSal ? 'When does he (it) arrive?'
 S₂ : n/aaLLa ba9d fahrayn 'aw 0alaa 0a.
 'Hopefully in two or three months.'

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. one or two days | 8. three or four months |
| 2. one or two hours | 9. five or six days |
| 3. one or two weeks | 10. one or two weeks |
| 4. one or two months | 11. seven or eight months |
| 5. six or seven days | 12. nine or ten days |

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 6. three or four hours | 13. five or six minutes |
| 7. two or three minutes | 14. 1/4 or 1/3 hour |

Drill 9 Variable Substitution

ruH aT-Taaga 0-0aaniya! 'Go (m.s.) to the second window!'

- | | | |
|---------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. 3rd | 6. 2nd | 11. 3rd |
| 2. 4th | 7. 'antu | 12. 'anti |
| 3. 1st | 8. 'anti | 13. 'aT-Taaga |
| 4. 6th | 9. 'aT-TarHa | 14. 'antu |
| 5. 'ant | 10. 'ant | 15. 'antayn |

Drill 10 Transformation

kaan yisti yirsila musajjal. + gad 'arsala musajjal.

'He wanted to send it registered.' + 'He did send it registered.'

1. huw kaani yisti yiwSal al-yawm.
2. huw kaani yisti yriil aS-Sanduug.
3. huw kaani yriil al-fuluus.
4. hiy kaanat tisti tsajjil 'ismaha.
5. 'ant kunt tisti tsuug as-sayyaara.
6. huw kaan yisti ysuug as-sayyaara.
7. huw kaan yisti yiHtafil b-l-9iid Gudwa.
8. kaanu yistu yi9malu Haflat Gadaa'.
9. kaan yisti yilbis banTaloona w-ramiiz.
10. kaanu yistu yruuHu b-r-rijl.
11. kaanu yistu yiju w-ysallimu 9alaykum.
12. 'antu kuntu tistu ta9rifu l-9inwaan ?
13. 'anti kunti tisti tsaafiri waHdir ?
14. hum kaanu yistu yirsilu Tard la-'amriika.
15. huw kaan yisti yuktub risaala la-l-mudair.

Drill 11 Transformation: masculine + feminine

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. huw 'arsal risaala. | 8. huw saag as-sayyaara. |
| 2. hum Sallu fi-l-bayt. | 9. sajjal 'ibna fi l-madrasa. |
| 3. huw zaar 'agribaa'. | 10. wuSul aS-SubH. |
| 4. maabis rijaal haana. | 11. nisi yistari TamaaTiis. |
| 5. al-9aam al-maaḡi. | 12. yisti ysiir la-s-suug. |
| 6. jaa' w-sallam 9alayna. | 13. huw mursil al-bargiyya. |
| 7. Htafal b-l-9iid ma9aana. | 14. man al-mursil ? |

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. xayriya : 'asti 'arsil haaḡa T-Tard la-'amriika.
 'al-muwaḡḡaf : jawwi 'aw b-l-baHr ?
 xayriya : jawwi.
 'al-muwaḡḡaf : musajjal 'aw 9aadi ?
 xayriya : musajjal law samaHt.
 'al-muwaḡḡaf : man al-mursil ?
 xayriya : 'ana xayriya bint 9abd al-gaadir.
 'al-muwaḡḡaf : 'al-9inwaan ?
 xayriya : Sanduug bariid 'arba9a-waaHid-xamsa-ḡalaaḡa.
2. mHammad : fii film naahi fi siinama 'l-Hamraa'. tifti truuH ma9i
 Gudwa ya faxri ?
 faxri : sayyaarati mu9aTTala. ma 'agdarf 'aruuh.
 mHammad : lilma ? maa laha ?
 faxri : 'al-mawtar ma yistaGils. fa-xuḡha la-l-garaaj ba9d
 aḡ-ḡuhr.
 mHammad : fa-ji 'aaxuḡak b-sayyaarati.
 faxri : maafi. sukran. 'ana maḡGuul kaiir Gudwa.
 mHammad : 'ant maḡGuul yawmiya!

UNIT 39

I. TEXT

fi l-Cassaala

- yaHya : haaɣawlaa' ɔiyaabi. 'astiik tiGsilhum w-tkawwihum law samaHt.
- fahmi : Haaɣir. 'iftaH al-kiis w-xalliini 'asajjilhum!
(yaHya yiftaH al-kiis.) 9iddahum w-'ana 'asajjilhum.
- yaHya : haaɣawlaa' ɔalaaɛat sumzaan w-banTɛloonayn w-'arba9at faaniilaat w-ɔalaaɛat saraabaat w-fuuTatayn.
- fahmi : tiftiini 'aSabbinhum w-'akawwihum kamaan ?
- yaHya : 'ii na9am. ɣaruuri. f-ayy Hiin 'ajii-lhum ? mata 'aji 'aaxuɣhum ?
- fahmi : raa9i swayya!... ta9aal ba9d Gudwa yawm ar-rabuu9! naahi ?
- yaHya : naahi gawi. xaaTirkum!
- fahmi : ma9 as-salaama!

II. TRANSLATION

At the Laundry

- Yahia: These are my clothes. I want you to wash them and iron them, if you please.
- Fahmi : At your service! Open the bag and let me record them.
(Yahia opens the bag.) Count them and let me record them.
- Yahia: There are three shirts, two pants, four T-shirts, three pairs of socks, and two skirts.
- Fahmi : Do you want me to wash them (with soap) and iron them too?
- Yahia: Yes, indeed. It's necessary. When shall I come for them?
When shall I come to take them?
- Fahmi : Wait a minute!... Come after tomorrow, Wednesday? Is it all right?
- Yahia: Very good! Goodbye!
- Fahmi : Goodbye.

III. VOCABULARY

Gassaala	(-aat) laundry, laundromat
Gasal	(yiGsil) to wash
kawwa	(ykawwi) to iron
fataH	(yiftaH) to open
kiis	('akyaas) bag; bundle, packet
xalla	(yxalli) to let s.o. do s.th.; to make s.o. do s.th.
9add	(y9idd) to count, enumerate
faraab	(-aat) pair of socks
fuuTa	(fuwaT) men's skirt
Sabban	(ySabbin) to wash with soap
kamaan	also, too
jaa' l-	(yiji) to come for s.o. or s.th.
mata	interrog. part. when. syn. <u>f-a,y Hiin</u>
raa9a (l-)	(yraa9i) to wait (for), await s.o. or s.th.

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

manfafa	(manaafif) towel
millaaya	(-aat) bed sheet
TarHa	(TuraH) bedspread
baTTaaniya	(-aat) blanket
Saabuun	coll. soap. s. <u>Saabuuna</u>
faraab nisaa'i	(-aat nisaa'iyya) pair of stockings
kaawiya	(-aat) an iron
maknis	makaanis) broom
naṣṣaf	(ynaṣṣif) to clean
kannas	(ykannis) to sweep (with a broom)
xalas	(yaxlis) to undress, take off one's clothes
taHamman	(yithamman) to take a bath, bathe

V. GRAMMAR

1. kawwa 'to iron' and xalla 'to let s.o. do s.th.; to make s.o. do s.th.' are conjugated like Hayya (UNIT 32).
2. The verb 9add 'to count' is conjugated like tamm (UNIT 32).
3. The verb raa9a (1-) 'to wait (for), await s.o. or s.th.' is defective because of final -a. It is conjugated like tamm also. Note that the medial -aa- does not change.

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

'afti aGsil θiyaabi. 'I want to wash my clothes.'

- | | |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. my socks | 8. my overcoats |
| 2. four pairs of socks | 9. their dresses and blouses |
| 3. the bed sheet | 10. their undershirts |
| 4. two bedspreads | 11. our clothes |
| 5. three blankets | 12. three shirts |
| 6. my pants and shirts | 13. two pants |
| 7. my towels | 14. a head dress |

Drill 2 Variable Substitution

'afti 'aGsil w-'akawwi l-malaabis.

'I want to wash and iron the clothes.'

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. 'af-samiiz | 6. 'al-bluz | 11. hin |
| 2. 'af-saraab | 7. 'aθ-θiyaab | 12. 'art ? |
| 3. huw | 8. hum | 13. 'anti ? |
| 4. 'al-banTaloön | 9. 'iHna | 14. 'antu ? |
| 5. hiy | 10. 'al-fuwaT | 15. 'ana |

Drill 3 Conjugation

Gasal w-kawwa l-malaabis. 'He washed and ironed the clothes.'

- | | | |
|----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. hiy | 5. 'anti | 9. huw |
| 2. hum | 6. hin | 10. 'antu |
| 3. 'iHna | 7. 'antayn | 11. hiy |
| 4. 'ant | 8. 'ana | 12. 'ana |

Drill 4 Question -- Answer

A. T : 9idd al-fuluus w-sajjilhum! 'Count (m.s.) the money and record it!'

S : 9addayt al-fuluus w-sajjaltahum. 'I counted the money and recorded it.'

1. 9iddi l-fuluus w-sajjiliihum!
2. 9iddu l-fuluus w-sajjiluuhum!
3. 9iddayn al-fuluus w-sajjilaynahum!
4. 9idd al-fuluus w-sajjilhum!

B. T : la t9id al-fuluus! 'Do not count (m.s.) the money!'

S : ma 9addayt al-fuluus. 'I did not count the money.'

- | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. laa t9iddi l-fuluus! | 3. laa t9iddayn al-fuluus! |
| 2. laa t9iddu l-fuluus! | 4. laa t9idd al-fuluus! |

Drill 5 Substitution

xalliini 'a9idd al-fuluus! 'Let me count the money!'

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. count the socks | 8. wash the blanket |
| 2. count the books | 9. wait for the minister |
| 3. open the door | 10. come for them tomorrow |
| 4. wash the clothes | 11. clean the car |

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 5. iron the socks | 12. sweep the house |
| 6. record the books | 13. take off my clothes |
| 7. register the students | 14. take a bath |

Drill 6 Double Substitution

f-ayy Hiin 'ajii-lhum? 'When do I come for them?

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. 'ana -- you (m.s.) | 8. 'anti -- her |
| 2. 'ana -- you (m.p.) | 9. 'anti -- them (f.) |
| 3. huw -- us | 10. hin -- us |
| 4. huw -- her | 11. hin -- you (f.s.) |
| 5. hum -- you (f.s.) | 12. 'antu -- us |
| 6. hum -- us | 13. 'antayn -- us |
| 7. 'ant -- them (m.) | 14. 'iHna -- you (m.p.) |

Drill 7 Variable Substitution

'iftaH al-kiis! 'Open (m.s.) the bag!'

- | | | |
|---------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. 'anti | 6. the window | 11. the letter |
| 2. 'antu | 7. perfect | 12. 'ant |
| 3. the parcel | 8. the box | 13. neg. command |
| 4. 'ant | 9. 'iHna | 14. the window |
| 5. the door | 10. imperative | 15. the telegram |

Drill 8 Substitution

ta9aal yawm ar-rabuu9! 'Come (m.s.) on Wednesday.'

- | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|------------------|
| 1. Thursday | 6. today | 11. in two days |
| 2. Sunday | 7. at 10:30 | 12. in two hours |
| 3. Friday | 8. at 2:40 | 13. Wednesday |
| 4. tomorrow | 9. Monday | 14. Saturday |
| 5. after tomorrow | 10. Tuesday | 15. at 12:15 |

Drill 9 Transformation: masculine + feminine

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. 'arsal aT-Tard b-l-baHr. | 8. Jtara ganaadir w-Sanaadil. |
| 2. sajjal ar-risaala. | 9. Htafalu b-l-9idd. |
| 3. 9addu al-fuluus. | 10. Salla fi l-bayt. |
| 4. Jill aS-Sanduug! | 11. nisi yGallig al-baab. |
| 5. baarak aLLa fiik! | 12. maa lak ? mariiḡ ? |
| 6. wuSul 'ams aS-SubH. | 13. wazan af-Jimiit. |
| 7. ma yigdar ysuug. | 14. Jtaru Tawaabi9. |

Drill 10 Translation

1. He went to the Post Office on foot and sent an airmail letter.
2. The car was expensive. It cost me \$12,000.
3. What is your address? Do you have a mail box?
4. This telegram arrived yesterday. Take it and open it!
5. I opened it, read it, and sent an answer.
6. Was it heavy or light? Did you register it?
7. Today is a holiday. It is the Ramadhan Feast. The Sacrifice Feast will be in seventy days.
8. Christmas and New Year's are holidays; we celebrate them every year.
9. There are other holidays, such as Mother's Day, May Day, Arbor Day, Revolution Day, and the Prophet's Birthday.
10. People visit their relatives and go to parks and public gardens.

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. mHammad : f-ayy Hiin yiftaH as-suug fi ramaḡaan ?
 'ismaa9iil : yiftaH aS-SubH tagriib saa9at tisi9 'aw 9aJir.
 mHammad : w-mata yGallig ?
 'ismaa9iil : yGallig ba9d aḡ-ḡuhr tagriib as-saa9a xams.
 mHammad : yiftaH fi l-layl ?
 'ismaa9iil : 'ii na9am yiftaH min saa9at tagriib ḡamaan 'ila saa9at
 9aJir 'aw 'akḡar.

mHammad : mata yurgudu n-naas fi ramaḡaan ?
 'ismaa9iil : ba9d Salaat aḡ-ḡuhr.

2. 9abdu : fii Gassaala haana fi San9a ?

'aḡ-surTi : 'aywa fii.

9abdu : mumkin tgull-li 'ayn hiy ?

'aḡ-surTi : sir saani fi haaḡa ḡ-saari9 Hawaali ḡamaaniin mitr
 w-ba9ḡa liḡḡ yamiin. 'imḡsi saani la-9ind ad-daa'ira
 l-'awwala w-hownaak liḡḡ 9ala l-yasaar. 'imḡsi tagriib
 9iḡriin mitr tlaagi binaaya kabiira 9ala yaddak
 al-yamiin. haaḡi l-binaaya maktab al-bariid.
 'al-Gassaala b-jambaha.

9abdu : ḡukran! xaaTrak!

'aḡ-surTi : ma9 as-salaama.

9abdu : sallamak aLLaah.

UNIT 40

I. TEXT

'ameaal w-'agwaal

1. laa traajim an-naas w-baytak min zujaaj!
2. ma fi l-mudun Gayr San9a w-fi l-bawaadi ruSaaba.
3. bidaayat al-miil xaTwa.
4. 'ana 'amiir w-ant 'amiir; man yasuug al-Hamiir ?
5. 'al-yahwada fi l-guluub ma hiy b-Tuul az-zanaanfir.
6. 'al-jaar gabl ad-daar.
7. laa yinfa9ak ma ma9 'axuuk wala siraaja y9ii'-lak.
8. 'i9a ka9urat al-'adyaak taxarrab al-layl.
9. 'az-zalaT txarrij al-jinn mrabbaTTiin.
10. 'ibn 'arba9iin nahaar ma yi9wir 9ayna.
11. laa titzawwaj w-9aad garguuf 'ummak fi T-Taaga.
12. man taGadda b-ki9ba ma ta9a9fa b-ha.
13. 'as-sirr mi9l al-Hamaami laa falat min yaddi Taar.
14. 'al-Hajj aHmad 'aw 'aHmad al-Hajj.
15. 'aS-Sadiig wagt a9-9iig.
16. jaarak al-gariib wala 'axuuk al-ba9iid.

II. TRANSLATION

Note: An equivalent or a similar proverb, saying, or proverbial phrase is given in English, followed by a literal translation of the Sanaani proverb or saying between quotes.

1. Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones.
"Do not throw rocks at people if your house is made of glass."
2. Sanaa is the best of cities and Rusaba is the best of farm lands.
"There is no (other) city except Sanaa, and there is no (other) farm land except Rusaba."
3. The first step is always the hardest. "The beginning of a mile is a step."

4. Each one has their own responsibility. "If I am a prince and you are a prince, who is going to drive the donkeys?"
5. Fair without and foul within. Beauty is only skin-deep. "Piety is in the heart; it is not (measured) by the length of side curls."
6. A man is known by the company he keeps. "(Inquire about) the neighbor before (inquiring about) the house!"
7. Depend on yourself! "What your brother has is of no avail to you; neither will his lantern give you light."
8. Too many cooks spoil the broth. "If there are too many roosters, the night will be spoiled."
9. Money talks. "Money drives away jinnis in shackels."
10. No one does harm to oneself. "A forty-day old will not blind himself in the eye."
11. Haste makes waste. "Do not get married and your mother's cap is still in the window!" garguu is a cap that covers the whole head except for the eyes and the mouth; it is worn by children in winter. If your mother's garguu is still in the window, your mother is still very young.
12. The truth will out. "He who has a lie for lunch, will not have it for dinner."
13. Keep the secret! Do not reveal it! "Secret is like a pigeon which, if released, will fly away."
14. Half a hundred is fifty. It's the same. "Pilgrim Ahmad or Ahmad, the Pilgrim."
15. A friend in need is the friend indeed. A friend is proved in distress. "A friend is for difficult times."
16. Out of sight out of mind. "Your close neighbor and not your distant brother."

III. VOCABULARY

maḡal	('amḡaal) proverb
gawl	('agwaa1) saying
raajam	(yraajim) to stone, throw rocks at s.o.
baadiya	(bawaadi) farm land; plantation

ruSaaba	Rusaba, village near Dhamar
bidaaya	v.n. beginning, start
miil	('amyaal) mile
xaTwa	(-aat) step, stride; pace
'amiir	('umaraa') Emir, prince
Himaar	(Hamiir) donkey, ass
'al-yahwada	v.n. belief in Judaism; piety, religiousness
zinaar	(zanaaniir) side curl
jaar	(jiiraan) neighbor
wala	conj. nor
nafa9	(yinfra9) to benefit s.o.
ḡaa' (1-)	(yiḡii') to light, illumine (s.th. or s.o.)
kaəur	(yukəur) to be abundant, abound
diik	('adyaak) rooster
taxarrab	(yitxarrab) to be or become ruined, spoiled
zalaT	money. syn. <u>fuluus</u>
xarraj	(yxarrij) to send out, move out; to expel
jinn	coll. jinn, demons. s. <u>jinni</u> . f. <u>jinniyya</u>
mrabbaT	(-iin) tied up, bound, shackled
9awar	(yi9wir) to make s.o. blind in one eye
9ayn	(9uyuun) eye
garguus	(garaagiis) cap worn by children in winter
kiḡba	(-aat) n. of instance, a lie
sirr	('asraar) secret; v.n. secrecy
Hamaam	coll. pigeons; doves. s. <u>Hammami</u>
laa	conj. if. syn. <u>'iḡa</u>
falat	(yiflit) to escape, get away
Taar	(yTiir) intra. to fly, fly away
Hajj	(Hujjaaj) pilgrim; title of respect
wagt	('awgaat) period of time, time
ḡiig	v.n. distress, hardship

IV. ADDITIONAL VOCABULARY

nihaaya	v.n. end; finis, conclusion
fi n-nihaaya	adv. at the end
fi l-bidaaya	adv. at the beinning
HiSaana	('aHSuna) horse. f. <u>faras</u>
kalb	(kilaab) dog
dimm	(dimam) cat
Tayr	(Tuyuur) bird
la ... wala	conj. neither ... nor. syn. <u>maaf w-maaf</u>

V. GRAMMAR

1. Conditionals

A conditional sentence in SA is one which has an if-clause and a result or main clause. The if-clause is introduced by 'iḡa or laa. An if-clause introduced by 'iḡa expresses an open or a possible condition. The verb can be either perfect or imperfect in the if-clause, depending upon the meaning; in the main clause it can be perfect, imperfect or imperative:

<u>'iḡa</u> 'absarta gult-la.	'If I see him, I will tell him.'
<u>'iḡa</u> 'absarta 'aguula-la.	'If I see him, I will tell him.'
<u>'iḡa</u> 'absarta guul-la.	'If you see him, tell him.'
laa falat min yaaddi Taar.	'If it is released from my hand, it will fly away.'
laa yaflit min yaddi yaTiir.	'If it is released from my hand it will fly away.'

Unlikely Conditionals

The clause introduced by laa usually expresses a condition which is unlikely or unreal. The verb in the laa-clause is either perfect or imperfect, depending upon the meaning; in the main clause it is either perfect or imperfect, depending upon the meaning; in the main clause it is either perfect or imperfect:

laa lufta gult-la. 'If I saw him, I would tell him.'

laa 'a lufta 'aguula-la. 'If I saw him, I would tell him.'

Unreal Conditionals

The verb in the if-clause in unreal conditions is introduced by laa or law followed by a perfect-tense verb; the verb in the main clause is made up of kaan (invariable) and a verb in the perfect tense:

laa 'absarta kaan gult-la. 'If I had seen him, I would have told him.'

2. Perfect Tense

The verbs taGadda 'to have lunch' and ta9aſſa 'to have dinner' are weak verbs and are conjugated like Hayya 'to welcome, greet s.o.' and 'adda 'to give' (UNIT 32):

huw taGadda	hin _____ ayn	'anti _____ ayti
hum _____ u	'ant _____ ayt	'antayn _____ aytayn
hiy _____ at	'antu _____ aytu	'ana _____ ayt
	'iHna _____ ayna	

3. Relative Clauses

In SA 'allaḍi, var. 'ali, 'alli, introduces a relative clause which modifies a definite noun. 'allaḍi is more commonly used.

Examples:

'al-binaaya llaḍi 9ala l-yamiin 'the building (which is) on the right'

'aT-Tayr allaḍi Taar 'the bird which has flown'

'aT-Tuyuur allaḍi Taaru 'the birds which have flown'

'al-banaat allaḍi jaa'ayn 'the girls who came'

If the noun modified by the relative clause is indefinite, the relative 'allaḍi is not used:

'absart Tayr Taar. 'I saw a bird that flew.'

haaḍa Hajj yuskun ma9aana. 'This is a pilgrim who lives with us.'

VI. DRILLS

Drill 1 Substitution

9indana Hamaam. 'We have pigeons.'

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. rooster | 5. two cats | 9. birds |
| 2. chickens | 6. dog | 10. donkeys |
| 3. herse | 7. neighbors | 11. dogs |
| 4. donkey | 8. money | 12. pigeons |

Drill 2 Transformation: singular → plural

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. ʃtara HiSaar. | 9. libsāt garguuʃaha |
| 2. 'al-Hamaami Taar. | 10. falat al-HiSaan. |
| 3. 'aT-Tayyaara Tearat. | 11. falat al-Hamaami. |
| 4. 9inda kalb w-dimm. | 12. tazawwaj fi wagt aḡ-ḡliḡ. |
| 5. saag al-Hamiir. | 13. xarrajni min al-bayt. |
| 6. sugt as-sayyaara. | 14. ma yinfa9akʃ ma ma9 'axuuk. |
| 7. 'al-jaar gabl ad-daar. | 15. 'al-garguuʃ fi T-Taaga. |
| 8. taxarrab at-talafoon. | 16. taGadda dajaaj w-ta9aʃʃa Huut. |

Drill 3 Variable Substitution

huw 'absar ai-kalb. 'He saw the dog.'

- | | | |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. 'iHna | 7. 'al-'amiir | 13. 'ad-dimam |
| 2. 'al-kilaab | 8. 'al-'umaraa' | 14. 'al-kilaab |
| 3. 'ad-dimm | 9. huw | 15. 'antayn |
| 4. 'al-HiSaan | 10. hir | 16. 'al-'aHSuna |
| 5. hum | 11. 'antu | 17. hum |
| 6. hiy | 12. 'ana | 18. 'al-Hamiir |

Drill 4 Transformation: imperative → negative command

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. sug as-sayyaara! | 9. xalliha tiji waHdaha! |
| 2. xarrihum min al-bayt! | 10. 9idd al-fuluus! |
| 3. tazawwaji 'ibn 9ammis! | 11. taHammam ba9 al-'akl! |
| 4. taGadda ma9aarum! | 12. 'ixlis 9iyaabak! |
| 5. ta9assa fi l-maT9am! | 13. 'ilbisi banTaloon w-famiiz! |
| 6. 'iGsii a9-9iyaab! | 14. 'arsil haa9i r-risaala! |
| 7. kawwi s-famiiz! | 15. silli s-simiit! |
| 8. 'iftaH al-baab! | 16. 'uuzin aT-Tard! |

Drill 5 Double Substitution

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I -- his sister | 8. you (m.p.) -- those girls |
| 2. she -- her cousin | 9. you (f.) -- his brother |
| 3. you (m.s.) -- your friend | 10. they (m.) -- our daughters |
| 4. they (m.) -- their cousins | 11. he -- my daughter |
| 5. he -- his friend | 12. you (m.s.) -- my niece |
| 6. they (f.) their cousins | 13. you (f.s.) -- my nephew |
| 7. I -- her sister | 14. we -- your nieces |

Drill 6 Completion

'i9a 'absarta

'If I, you (m.s.) see him,

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. I will tell him | 9. show him the letter |
| 2. I will tell you (f.s.) | 10. take the money from him |
| 3. greet him | 11. don't forget to tell him |
| 4. give him the letter | 12. shake hands with him |
| 5. I will ask him | 13. I will return with him |
| 6. send him my regards | 14. I will give him money |
| 7. talk to him | 15. stay with him |
| 8. walk with him | 16. invite him to dinner |

Drill 7 Completion

law 'asbarta kaan 'If I had seen him, I would have'

Use substitutions from Drill 6 above.

Drill 8 Combination

haaḍa Tayr. 'aT-Tayr Taar. → haaḍa T-Tayr allaḍi Taar.
'This is a bird. The bird flew away. →
This is the bird that flew away.'

haaḍi sayyaara. 'as-sayyaara ma9 'axi. →
haaḍi s-sayyaara llaḍi ma9 'axi.
'This is a car. The car is with my brother. →
This is the car which is with my brother.'

1. haaḍa faari9. 'af-faari9 9ala l-yamiin.
2. haaḍi binaaya. 'al-binaaya 9ala l-yasaar.
3. haaḍa maktab. 'al-maktab 9ala T-TarHa θ-θaaniya.
4. haaḍi mara. 'al-mara jaa'at 'ams.
5. haaḍi Taaliba. 'aT-Taaliba sa'alat su'aal.
6. haaḍa mudir. 'al-mudir yisaa9id kull waaHid.
7. haaḍi sikirteera. 'as-sikirteera ti9mal fi l-bank.
8. haaḍawla 'awlaad. 'al-'awlaad daxalu l-madrasa.
9. haaḍawla banaat. 'al-banaat yudrusayn fi l-jaami9a.
10. haaḍa muwaḍḍaf. 'al-muwaḍḍaf gaddam Talab 'ijaaza.
11. haaḍawla 'awlaad. 'al-'awlaad raajamu n-naas.
12. haaḍa 'amfir. 'al-'amiir 'adda lana fuluus.
13. haaḍa dimm. 'ad-dimm 'akal al-laHm.
14. haaḍi mu9allima. 'al-mu9allima HaSalat 9ala munHa.

Drill 9 Combination

haaḍa l-fundug allasi fi San9a. → haaḍa fundug fi San9a.

'This is the hotel which is in Sanaa. → This is a hotel in Sanaa.'

Use examples from Drill 8 above.

Drill 10 Translation

1. There are proverbs and sayings in every language.
2. Rawda is a city which is not very far from Sanaa.
3. This is our neighbor who works for the Ministry of Communications.
4. The students who travelled to America returned last week.
5. You can read this book from start to finish in three hours.
6. There is no one who can help you in times of distress except your folks.
7. He lives alone. He cooks his food, does the dishes, cleans his apartment, washes and irons his clothes.
8. I want you to go to the market and buy soap, a broom and an iron.
9. He always takes a bath before he goes to work. There are some people who bathe only once every week.
10. We want someone who can drive a bus every day from Sanaa to Hajja.
11. If you are in a hurry, take a taxi.
12. If I see him, I will ask him about the money.
13. If I had seen him, I would have told him.
14. If he studied hard, he would graduate this year.

VII. CONVERSATIONS

1. 9ali : ta9rif 'amḥaal w-'agwaal b-l-9arabi ya Jim ?
 Jim : 'a9rif galiil, maaf kaḥiir.
 9ali : 'ayf ta9rif.
 Jim : laa traajim an-naas w-baytak min zujaaj.
 9ali : 'aa waLLa haaḍa maḥal naahi. 9indakum maḥal miḥl haaḍa
 b-l-'ingiliizi ?

Jim : na9am. nguul: "Those who live in glass houses should not throw stones."

9ali : naahi. 'ayf ta9rif kamaan ?

Jim : bidaayat al-miil xaTwa.

9ali : tamaam! haaɗa miθlima tguulu b-l'ingiliizi "The first step is always the hardest."

Jim : maa*f* miya fi l-miya ("one hundred percent"). haaɗa huw al-ma9na ("meaning").

2. Jim : ya 9ali! fii maθal b-l-'ingiliizi yguul : "Fair without and foul within". 9indakum fay' miθl haaɗa b-l-9arabi ?

9a'i : ma 'a9rif*f*. 'iSbir! dagaiga! nisiit.

Jim : nguul kamaan : "Beauty is only skin-deep."

9ali : 'aa! ɗalHiin 9irift. nguul : "'al-yahwada fi l-guluub ma hiy b-Tuul az-zanaaniir."

Jim : ya9ni "Belief in Judaism is in the heart, not by the length of side curls. tamaam! Tab9an.

G L O S S A R Y

The vocabulary items in the Yemeni Arabic-English glossary are arranged alphabetically, according to the letters and special symbols used in the text: ' b d f g G h H j k l L m n q r s S / t T w x y z 0 δ ð 9 . Nouns and adjectives are entered in the masculine singular form in parentheses in the meaning section. Feminine color adjectives are also included with their plural parenthesized and the masculine singular form in the meaning section. Verbs are entered in their third person masculine singular form of the perfect tense, followed by the imperfect tense in parentheses in the meaning part.

In the English-Yemeni Arabic glossary the equivalent of an English word is given followed by the plural. Verbs are entered in the infinitive - without "to" form followed by the perfect and the imperfect tenses in the meaning section. Items in parentheses are explanatory.

YEMENI ARABIC-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

- 'ab/'abu- ('aabaa') father
 'absar (yibsir) to see, watch
 'abu ṣabi Abu Dhabi
 'abyaṣ (biṣ) white. f. bayṣaa'
 'adda (l-) (y'addi) to give s.o. (s.th.)
 'ad-dawHa Doha, capital city of Qatar
 'ahl folks; family (m.p.). 'ahlan wa sahan! Welcome!
 'aHad someone; anyone. maabiṣ 'aHad. There isn't anyone.
 'aHmar (Humr) red. f. Hamraa'
 'aHsan elat. adj. better; best
 'akal (ya'kul) to eat
 'akl food. syn. Ta9aam
 'akmal (yikmil) to complete, finish
 'al-'aHad Sunday
 'al-'aLmaaniyya The German Airline, Lufthansa
 'al-'aṣGaal The Ministry of Public Works
 'al-'ax-- (title) Brother--
 'al-'imaaraat The Emirates, the U.A.E.
 'al-'iṯnayn Monday
 'al-'urdun Jordan
 'al-'iḍaa9a (-aat) the broadcasting station
 'al-baakistaan Pakistan
 'al-baHrayn Bahrain
 'alf ('aalaaf) one thousand
 'al-faransiyya the French (plane, airplane, company), Air France
 'alfayn two thousand
 'al-gaahira Cairo
 'al-hind India
 'al-Hodayda Hudaida
 'al-jawaazaat the passports department
 'al-jazaa'ir Algeria
 'al-jum9a Friday

- 'al-kuwayt Kuwait
- 'allaḡi rel. pron. who, which, that. var. 'ali, 'alli
- 'al-maaliyya the ministry of finance
- 'al-maGrib Morocco
- 'al-maxa Mocha, city in the Y.A.R.
- 'al-xamiis Thursday
- 'al-xariif autumn, fall
- 'al-xarTuum Khartoum
- 'al-yahwada v.n. Judaism; piety, religiousness
- 'al-yaman Yemen
- 'al-yamaniyya Yamaniya (Airline)
- 'al-yawm today. 'al-yawm al-masaa' tonight. 'al-yawm aS-SubH this morning.
'al-yawm aḡ-ḡuhr today at noon
- 'alla God. var. 'aLLaah
- 'alMaanya Germany
- 'al-9iraag Iraq
- 'amaam adv.; pṛap. in front; in front of. var. guddaam
- 'amaan v.n. safety; security
- 'amiir ('umaraa') Emir, prince
- 'amriiki (-yyiin) American; characteristic of America
- 'ams yesterday. 'ams al 9aḡi last night. 'ams aS-SubH yesterday morning
- 'ana ('iHna) I
- 'ant ('antu) you (m.s.)
- 'antayn you (f.p.)
- 'anti ('antayn) you (f.s.)
- 'antu you (m.p.)
- 'arba9a four. 'arba9at rijaal four men. 'arba9a 'alf four thousand
- 'arba9iin forty
- 'arba9miya four hundred
- 'arba9Ta9ḡ/-ar fourteen
- 'ar-rabaaT Rabat
- 'ar-rabi9 spring (season)
- 'ar-rabuu9 Wednesday
- 'ar-rawḡa Rawda, city in the Y.A.R.
- 'ar-riyaaḡ Riyadh

- 'arsal (yirsil) to send
- 'arō ('araaḡi) floor of a room; dirt, earth
- 'as-saa9a It is ... o'clock; at (the time of)
- 'as-sabt Saturday. 'as-sabt al-maaḡi last Saturday
- 'as-suudaan The Sudan
- 'as-su9uudiyya Saudi (Airline); Saudi Arabia
- 'aswad (suud) black. f. sawdaa'
- 'aSfar (Suf) yellow. f. Safraa'
- 'aS-Sayf summer. 'aS-Sayf al-maaḡi last summer
- 'aS-SubH in the morning. var. 'aS-Sabaah
- 'aḡ-faariga Sharja
- 'aḡ-ḡitaa' winter (m.). faSl aḡ-ḡitaa' the winter season
- 'aḡti I want, would like to
- 'at-taHriir Tahrir (Independence) Square, also known as maydaan at-taHriir
- 'aw conj. or. tiḡti haaḡa 'aw ḡaak? Do you want this or that one?
- 'awwal (with foll. def. n.) the first part of. (with foll. indef. n.) the first. 'awwal ḡay' at first; the first thing
- 'ax/'axu- ('ixwa) brother
- 'axaḡ (ya'xuḡ) to take
- 'axḡar (xuḡr) green. f. xaḡraa'
- 'ayn? where?
- 'ayḡ? what? syn. maa?
- 'aywa yes. syn. na9am, 'ii
- 'ayy which? what? any. 'ayy waaHid? Which one? ma 'aḡtiḡ 'ayy ḡay'. I do not want anything.
- 'azrag (zurg) blue. f. zargaa'
- 'aḡ-ḡaluuḡ Tuesday. 'al-yawm aḡ-ḡaluuḡ. Today is Tuesday.
- 'ibb Ibb, city in the Y.A.R.
- 'ibn ('abnaa') son; son of
- 'ibn xaal cousin (m.), son of one's maternal uncle. p. 'abnaa' xaal
- 'ibn 9amm cousin (m.), son of one's paternal uncle. p. 'abnaa' 9amm
- 'ibtidaa'i (-yyiin) elementary, primary
- 'idaara v.n. administration
- 'ifranji (-yyiin) Western, European
- 'iglaa9 v.n. departure (of a plane), taking off
- 'iHna we

- 'ii yes. syn. na9am
- 'iijaar rent; rent money. la l-'iijaar for rent
- 'iiraan Persia, Iran
- 'iiTaalya Italy
- 'ijaaza (-aat) leave, vacation
- 'ila prep. to. var. la-
- 'illa to (e.g. quarter to five); except
- 'ingiliizi adj. English; Englishman
- 'ingiltara England
- 'inna conj. that
- 'ism ('asmaa') name
- 'i0nayn two. f. 0intayn
- 'i0na9f/-ar twelve
- 'i0a conj. if
- 'i0aa9a v.n. broadcasting. 'al-'i0aa9a the broadcasting station
- 'i0an conj. then, therefore
- 'i9jab (yi9jib) to please s.o. 'i9jabni l-jaww. I liked the weather.
- 'umm ('ummahaat) mother
- 'usbuu9 ('asaabi19) week. 'al-'usbuu9 al maa0i last week
- 'usra ('usar) family; household
- 'uxt ('axawaat) sister
- b- prep. by; with; for. b-jamb beside, next to. b-kam? For how much?
b-l-baaS by bus. b-l-baHr by sea. b-r-rijl on foot. b-s-sayyaara
 by car. b-T-Tayyaara by plane
- baab ('abwaab) door
- baadiya (bawaadi) farm (land;plantation)
- baagi n. remainder; change. act. part. remaining, leftover
- baamya coll. okra. un. Habbat baamya
- baarak fi (ybaarik) to bless s.o.
- baarid n. something cold, beverage. adj. cold. elat. 'abrad
- baariis Paris
- baaS (-aat) bus. b-l-baaS by bus
- baa0injaan coll. eggplant. un. baa0injaana
- baddai (ybaddil) to change, alter; to exchange
- bagari coll. beef

- baGdaad Baghdad
- baHr (biHaar) sea
- balad (bilaad) country; town, city (m. or f.)
- balas coll. cactus fruit. un. balasa. balas 9arabi coll. figs.
un. Habbat balas 9arabi
- bank (bunuuk) bank. bank ad-damm the blood bank
- banTaloona (-aat) trousers, pants
- bard v.n. cold weather
- bargiyya (-aat) telegram, cable
- barguug coll. apricots. un. barguuga
- bariid mail, letters (m.s.)
- bass but; only
- baSal coll. green onions. un. buSli
- batrool gasoline; petroleum
- baTaarya (-aat) battery
- baTTa (-aat) deck of playing cards
- baTTaaniya (-aat) blanket
- baTTiix coll. cantaloupes, muskmelons. un. baTTiixa
- bayruut Beirut
- bayt (buyuut) house, home
- bayyaa9 (-iin) seller, vendor
- bayḡ coll. eggs. un. bayḡa
- bayḡaa' (biḡ) white (f.). m. 'abyaḡ
- ba9d prep. after. ba9d aḡ-ḡuhr in the afternoon
- ba9da later on; also, too
- ba9dima conj. after
- ba9iid (-iin) far; far away
- bidaaya v.n. beginning, start. fi l-bidaaya at the beginning
- bigi (yibga) to stay, remain
- biibar coll. bell peppers. un. biibari
- biira beer. gaaruurat biira bottle of beer
- bilaad (buldaan) country
- bin the son of; son
- binaaya (-aat) building
- hint (banaat) daughter; girl

- bint xaal cousin (f.), daughter of one's maternal uncle. p. banaat xaal
 bint 9amm cousin (f.), daughter of one's paternal uncle. p. banaat 9amm
 bisbaas coll. hot peppers. un. bisbaasi
 biTaaga (-aat) card; ticket. biTaagat xuruuj boarding pass
 b-jamb prep. beside, next to
 b-kam? For how much?
 b-l-baaS by bus
 b-l-baHr by sea
 bluuz (-aat) blouse
 b-r-rijl on foot
 b-s-sayyaara by car
 b-T-Tayyaara by plane
 bunn Yemeni coffee
 bunni (-yyiin) brown. f. bunniyya
 burtagaal coll. oranges. un. burtagaala
 burtagaali (-yyiin) adj. orange. f. burtagaaliyya
 bustaan (basaatiin) backyard; garden; orchard
 buSSaala coll. (brown) onions. un. ra's buSSaala
 buTaaT coll. potatoes. un. buTaaTa
 b-xayr adv. fine, in good health
 b-9ifriin for twenty
 daa'ira (dawaa'ir) department; circle, roundabout
 daar (duur) house, home; building. daar al-mu9allimaat the women's teacher
 training college
 daaxil adv.; prep. inside
 dafa9 (yidfa9) to pay
 daftar (dafaatir) notebook, copybook
 dagg (ydugg) tran., intran. to ring
 dagiiga (dagaa'ig) minute; moment
 dajaaJ coll. chickens; chicken. un. dajaaJa
 dajla (-aat) overcoat
 daktoor (dakaatira) doctor. daktoor 9uyuun eye doctor
 dala dala adv. slowly. syn. fwayya fwayya. opp. fiisa9
 damm coll. blood. bank ad-damm the blood bank
 dara b- (yidri) to know, be aware of something

daras (yudrus) to study
 darras (ydarris) to teach
 dars (duruus) lesson
 darzan (daraazin) dozen. darzan bayδ dozen eggs
 dawaa' ('adwiya) medicine. syn. 9ilaaʃ
 dawwar 9ala (ydawwir) to look for s.o. or s.th.
 daxal (yudxul) to enter
 dayma (diyam) kitchen, old Yemeni kitchen
 dihn coll. shortening
 diik ('adyaak) rooster
 diinaar (danaaniir) dinar
 diiwaan (dawaawiin) living room
 dikkaan (dakaakiin) shop, store. syn. Haanuut p. Hawaaniit
 dima/g Damascus
 dimm (dimam) cat
 dubayy Dubai
 dubbe coll. zucchini. un. dubbaayi
 duulaab (dawaaliib) wardrobe; cupboard
 duulaar (-aat) dollar
 duxuul v.n. entrance; admission. biTaagat duxuul admission card
 faaniila (-aat) undershirt, T-shirt
 faaSuulya coll. beans. un. Habbat faaSuulya
 faatuura (fawaatiir) bill, invoice
 fagiir (-iin, fugaraa') poor. elat. 'afgar
 fagr damm anaemia
 falat (yiflit) be released; to get away
 faransa France
 faSl (fuSuul) season
 fataH (yiftaH) to open
 fawg adv. upstairs; prep. above; over
 fi prep. in, inside
 fii there is; there are. opp. maabiʃ
 fiisa9 adv. fast, quickly
 film ('aflaam) film, movie
 finjaan (fanaajiin) cup; cup of s.th.

- fuluus money (f.s.). syn. zalaT
- fundug (fanaadig) hotel. syn. 'uteel p. -aat
- furn ('afraan) oven; stove
- fustaan (fasaatiin) dress, woman's dress
- fuuTa (fuwaT) towel
- gaabal (ygaabil) to meet s.o.; to have an interview with s.o.
- gaal (yguul) to say. gaal 1- to tell, inform s.o.
- gaaruura (gawaariir) bottle; bottle of s.th.
- gaat coll. qat. un. 9irg gaat or 9uudi gaat
- gaa9 (gii9aan) quarter, section of a city. gaa9 al-yahuud the Jewish Quarter
- gab1 prep. before
- gablima conj. before
- gaddam (ygaddim) to present, submit, e.g. an application. gaddam Talab
He submitted an application.
- gadiim (gidaam) old, not new. elat. 'agdam
- gafaS (gifaaS) package, e.g., gafaS igaayir package of cigarettes
- gahwa coffee
- galam ('aglaam) pen, pencil
- galaS (-aat) glass of s.th.; drinking glass (f.)
- galb (guluub) heart
- galoon (-aat) gallon
- gandiil (ganaadiil) light bulb
- gara' (yigra') to read
- garguuf (garaagiif) cap worn by children in winter
- gariib ('agaarib) relatives, relations
- gariib adj. close, nearby. elat. 'agrab. gariib min near, close to
- gaSiir (giSaar) short, not long. elat. 'agSar
- gaS9a (giSa9) small can (e.g., of tomato sauce, cheese, etc.)
gaS9at TamaaTiis tomato can
- gaTar Qatar
- gawi (-yyiin) strong, powerful. elat. 'agwa
- gawl ('agwaal) saying; proverb
- gidir (yigdar) to be able to do s.th.
- gism ('agsaam) section; part
- gi/r skin (e.g., of coffee beans). gahwat gi/r Yemeni coffee

gubba9a (-aat) hat, Western hat. syn. Tarbuuf p. Taraabiif
 guddaam prep. in front of; adv. in front, toward. var. 'amaam
 gungumi (gamaagim) can, e.g., can of motor oil
 gundara (ganaadir) pair of shoes
 gunSuliyya (-aat) consulate

G

Gaali (-yiin) expensive. elat. 'aGla
 GaaliT (-iin) mistaken, having made a mistake
 Gadaa' (-aat) lunch
 GalaT incorrect, wrong
 Gallag (yGallig) to shut, close
 Gani (-yyiin), 'aGniyaa') rich. elat. 'aGna
 Garb west, western part (of)
 Gasal (yiGsil) to wash
 Gassaala (-aat) washing machine; laundromat
 Gayr neg. part. (with foll. n.) other than; different from.
 (with foll. adj.) not, un-
 Graam (-aat) gram
 Gudwa tomorrow. Gudwa S-SubH tomorrow morning. Gudwa l-9afi tomorrow night
 Gurfa (Guraf) room. syn. makaan p. -aat

h

ha! interj. - used to draw someone's attention
 haaka9a adv. in this manner, this way
 haana adv. here
 haat! Give! Bring! (m.s.)
 haa9a this (m.). p. haa9awla (m. or f.)
 haa9awla these (m. or f.)
 haa9awlaak those (m. or f.) s. ha9aak (m.), ha9iik (f.)
 haa9i this (f.) p. haa9awla
 haluw! Hello!
 handasa engineering; geometry
 ha9aak that; that one (m.) p. haa9awlaak
 ha9iik that; that one (f.) p. haa9awlaak
 hindi (hunuud) Indian; characteristic of India

hiy she. p. hin
 hownaak there, over there
 hum they (m.). s. huw
 huw he. p. hum

H

Haal ('aHwaal) condition. kayf Haalak? How are you?
 Haali (-yiin) beautiful;nice. f. Haaliya. elat. 'aHla
 Haami adj. hot (weather). elat. 'aHma
 Haanuut (Hawaaniit) shop, store. syn. dikkaan p. dakaakiin
 Haara (-aat) neighborhood, quarter, section of a city
 Haawal (yHaawil) to try, to make an effort to do s.th.
 Habba (-aat) grain; seed, one unit of. Habbat rizz grain of rice
Habbat buTaaT a potato
 HabHab coll. watermelons. un. HabHaba
 Haddaad (-iin) blacksmith
 Haddad (yHaddid) to set, schedule; to define
 Hadiiga (Hadaa'ig) garden. Hadiiga 9aamma public garden
 Hafla (-aat) party; ceremony; celebration. Haflat 9a/aa' dinner party
 Hagg prep. belonging to; for. 'as-sayyaara Haggi. The car belongs to me.
 Hajj (Hujjaaj) pilgrim; title of respect
 Hakiim (Hukamaa') medical doctor. syn. Tabiib p. 'aTibbaa'
 Halaawa dessert, s.th. sweet
 Halawiyyaat sweets; sweet pastry; candies
 Haliib milk. galaS Haliib glass of milk
 Hama v.n. hot weather. 'al-yawm Hama. It's hot today.
 Hamaam coll. pigeons; doves. un. Hamaami
 Hamd v.n. praise (m.). 'al-Hamdu lillaah! Praise be to God!
 Hammaal (-iin) porter, carrier
 Hammaam (-aat) bath; bathroom
 Hamraa' (Humr) red (f.). m. 'aHmar
 Haraara v.n. temperature; heat
 HaSal 9ala (yuHSul) to obtain, get
 HaSSal (yHaSSil) to get, obtain
 HaTT (yHuTT) to put, place s.th.
 Hayya (yHayyi) to welcome s.o.; to greet s.o.

Hda9// -ar eleven

Hiin ('aHyaan) time. f-ayy Hiin? When? At what time?

zaraatHiin sometimes

Hiin conj. when, at the time when. syn. lamman, 9indima

Hilw (-iin) beautiful. elat. 'aHla

Himaar (Hamiir) donkey, ass

Hisaab (-aat) bill; (bank) account. 9ala Hisaab at the expense of

HiSaan ('aHSuna) horse. f. faras

Hiḍa ('aHḍi) pair of slippers. syn. ḥib/ḥib p. ḥabaa/ḥib

Hodayda Hudaida

Htafal b- (yiHtafil) to celebrate s.th.

Hukuuma (-aat) government

Humma fever, high temperature

HummoS dish made from crushed chick peas, sesame seed paste, and
lemon juice

Huut coll. fish un. Huuti

j

jaa' (yiji) to come. jaa' l- to come for s.th.

jaab (yjiib) to bring

jaahil (jahhaal) child; adj. very young; ignorant. elat. 'ajhal

jaami9 (jawaami9) mosque; big, central mosque, such as 'al-jaami9
al-kabiir the Grand Mosque in Sanaa

jaami9a (-aat) university

jaar (jiiraan) neighbor

jaawab (yjaawib) to answer (e.g., a letter, a question, the phone, etc.)

jaawi9 (-iin) hungry

jadda Jadda

jadiid (jidaad) new. elat. 'ajdad

jamaa9a (-aat) relatives, kinsfolk; group of people (m.p.)

jamii1 (-iin) beautiful; handsome. elat. 'ajmal

januub south (of), southern part (of). januub Garb southwest (of).
januub farg southeast (of)

jarida (jaraa'id) newspaper

jarr (yjurr) to withdraw, e.g., money

jarrab (yjarrib) to try s.th.; to test s.th.

jawaab (-aat) answer; response
 jawaaz (-aat) passport. 'al-jawaazaat the passports department
 jaww weather. 'al-jaww miGbir al-yawm. The weather is dusty today.
 jayf (juyuuf) army; (the) military (m.s.)
 jazzaar (-iin) butcher
 jinn coll. jinn, demons. s. jinni. f. jinniyya
 jinsiyya (-aat) nationality; citizenship
 jizar coll. carrots. un. jizara
 jubn coll. cheese. un. jubna
 jumhuuri (-yyiin) adj. republican
 jumruk (jamaarik) customs, duty

k

kaafi coffee, Western coffee
 kaan (ykuun) to be. kaan fii there was; there were. kaan yi/ti (with foll. imperf.) he wanted to...
 kaatib (kuttaab) clerk; writer, author
 kaawiya (-aat) an iron
 kabaab kabob, meat roasted on a skewer
 kabat (-aat) cupboard; wardrobe
 kahrabaa' electricity. daa'irat al-kahrabaa' the electricity department
 kalb (kilaab) dog
 kallaf (ykallif) to cost
 kam? (with foll. s.n.) How many? (with foll. p.n. or v.) How much?
kam lak...? How long have you (m.s.) been...? kam as-saa9a? What time is it?
 kamaan also, too
 kanada Canada
 kanadi (-yyiin) Canadian; characteristic of Canada
 kaniis (no known plural) synagogue; temple
 kaniisa (kanaa'is) church
 kannas (ykannis) to sweep (with a broom)
 karyuula (karaayil) bed. syn. sariir p. saraayir
 katab (yuktub) to write
 kawwa (ykawwi) to iron
 kayf? How? kayf ant? How are you (m.s.)?

kaθiir	adv. very; adj. a lot; many.	elat. 'akθar
kaθur (yukθur)	to be abundant, abound	
kaθθar (ykaθθir)	to increase, make s.th. more	
kiilo (-waat)	kilogram	
kiilomitr (-aat)	kilometer	
kiis ('akyaas)	bundle, packet; bag	
kiraa' (-aat)	rent money; wage; fare	
kitaab (kutub)	book	
kiδb	v.n. lying; lies. s. <u>kiδba</u> a lie	
kull	(with foll. def. n.) all of, the whole of. (with foll. indef. n.) each, every	
kulliyya (-aat)	college. <u>daar al-mu9allimaat</u> the women's teacher training college	
kursi (karaasi)	chair. ' <u>al-kursi Haggi</u> my chair	
kuut ('akwaat)	jacket	

1

ia	prep. to, toward; for. var. 'ila	
laa	no. syn. <u>maafi</u> . <u>laa ba's</u> not bad. <u>laa ... wala</u> = <u>maaf ... w-maaf</u> neither ... nor	
laaga (ylaagi)	to find, encounter	
laazim 9ala-	(with foll. imperf.) must; have to; ought to	
laff (yliff)	to turn (left, right, etc.)	
laHm	coll. meat. un. <u>laHma</u>	
lamman	conj. when, at the time when. syn. <u>Hiin</u> , <u>9indima</u>	
landan	London	
law	conj. if	
lawn ('alwaan)	color	
layl	coll. night; nighttime. un. <u>layla</u>	
libis (yilbas)	to wear; to put on	
liibya	Libya	
liibi (-yyiin)	Libyan; of Libya	
lilma?	inter. part. why? syn. <u>layf?</u>	
li9ib (yil9ab)	to play; to play a game	
lubnaan	Lebanon	

luGa (-aat) language

m

ma (with foll. v.) not. (with foll. gad) not; not yet, have not ... yet
 maa? what? maa l-? What's the matter with...?
 maabiʃ there isn't; there aren't
 maani9 (mawaani9) objection
 maasa (-aat) table; desk
 maaf neg. part. not. maaf ... w-maaf neither ... nor
 maafi no. syn. laɔ. opp. 'ii, na9am
 maaʃi (-yiin) adj. past; last, e.g., 'aʃ-ʃahr al-maaʃi last month
 madaa9a (madaayi9) hubble-bubble, water-pipe
 madiina (mudun) city, town
 madrasa (madaaris) school
 mafraj (mafaarij) reception room, reception hall
 magli (-yyiin) fried. Huut magli fried fish
 mag9ad (magaa9id) sofa, couch
 maGli (-yyiin) boiled. bayʃ maGli boiled eggs
 maGrib sunset. Salaat al-maGrib the sunset prayer
 maHaTTa (-aat) station, e.g., gas station, bus station
 maHHad no one, nobody. maHHad jaa'. No one came.
 majnuun (majaaniin) crazy, insane
 makaan ('amaakin) place, location. makaan al-wilaada birthplace.
 (-aat) room
 maknis (makaanis) broom
 maktab (makaatib) office. maktab bariid post office. maktab Turuud
 parcel (post) office
 maktuub (makaatiib) letter; mail item. syn. risaala p. rasaa'il
 malaabis clothes, clothing
 malla (ymalli) to fill, fill up; to fill out
 mal9aga (malaa9ig) spoon
 man? inter. pron. Who?
 man rel. pron. who; he who
 manaaxa Manakha, city in the Y.A.R.
 manʃafa (manaaʃif) towel

- manzuul (-iin) adj. having a cold. syn. mazkuum
- mara (nisaa') woman; wife
- marag coll. meat broth; gravy
- mariŕ (-iin) ill, sick
- marra (-aat) time; once. xamsat marraat five times. marratayn twice
- masaa' (-aat) evening, night (m.)
- masaafa (-aat) distance. masaafat miilayn distance of two miles
- masarra (-aat) joy, happiness
- masjid (masaajid) mosque
- massa (yaassi) to bid s.o. good evening
- mafa (yamfi) to walk. syn. xuTi
- ma/Guul (-iin) busy
- ma/wi (-yyiin) grilled; roasted. Huut ma/wi grilled fish
- mata? inter. adv. When? syn. f-ayy Hiin?
- matfal (mataafil) spitting container
- ma:ka (mataaki) cushion, pad
- maTaar (-aat) airport
- maTar ('amTaar) rain
- maTbax (maTaabix) kitchen. old Yemeni kitchen dayma p. diyam
- maT9am (maTaa9im) restaurant
- mawjuud (-iin) adj. found; available, on hand
- mawlid (mawaalid) birthday of a prophet or a saint. mawlid an-nabi
Prophet Muhammad's Birthday
- mawz coll. bananas. un. mawza
- maw9id (mawaa9iid) appointment, appointed time
- maydaan (mayaadiin) square. maydaan at-taHriir Tahrir Square
- mazkuum (-iin) adj. having a cold. syn. manzuul
- ma0al ('am0aal) proverb, saying
- ma9 prep. with. ma9 as-salaama! Goodbye!
- ma9aa/ (-aat) salary; stipend
- ma9guul (-iin) reasonable, sensible. Gayr ma9guul unreasonable
- ma9had (ma9aahid) institute
- mee' water. var. maa'
- mGallig (-iin) adj. closed, shut
- miftaaH (mafaatiiH) key

miGbir (-iin)	dusty. 'al-jaww miGbir. The weather is dusty.
miil (-aat)	neon light. p. 'amyaa! mile
miilaad v.n.	birth; nativity; birthday. <u>9iid al-miilaad</u> Christmas
miizaan (mawaaziin)	scales, balance
mikaaniiki (-yyiin)	mechanic; mechanical
millaaya (-aat)	bed sheet
min prep. from.	<u>min ayn?</u> from where? <u>min 'awwal</u> adv. before, previously
mirtaaH (-iin)	comfortable, at ease
mista9jil (-iin)	adj. in a hurry, hurried
miSr	Egypt
miSri (-yyiin)	Egyptian; of Egypt
mi/kila (ma/kaakil)	problem
mixzaan (maxaaziin)	storage room, storehouse
miya	one hundred. <u>miyatayn</u> two hundred
mi0l prep.	like, similar to
mrabbaT (-iin)	p.p. tied up, bound, shackled
mu'ajjir (-iin)	landlord, lessor; manager (of an apartment building)
mubaa'fir (-iin)	waiter; usher
mudarris (-iin)	instructor, teacher
mudda (mudad)	period of time. <u>muddat sana</u> period of one year
mudiir (-iin)	director, manager
muhandis (-iin)	engineer
mumarri0 (-iin)	male nurse
mumkin	possible. (with foll. verb) May...? Is it possible that...?
mumtaaz (-iin)	super; excellent
munHa (munaH)	scholarship, fellowship
muntazah (-aat)	park, public garden
mursil (-iin)	sender
musaafir (-iin)	traveller; passenger. act. part. travelling
musajjal (-iin)	registered, certified
musta'jir (-iin)	tenant, lessee
mustaffa (-yaat)	hospital (m.)
mutazawwij (-iin)	married
muwa00af (-iin)	employee
mu9allim (-iin)	teacher, instructor. syn. <u>mudarris</u>
mu9aTTal (-iin)	out of order; shut down, stopped

- naahi (-yia) fine, good. elat. 'aHsan, 'aHla. f. naahiya
 naam (ynuum) to fall asleep; to sleep
 naas people (m.p.)
 naa'if (-ia) dry. elat. 'an/af
 nabi ('anbiyaa') prophet
 nafa9 (yinfra9) to benefit s.o.
 nafs (with foll. n.) the same. nafs af-fay' the same thing
 naHiif (-iin) skinny, thin. elat. 'anHaf
 najjaar (-iin) carpenter
 nawm v.n. sleep; sleeping
 nawwar (ynawwir) to enlighten, fill with light
 naḡiif (niḡaaf, -iin) clean. elat. 'anḡaf
 naḡḡaf (ynaḡḡif) to clean
 na9am yes. syn. 'ii, tamaam. opp. maafi
 nihaaya v.n. end; finis, conclusion. min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya
 from start to finish. fi n-nihaaya at the end, finally
 nisi (yinsa) to forget
 n/aaLLa hopefully (lit. "If God wills")
 nuSS ('anSaaf) half. var. nuSf
 nuzuul v.n. cold, state of having a cold. syn. zukaam

- raabi9 fourth
 raaH (yruuH) to go; to leave
 raajam (yraajim) to stone, throw rocks at s.o.
 raa9a (l-) (yraa9i) to wait (for), await s.o.
 ra's (ru'uus) head. ra's as-sana beginning of the year, New Year.
ra's gu/mi a radish
 ragad (yurgud) to sleep, fall asleep
 ragam ('argaam) number, No.; numeral
 rajjaal (rijaal) man
 ramaad: (-yyiin) adj. grey. f. ramaadiyya
 ramaḡaaḡ Ramadhan, the holy month of fasting
 raxiiS (-iin) cheap, inexpensive. elat. 'arxaS
 rijj9 (yirja9) to return, come back. riji9 waraa' to back up,
 go in reverse

rijl ('arjul) foot, one's foot (f.)
 risaala (rasaa'il) letter, mail item. syn. maktuub p. makaatiib
 rizz coll. rice un. Habbat rizz
 rub9 ('arbaa9) one-fourth. xamsa 'illa rub9 quarter to five
 rukn ('arkaan) corner
 ruSaaba Rusaba, village near Dhamar in the Y.A.R.
 ruTuuba v.n. humidity
 ruusi (ruus) Russian; characteristic of Russia. f. ruusiyya
 ruusiya Russia
 ryaal (-aat) riyaal. var. riyaal

s

sa'al (yis'al) to ask, inquire
 saabi9 seventh
 saadis sixth
 saafar (ysaafir) to travel
 saag (ysuug) to drive
 saani adv. straight, straight ahead. ruH saani! Go straight!
 saar (ysiir) to go; to leave; to walk
 saa9a (-aat) hour; watch; clock. saa9at xams at five o'clock
 saa9ad (ysaa9id) to help, assist
 saba' Sheba, city in the Y.A.R.
 sabaH (yisbaH) to swim
 saba9miya seven hundred
 saba9Ta9// -ar seventeen
 sabbaak (-iin) pipe fitter. syn. samkari p. samaakira
 sabtambir September
 sab9a seven. sab9at rijaal seven men
 sab9a 'alf seven thousand
 sab9iin seventy
 safaara (-aat) embassy
 sagi (suguuf) ceiling; roof
 sahl (-iin) easy, not difficult. elat. 'ashal
 sajjal (ysajjil) to register; to record
 sakan (yuskun) to dwell, live in a place
 salaam v.n. peace. 'as-salaamu 9alaykum! Peace be upon you!

salaama	v.n. safety.	<u>ma9 as-salaama!</u> Goodbye!
salaTa	coll. lettuce; salad.	<u>ra's salaTa</u> head of lettuce
saliit	motor oil	
sallam (ysallim)	to protect, keep s.o. safe.	<u>sallam 9ala</u> to greet s.o.; to shake hands with s.o.
samaH (yismaH)	to allow, permit s.o. to do s.th.	
samiin (simaan)	fat.	elat. <u>'asman</u>
samkari (samaakira)	pipe fitter.	syn. <u>sabbaak</u> p. <u>-iin</u>
sana (siniin, -waat)	year.	<u>'as-sana l-maa9iya</u> last year
santraal (-aat)	central telephone line, telephone operator	
sariir (saraayir)	bed.	syn. <u>karyuula</u> p. <u>karaayil</u>
sawdaa' (suud)	black (f.).	m. <u>'aswad</u>
sawwaag (-iin)	cab driver	
saxxaan (-aat)	heater.	<u>saxxaan al-mee'</u> the hot water heater
sayyaara (-aat)	car.	<u>b-s-sayyaara</u> by car
siinama (-aat)	cinema (f.)	
sikirteer (-iin)	secretary	
sikkiin (sakaakiin)	knife	
simi9 (yisma9)	to hear	
siraaj (-aat)	light of a car; (electricity) light	
sirr ('asraar)	secret; v.n. secrecy	
sitmiya	six hundred	
sitta	six.	<u>sittat rijaal</u> six men
sitta 'alf	six thousand	
sittiin	sixty	
siTTa9f/-ar	sixteen	
si9r ('as9aar)	price; tariff	
sta'jar (yista'jir)	to rent s.th.	
sta9mal (yista9mil)	to use, utilize	
su'aal ('as'ila, -aat)	question	
sukkar	coll. sugar	
suug ('aswaag)	marketplace, market	
suuri (-yyiin)	Syrian; of Syria	
suuriyya	Syria	

S

- Saabuun coll. soap. un. Saabuuna
- SaaHib (with foll. n.) owner, proprietor of. p. 'aSHaab
- SabaaH morning. fi S-SabaaH in the morning. syn. 'aS-SubH. SabaaH
al-xayr! Good morning!
- Sabar (yaSbir) to be patient; to wait
- Sabban (ySabbin) to wash with soap
- SabuuH breakfast
- Sadiig ('aSdigaa')
- Saff (Sufuuf) class; classroom
- Safraa' (Sufr) yellow (f.). m. 'aSfar
- SaGiir (SiGaar, -iin) young; small. elat. 'aSGar
- SaHH (ySuHH) to be all right; to be allowed, permissible
ma ySuHH/. It cannot be.
- SaHn (SuHuun) dish; plate
- Salaa (Salawaat) prayer (f.). Salaat aS-SubH the morning prayer
- Salla (ySalli) to pray
- Sandal (Sanaadil) pair of sandals
- Sanduug (Sanaadiig) box, crate; trunk. Sanduug bariid mail box
- San9a Sanaa
- Sa9b (-iin) difficult. elat. 'aS9ab
- SiHHa v.n. health. wazaarat aS-SiHHa the ministry of health
- STabaH (yiSTabiH) to have breakfast
- SummaaTa (SummaT) head dress

f

- f_{aaf} (y_fuuf) to see
- f_{aagi} (f_ugaa) workman, laborer
- f_{aahi} tea. kuup f_{aahi} cup of tea; tea cup
- f_{aal} (y_fiil) to carry; to lift
- f_{aari9} (f_{awaari9}) street
- f_afa (y_fi_fi) to cure, heal s.o., restore so.o. to health
- f_ahaada (-aat) degree, certificate
- f_ahr ('a_f/hir) month. 'a_f-f_ahr al-maaḡi last month
- f_all (y_fiill) to carry; to lift; to steal

- famaal north (of), northern part (of). famaal farg northeast.
famaal Garb northwest
- famiiz (fumzaan, fummaz) shirt
- famTa (fimiit) bag, suitcase
- faraab (-aat) pair of socks. faraab nisaa'i pair of stockings
- farg east, eastern part (of). famaal farg northeast. famaal Garb northwest
- farika (-aat) company, firm
- faTala (-aat) fork. syn. fawka p. fuwak, -aat
- fawka (fuwak, -aat) fork. syn. faTala p. -aat
- faxS ('afxaaS) person, someone; somebody
- fay' ('afyaa') something; anything. var. see'
- figaara (figaayir) cigarette
- fijar coll. trees. un. fijara
- fimaal adv. left; n. left hand. syn. yasaar
- firba soup
- firib (yifrab) to drink
- ftaGal (yiftaGil) to work
- ftara (yiftari) to buy
- fugga (fugag) apartment
- fuGl ('afGaal) work, job. wazaarat al-'afGaal the ministry of public works
- fukran! Thanks!
- furTi (furTa) policeman
- fwayya a little; some. ma/Guul fwayya a little busy. fwayyat gahwa some coffee. fwayya fwayya slowly. syn. dala dala

t

- ta'fiira (-aat) visa
- taabi9iyya (-aat) nationality; citizenship
- taaniki (tawaaniki) tank, e.g., gasoline tank, water tank, etc.
taaniki l-mee' the water tank
- taariix (tawaariix) date; history. taariix al-willaada birthdate
- taasi9 ninth
- taayir (-aat) car tire. syn. 9ajala p. -aat
- taa9ib (-iin) tired

tafaagad (yitfaagad) to check, inspect; to examine so.o. medically
 tafaḍḍal! Go ahead! Please! (m.s.)
 tagriib prep. about, approximately
 taGadda (yitGadda) to have lunch
 taHammam (yitHammam) to bathe, take a bath
 taHt adv. downstairs; below. prep. beneath, under
 takallam (yitkallam) to speak, talk
 takawwan min (yitkawwan) to be made up of, consist of
 taksi (takaasi) taxi, cab
 talafoon (-aat) telephone
 talfan l- (yalfin) to telephone s.o.
 tamaam right! correct!
 tamm (yitimm) to finish, complete s.th.
 tamr coll. dates. un. tamra
 tannuur (tanaaniir) bread-baking oven
 tarak (yutruk) to leave, depart
 tarbiya v.n. education. wazaarat at-tarbiya the ministry of education
 tasallaf (yitsallaf) to borrow
 taxarrab (yitxarrab) to be or become ruined, spoiled
 taxarraaj (yitxarraaj) to graduate
 tazawwaj (yitzawwaj) to get married; to marry s.o.
 taḍkara (taḍaakir) ticket, admission ticket; card
 ta9aal! Come! (m.s.)
 ta9allam (yit9allam) to learn
 ta9aḥḥa (yit9aḥḥa) to have dinner, supper
 ta9izz Taiz
 tijaara (-aat) commerce; trade
 tisa9miya nine hundred. tisa9miyat rajjaal 900 men
 tisa9Ta9f/-ar nineteen
 tis9a nine. tis9at rijaal nine men
 tis9a 'alf nine thousand
 tis9iin ninety
 ttafag 9ala (yittafig) to agree on s.th.
 ttaSaal b- (yittaSaal) to contact s.o.
 tuffaaH coll. apples. un. tuffaaHa

tuunis Tunisia; Tunis
 tuunisi (-yyiin) Tunisian; of Tunisia

T

Taabi9 (Tawaabi9) postage stamps
 Taaga (Tiigaan) window
 Taalib (Tullaab) student
 Taar (yTiir) intran. to f'ly, fly away
 Tabax (yuTbux) to cook
 Tabbaa9 (-iin) typist
 Tabiib ('aTibbaa') medical doctor. syn. Hakiim p. Hukamaa'
 Tab9an . of course, certainly
 Tahraan Tehran
 Talab (-aat) application; request
 Tali
 TamaaTiis coll. tomatoes. un. TumTusa
 Tard (Turuud) parcel, package
 TarHa (-aat) floor, story (of a building). p. TuruuH bedspread
 Tariig (Turug) way; road
 Tawiil (Tiwaal) tall; long. elat. 'aTwal
 Tayr (Tuyuur) bird; sparrow
 Tayyaara (-aat) airplane
 Tayyib (-iin) fine, good; delicious. elat. 'aTyab. adv. well,
 in good health
 Ta9aam food. syn. 'akl. Gurfat Ta9aam dining room
 Tifl ('aTfaal) infant; child
 Tuul v.n. length, tallness. Tuul al-layl all night long

W

wa/w- and
 waafag (ywaafig) to agree. waafag 9ala to approve s.th.
 waaHid one; someone, somebody. waaHid min one of
 wagt ('awgaat) period of time, time. syn. Hiin p. 'aHyaan
 waHd- alone, by oneself
 wala conj. nor. la ... wala neither ... nor. syn. maaf ... w-maaf
 walaakin conj. but. syn. bass

- walad ('awlaad) son; boy
- waLLa honestly, indeed
- waraa' See ware.
- wardi (-yyiin) adj. pink. f. wardiyya
- ware adv. behind; backwards. var. waraa'. syn. xalf
- warra (ywarri) to show s.o. or s.th.
- warfa (-aat) workshop
- wasx (-iin) dirty, filthy
- waSl (wuSuul) receipt
- wazaara (-aat) ministry. wazaarat ad-daaxiliyya the ministry of the interior. wazaarat al-muwaaSalaat the ministry of communications. wazaarat al-xaarijiyya the ministry of foreign affairs. wazaarat al-9adl the ministry of justice. wazaarat aS-SiHha the ministry of health. wazaarat at-tarbiya the ministry of education. wazaarat at-tijaara the ministry of commerce. wazaarat az-ziraa9a the ministry of agriculture. wazaarat al-'a/Gaal the ministry of public works
- wazan (yuuzin) to weigh
- waziir (wuzaraa') minister (cabinet)
- wilaada v.n. birth, delivery. makaan al-wilaada birthplace
- wilaaya (-aat) state; region. wilaayat 'arizoonaa the State of Arizona
- wuSul (yiwSal) to arrive at a place; to reach s.o. or s.th.
- wuSuul v.n. arrival
- x
- xaabar (yxaabir) to telephone s.o.; to make a telephone call
- xaal ('axwaal) maternal uncle. 'ibn xaal cousin (m.), son of one's maternal uncle. p. 'abnaa' xaal
- xaala (-aat) maternal aunt; step-mother.
- xaamis fifth
- xaarij adv.; prep. outside
- xaaTrak! Goodbye!
- xafiif (-iin) light, not heavy. elat. 'axaff
- xalas (yaxlis) to undress, take off one's clothes
- xalf adv.; prep. behind. syn. ware
- xalla (yxalli) to let s.o. do s.th.; to make s.o. do s.th.
- xamsa five. xamsat rijaal five men

xamsa 'alf five thousand
 xamsiin fifty
 xamsmiya five hundred
 xamsTa9f/-ar fifteen
 xaraj (yuxraj) to go out, come out, get out
 xarraj (yxarrij) to send out, move out; to expel
 xaTT (xuTuut) telephone line; (railroad, bus, air) line
 xaTwa (-aat) step, stride; pace
 xayr v.n. goodness, benevolence. b-xayr well; in good health
 xazzan (yxazzin) to chew qat
 xaḡraa' (xuḡr) green (f.). m. 'axḡar
 xiyaar coll. cucumbers. un. xiyaara
 xubz coll. bread. un. xubza, Habbat xubz
 xuruuj v.n. exit, going out. opp. duxuul
 xuTi (yuxTi) to walk, go on foot

y

ya voc. part. (with foll. n.) ya 9ali! Ali! ya yuba! Dad! Father!
 yadd ('aydi) hand
 yahuudi (yahuud) Jew; Jewish. f. yahuudiyya
 yahwaada belief in Judæism; piety, religiousness
 yamiin adv. right. n. right hand
 yasaar adv. left. n. left hand
 yawm ('ayyaam) day
 yawmiya adv. always
 ya9ni that is to say, i.e.
 yumkin perhaps, maybe
 yurt coll. yogurt

z

zaar (yzuur) to visit
 zaaratHiin adv. sometimes
 zabiib coll. raisins. un. zabiiba
 zalaT money. syn. fuluus
 zargaa' (zurg) blue (f.). m. 'azrag
 zawj ('azwaaj) husband. zawja wife

ziyaada (-aat) excess; surplus; increase, increment
 zubda coll. butter
 zujaaḡ coll. glass
 zukaam v.n. cold, state of having a cold. syn. nuzuul
 zunnaar (zanaaniir) side curls

θ

θaaliθ third
 θaamin eighth
 θaanawi (-yyiin) secondary. madrasa θaanawiyya secondary school
 θaani (-yiin) other; another; the other; the second. f. θaaniya
 θagiil (-iin) heavy. elat. 'aθgal
 θalaaθa three. θalaaθat rijaal three men
 θalaaθa 'alf three thousand
 θalaaθiin thirty
 θalaaθmiya three hundred
 θalaaθTa9f/-ar thirteen
 θallaaja (-aat) refrigerator
 θamaaniin eighty
 θamaaniya eight. θamaaniyat rijaal eight mer.. θamaaniya 'alf 3,000
 θamaanmiya eight hundred
 θamaanTa9f/-ar eighteen
 θaman ('aθmaan) price, cost; value
 θawra (-aat) revolution
 θiliθ ('aθlaaθ) one-third. var. θilθ
 θintayn two (f.). m. 'iθnayn
 θiyaab clothes. syn. malaabis

δ

δahabi (-yyiin) adj. gold. f. δahabiyya
 δalHiin adv. now

ḡ

ḡaa' (1-) (yiḡii') to light, illumine (s.th. or s.o.)
 ḡarab ragam (yuḡrub) to dial a number
 ḡariiba (ḡaraa'ib) tax; duty
 ḡaruuri (-yyiin) necessary

- ḡayf (ḡuyuuuf) guest
 ḡayyaf (yḡayyif) to entertain s.o., treat s.o. as a guest.
 ḡayyaf 9ala to entertain s.o. to s.th.
 ḡa9iif (-iin, ḡu9afaa') weak; skinny. elat. 'aḡ9af
 ḡiig v.n. distress, hardship. wagt aḡ-ḡiig time of distress, difficult times
 ḡuhr noon, noontime. ba9d aḡ-ḡuhr in the afternoon

9

- 9aa'ila (9awaa'il) family. syn. 'usra p. 'usar
 9aad (9ala) (y9iid) to repeat, do s.th. again (to s.o.)
 9aadi (-yyiin) regular; ordinary
 9aafa (y9aafi) to keep s.o. safe; to restore good health to s.o.
 9aafiya health, well being
 9aagil (-iin) rational, wise. elat. 'a9gal
 9aam ('a9waam) year. syn. sana p. siniin, sanawaat. 'al-9aam
 al-maaḡi last year
 9aamil (9ummaal) laborer, workman. syn. faagi p. fugaa
 9aamm (-iin) adj. public; common; general. elat. 'a9amm
 9aafir tenth
 9aaḡi' (-iin) thirsty
 9add (y9idd) to count, enumerate
 9afwan! Sorry! Welcome!
 9agd (9uguud) lease; contract
 9ala/9alay- prep. on
 9ala sibb conj. because; so that, in order that
 9amm ('a9maam) paternal uncle; father-in-law. 'ibn 9amm cousin (m.).
 f. bint 9amm
 9amma (-aat) paternal aunt; mother-in-law
 9ammaan Amman
 9ammaar (-iin) mason; construction worker
 9an Tariig by way of, via. 9an Tariig San9a via Sanaa
 9arabi adj. Arabic; an Arab. p. 9arab
 9askari (9askar) soldier
 9aSr afternoon, as in Salaat al-9aSr the afternoon prayer
 9afaa' (-aat) dinner, supper

- 9afara ten. 9afarat rijaal ten men
 9awar (yi9wir) to make s.o. blind in one eye
 9ayn (9uyuun) eye, one's eye (f.).
 9ayyad 9ala (y9ayyid) to celebrate a feast with s.o.
 9iid ('a9yaad) feast, festival; holiday. 9iid al-'aḡHa the Sacrifice
 Feast. 9iid al-'umm Mother's Day. 9iid al fiTr the
 Ramadhan Feast. 9iid al-millaad Christmas. 9iid
al-9ummaal May Day. 9iid ra's as-sana New Year's Day.
9iid miilaad birthday
 9ijl (9ujuul) calf of a cow. coll. = laHm 9ijl veal
 9imaama (9amaa'im) turban
 9imil (yi9mal) to do; to make
 9inab coll. grapes. un. Habbat 9inab
 9ind- to have. 9indi I have
 9indima conj when, at the time when
 9inwaan (9anaawiin) address
 9irif (yi9rif) to know; to realize
 9i/riin twenty
 9iyaal children; sons and daughters (no known singular)
 9umr ('a9maar) age; lifetime. kam 9umrak? How old are you?
 9uTla (9uTal) holiday; vacation. 9uTlat aS-Sayf summer vacation
 9azam (yi9zim) to invite s.o. 9azamni 9ala l-9a/aa'. He invited me
 to dinner.

ENGLISH-YEMENI ARABIC GLOSSARY

A

- abound kaθur/yukθur
- about (approximately) prep. tagriib; Hawaali
- above adv.; prep. fawg
- Abu Dhabi 'abu ḡabi
- account (bank-) Hisaab p. -aat. at my expense ḡala Hisaabi
- address ḡinwaan p. ḡanaawiin
- administration v.n. 'idaara
- admission v.n. duxuul
- after prep. baḡd. conj. baḡdima
- afternoon adv. 1-ḡaSr. the afternoon prayer Salaat al-ḡaSr.
baḡd aḡ-ḡuhr
- age (lifetime) ḡumr p. 'aḡmaar. How old are you? kam ḡumrak?
- ago ḡabl (with foll. n.). five years ago ḡabl xams siiriin
- agree waafag/ywaafig. agree to, approve s.th. waafag ḡala. agree on
s.th. ttafag/yittafig ḡala
- Air France 'al-faransiyya
- airmail adj. jawwi. airmail letter risaala jawwiyya
- airplane Tayyaara p. -aat
- airport maTaar p. -aat
- Algeria 'al-jazaa'ir
- all (of) (with foll. def. n.) kull. all the books kull al-kutub
- allow samaH/yismaH
- alone (by oneself) waHd-. by myself waHdi
- also kamaan, baḡda
- alter baddal/ybaddil
- always yawmiya
- America 'amriika
- American 'amriiki p. -yyiin
- Amman ḡammaan
- anaemia fagr damm
- and wa/w-
- another θaani (with preced. n.) p. -yiin. f. θaaniya
- answer jaawab/yjaawib
- answer jawaab p. -aat
- anyone 'aHad, 'ayy waaHid

apartment fugga p. fuggag
 .uple tuffaaHa p. -aat. coll. tuffaaH
 application Talab p. -aat
 appointment maw9id p. mawaa9iid
 approximately prep. tagriib; Hawaali
 apricot barguuga p. -aat. coll. barguug
 Arab 9arabi p. 9arab
 Arabic (language) 9arabi
 army m.s. jayf p. juyuu/f
 arrival wuSuul
 arrive wuSul/yiwSal
 ask sa'al/yis'al
 ass Himaar p. Hamiir
 assist See help.
 aunt (paternal-) 9amma p. -aat. (maternal-) xaala p. -aat
 author kaatib p. kuttaab
 autumn 'al-xariif

B

backyard bustaan p. basaatiin
 bag famTa p. fimiit; kiis p. 'akyaas
 Baghdad baGdaad
 Bahrain 'al-baHrayn
 balance (scales) miizaan p. mawaaziin
 banana mawza p. -aat. coll. mawz
 bathe taHamman/yitHamman
 bathroom Hammaam p. -aat
 battery baTaarya p. -aat
 be kaan/ykuun. there is; there are fii. there isn't; there wasn't
maabif. there was; there were kaan fii.
 be able gidir/yigdar
 be allowed SaHH/ySuHH. It cannot be (allowed), it is not permissible.
ma ySuHHf.
 be patient Sabar/yaSbir
 be released falat/yiflit
 be ruined taxarrab/yitxarrab

- beans coll. faaSuulya. un. Habbat faaSuulya
- beautiful jamiil p. -iin. elat. 'ajmal. Haali p. -yiin.
elat. 'aHla
- because 9ala sibb
- bed karyuula p. karaayil; sariir p. saraayir
- bedspread TarHa p. TuruuH
- beef bagari (coll.)
- beer biira
- before prep. gabl. before breakfast gabl aS-SabuuH
- before conj. gablima
- beginning v.n. bidaaya. at the beginning fi l-bidaaya. from start
to finish min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya
- behind adv.; prep. ware. var. waraa', xalf
- Beirut bayruut
- belonging to prep. Hagg
- below prep.; adv. taHt
- benefit tran. nafa9/yinfa9
- benefit from stafaad/yistafiid min
- beside prep. b-jamb
- better (than) 'aHsan (min)
- beverage (cold-) baarid (coll.)
- bill (account) Hisaab. Give me the bill! 'addii-li l-Hisaab!
- bill faatuura p. fawaatiir
- bird Tayr p. Tuyuur
- birth miilaad; wilaada. birthday party Haflat miilaad. birthplace
makaan al-wilaada. birth of a prophet or a saint mawlid.
Prophet Muhammad's Birthday mawlid an-nabi
- birthday See birth.
- black 'aswad p. suud. f. sawdaa'
- blacksmith Haddaad p. -iin
- blanket baTaaniya p. -aat
- bless baarak/ybaarik. bless s.o. baarak fi. God bless you! baarak
aLLa fiik!
- blind (-s.o. in one eye) 9awar/yi9wir
- blood damm (coll.) the blood bank bank ad-damm
- blouse bluuza p. -aat

blue 'azrag p. zurg. f. zargaa'
 boiled maGli p. -yyiin
 book kitaab p. kutub
 borrow tasallaf/yitsallaf
 bottle gaaruura p. gawaariir
 box Sanduug p. Sanaadiig. mail box Sanduug bariid
 boy walad p. 'awlaad
 bread xubz (coll.). loaf of bread Habbat xubz
 breakfast n. SabuuH. v. STabaH/yiSTabiH
 bring jaab/yjiib
 Bring! haat! (m.s.)
 broadcasting v.n. 'iðaa9a. broadcasting station 'al-'iðaa9a,
maHaTTat al-'iðaa9a
 broom maknis p. makaanis
 brother 'ax/'axu- p. 'ixwa. (title) 'al-'ax
 brown bunni p. -yyiin. f. bunniyya
 building binaaya p. -aat; daar p. duur
 bundle kiis p. 'akyaas
 bus baaS p. -aat
 busy ma/Guul p. -iin
 but conj. walaakin, bass
 butcher jazzaar p. -iin
 butter zubda (coll.)
 buy /ta:ra/yi/tari
 by bus b-l-baaS
 by car b-s-sayyaara
 by plane b-T-Tayyaara
 by sea b-l-baHr

C

cactus (-fruit) balas (coll.). a cactus fruit Habbat balas
 Cairo 'al-gaahira
 calf (-of a cow) 9ijl p. 9ujuul
 can (-of motor oil) gumgumi p. gamaagim. (tomato-, cheese-, etc.)
 gaS9a p. -aat
 Canada kanada

Canadian kanadi p. -yyiin
 cantaloupe baTTiixa p. -aat. coll. baTTiix
 cap (worn by children in winter) garguuf p. garaagiif
 car sayyaara p. -aat
 card biTaaga p. -aat. boarding pass biTaagat xuruuj
 cards (playing-) baTTa p. -aat. We played cards. li9ibna baTTa.
 carpenter najjaar p. -iin
 carrots jizar (coll.) un. jizara
 carry faal/yfiil, fall/yfill
 cat dimm p. dimam
 ceiling sagf p. suguuf
 celebrate Htafal/yiHtafil b-
 celebrate (-a feast with s.o.) 9ayyad/y9ayyid 9ala
 certificate fahaada p. -aat
 certified musajjal p. -iin
 chair kursi p. karaasi
 change baddal/ybaddil
 cheap raxiis p. -iin. elat. 'arxaS
 check tafaagad/yitfaagad
 cheese jubn (coll.) un. jubna
 chew gat xazzan/yxazzin
 chicken dajaa (coll.) un. dajaa
 child Tifl p. 'aTfaal; jaahil p. jahhaal
 children 9iyaal (no s.); 'awlaad
 Christmas 9iid al-miilaad
 church kaniisa p. kanaa'is
 cigarette fiigaara p. fiigaayir
 cinema siinama p. -aat
 circle daa'ira p. dawaa'ir
 citizenship jinsiyya p. -aat, taba9iyya p. -aat
 city madiina p. mudun
 class(room) Saff p. Sufuuf
 clean na99af/yna99if
 clean na9iif p. ni9aaf, -iin. elat. 'an9af
 clerk kaatib p. kuttaab
 close adj. gariib p. -iin. elat. 'agrab. near, close to. prep. gariib
min

close Gallag/yGallig
 closed adj. mGallig p. -iin
 clothes 0iyaab, malaabis
 coffee gahwa. Yemeni coffee bunn. Western coffe kaafi
 cold adj. baarid p. -iin. elat. 'abrad
 cold (-weather) bard. It's very cold today. 'al-yawm bard gawi.
 cold v.n. zukaam, nuzuul. having a cold mazkuum, manzuul
 college kulliyya p. -aat. the women's teacher training college daar
 al-mu9allimaat
 color lawn p. 'alwaan
 come jaa'/yiji. come for s.th. jaa' l-
 Come! ta9aal! (m.s.)
 comfortable mirtaaH p. -iin
 commerce tijaara. college of commerce kulliyyat at-tijaara
 common See general.
 complete 'akmal/yikmil, tamm/ytimm
 conclusion See end.
 condition Haal p. 'aHwaal
 consist of takawwan/yitkawwan min
 consulate gunSuliyya p. -aat
 contact ttaSal/yittaSil b-
 contract (lease) 9agd p. 9uguud
 cook Tabax/yuTbux
 copybook daftar p. dafaatir
 corner rukn p. 'arkaan
 cost kallaf/ykallif
 count 9add/y9idd
 country bilaad p. buldaan, balad p. bilaad
 cousin (son of one's maternal uncle) 'ibn xaal. (son of one's paternal
 uncle) 'ibn 9amm. f. bint-
 cousin (daughter of one's maternal uncle) bint xaal. p. banaat xaal.
 (daughter of one's paternal uncle) bint 9amm. p. banaat 9amm
 crazy majnuun p. majaanin
 cucumber xiyaar (coll.). a cucumber xiyaara p. -aat
 cup (coffee-, tea-) finjaan p. fanaajin. cup of coffee finjaan gahwa
 cupboard kabat p. -aat

cure *fafa/yiffi*
 cushion matka p. mataaki
 customs jumruk p. jamaarik

D

Damascus *dima/fg*
 date taariix p. tawaariix
 dates tamr (coll.). a date tamra p. -aat
 daughter bint p. banaat
 day yawm p. 'ayyaam
 define (set a schedule) Haddad/yHaddid
 demons jinn (coll.). s. jinni. f. jinniyya
 department daa'ira p. dawaa'ir
 departure v.n. 'iGlaa9
 desk maasa p. -aæt
 dessert Halaawa
 dial (-a number) ðarab/yuðrub ragam
 different from neg. part. Gayr (with foll. n.)
 difficult Sa9b p. -iin. elat. 'aS9ab
 dinar diinaar p. danaaniir
 dine ta9affa/yit9affa
 dinner (supper) 9a/aa'
 director mudiir p. -iin, mudaraa'
 dirty wasx p. -iin. elat. 'awsax
 dish SaHn p. SuHuun
 distance masaafa p. -aat
 distress v.n. ðiig. time of distress, difficult times wagt að-ðiig
 do 9imil/yi9mal
 doctor (medical-) Tabiib p. 'aTibbaa', Hakiim p. Hukamaa'
 doctor daktoor p. dakaatira. eye doctor daktoor 9uyyuun
 dog kalb p. kilaab
 Doha 'ad-dawHa
 dollar duulaar p. -aat
 donkey Himaar p. Hamiir
 door baab p. 'abwaab
 dozen darzan p. daraazin

dress (women's-) fustaan p. fasaatiin
 drink firib/yi/rab
 drive (-a car) saag/ysuug
 driver (cab-) sawwaag p. -iin
 Dubai dubayy
 dusty miGbir p. -iin
 duty (customs) jumruk p. jamaarik
 dry naafif p. -iin. elat. 'an/af

E

each (with foll. indef. n.) kull
 east farg. northeast famaal farg. southeast januub farg
 easy sahl p. -iin. elat. 'ashal
 eat 'akal/ya'kul
 education tarbiya. ministry of- wazaarat at-tarbiya
 egg bayḡa p. -aat. coll. bayḡ
 eggplant baaḡinjaar (coll.). an eggplant baaḡinjaana p. -aat
 Egypt miSr
 Egyptian miSri p. -yyiin
 eight ḡamaaniya
 eight thousand ḡamaaniya 'alf
 eight hundred ḡamaanmiya
 eighteen ḡamaanTa9f/-ar
 eighth ḡaamin
 eighty ḡamaaniin
 electricity kahrabaa'
 elementary 'ibtidaa'i p. -yyiin
 eleven Hda9f/-ar
 embassy safaara p. -aat
 employee muwaḡḡaf p. -iin
 encounter laaga/ylaagi
 end v.n. nihaaya. from start to finish min al-bidaaya 'ila
n-nihaaya. at the end fi n-nihaaya
 engineer muhandis p. -iin
 engineering handasa. college of- kulliyat al-handasa
 England 'ingiltara

English (lang.) 'ingiliizi
 English adj.; n. 'ingiliizi p. 'ingiliiz
 enlighten nawwar/ynawwir
 enter daxal/yudxul
 entertain (-s.o., treat s.o. as a guest) ḡayyaf/yḡayyif. entertain
 s.o. to s.th. ḡayyaf 9ala
 entrance v.n. duxuul. opp. xuruuj
 evening masaa' p. -aat, layla p. layaali. coll. layl. to bid s.o.
 good evening massa/ymassi. Good evening! massaak aLLaah b-l-xayr!
 every (with foll. indef. n.) kull
 excellent mumtaaz p. -iin
 except 'illa
 excess (surplus; increase) ziyaada
 Excuse me! 9afwan!
 expel xarraaj/yxarrij
 expensive Gaali p. -yiin. elat. 'aGla
 exit v.n. xuruuj. opp. duxuul
 eye f. 9ayn p. 9uyuun

F

fall (autumn) 'al-xariif
 family 'usra p. 'usar, 9aa'ila p. 9awaa'il
 far ba9iid p. -iin. far from prep. ba9iid min
 fare kiraa' p. -aat
 fast adv. fiisa9
 fat samiin p. simaan. elat. 'asman
 father 'ab /'abu- p. 'aabaa'
 feast (festival) 9iid p. 'a9yaad. the Sacrifice Feast 9iid al-aḡHa.
 the Ramadhan Feast 9iid al-fiTr
 fever Humma
 fifteen xamasTa9f/-ar
 fith xaamis
 fifty xamsiin
 figs balas 9arabi (coll.). a fig Habbat balas 9arabi
 fill (also fill up, fill out) malla/ymalli
 film film p. 'aflaam

find	laaga/ylaagi
fine	adv. b-xayr
finish	trans. 'akmal/yikmil, tamm/ytimm
first	'awwal. at first, the first thing <u>'awwal fay'</u>
fish	Huut (coll.)
five	xamsa. five men <u>xamsat rijaal</u>
five hundred	xamsmiya
five thousand	xamsa 'alf
floor	(-of a room) 'arḡ
floor	(story of a building) TarHa p. -aat
fly	Taar/yTiir
folks	'ahl (m.p.). my folks <u>'ahli</u>
food	'akl, Ta9aam
foot	(human-) rijl (f.) p. 'arjul
for	prep. la-. This is for you. <u>haaḡa lak.</u>
forget	nisi/yinsa
fork	(utensil) faTala p. -aat, sawka p. suwak, sawkaat
forty	'arba9iin
forward	adv. guddaam, 'amaam
found	(available, on hand) mawjuud p. -iin
four	'arba9a. four men <u>'arba9at rijaal</u>
four hundred	'arba9miya
four thousand	'arba9a 'alf
fourteen	'arba9Ta9f/-ar
fourth	raabi9
France	faransa
Friday	'al-jum9a
fried	magli p. -yyiin
friend	Sadiig p. 'aSdigaa'
from	min. from where? <u>min ayn?</u>

G

gallon	galoon p. -aat
garden	Hadiiga p. Hadaa'ig, bustaan p. basaatiin
gasoline	baṭrool
general	adj. 9aamm p. -iin. elat. <u>'a9amm</u>

Germany 'alMaanya
 get away falat/yiflit
 girl bint p. banaat
 give 'agda/y'addi. to give so. 'adda l-
 Give! haat! (m.s.)
 glass (drinking-) galaS (f.) p. -aat
 glass zujaaj (coll.)
 go raaH/yruuH, saar/ysir
 Go ahead! tafaḡḡal! (m.s.)
 God 'aLLaah. var. 'aLLa
 gold (color) ḡahabi p. -yiin. f. ḡahabiyya
 good naahi p. -yiin; Haali p. -yiin. f. naahiya. elat. 'aHsan,
'aHla
 goodbye! (leave-taking) xaaTrak! (m.s.)
 goodness v.n. xayr. in good health b-xayr
 go out xaraj/yuxruj
 government Hukuuma p. -aat
 graduate taxarraaj/yitxarraaj
 grain Habba p. -aat. coll. Habb
 gram Graam p. -aat
 grapes 9inab (coll.). a grape Habbat 9inab
 gravy marag (coll.)
 green 'axḡar p. xuḡr. f. xaḡraa'
 greet Hayya/yHayyi, sallam/ysaallim 9ala
 gray ramaadi p. -yyiin. f. ramaadiyya
 grilled ma/wi p. -yyiin
 guest ḡayf p. ḡuyuuuf

H

ha! interj. (used to draw someone's attention) ha!
 half nuSS p. 'anSaaf. var. nuSf
 hand yadd p. 'aydi
 handsome jamiil p. -iin. elat. 'ajmal
 happiness masarra p. -aat
 hat gubba9a p. -aat; Tarbuuf p. Taraabii/
 have 9ind-. I have. 9indi.

- have an interview with s.o. gaabal/ygaabil
- have lunch taGadda/yitGadda
- have to (with foll. inf.) laazim 9ala-
- he huw p. hum
- head rɛ's p. ru'uus. New Year, beginning of the year ra's as-sana
- head dress SummaaTa p. SummaT
- health SiHHa. ministry of health wazaarat aS-SiHHa. in good health
b-xayr
- hear simi9/yisma9
- heart galb p. guluub
- heat Haraara
- heater saxxaan p. -aat. hot water heater saxxaan al-mee'
- heavy 0agiiil p. -iin. elat. 'a0gal
- Hello! haluw!
- help saa9ad/ysaa9id
- hen dajaaja p. -aat. coll. dajaaj
- here adv. haana
- history taaxriix p. tawaariix
- holiday See vacation.
- home daar p. duur; bayt p. buyuut
- hopefully n/aaLLa (lit. "If God wills.)
- horse HiSaana p. 'aHSuna
- hospital musta'fa (m.) p. -yaat
- hot adj. Haami. ela'. 'aHma. hot weather Hama
- hotel fundug p. fanaadig, 'uteel p. -aat
- hour saa9a p. -aat
- house bayt p. buyuut; daar p. duur
- how kayf. How are you (m.s.)? kayf ant?
- how many kam (with foll. s. indef. n.). How long have you been here?
kam lak haana?
- how much kam (with foll. p. n. or v.). How much are tomatoes? kam
aT-TamaaTiis? How much do you want? kam tiifti? for how
much? b-kam?
- hubble-bubble madaa9a p. -aat
- Hudaida 'al-Hodayda
- humidity ruTuuba

hundred miya p. -aat
 hungry jaawi9 p. -iin
 hurried adj. mista9jil p. -iin
 husband zawj p. 'azwaaj

I

I 'ana p. 'iHna
 Ibb (city in the Y.A.R.) 'ibb
 if conj. 'iða; law
 ignorant jaahil p. -iin. elat. 'ajhal
 ill mariið p. -iin
 illumine ðaa'/yðii'
 in prep. fi. in a hurry mista9jil (adj.) p. -iin
 in front adv. 'amaam, guddaam
 in front of 'amaam, guddaam
 in- neg. part. (with foll. adj.) Gayr, maaf. insane Gayr 9aagil,
maaf 9aagil
 incorrect GalaT
 increase kaθθar/ykaθθir
 increase v.n. ziyaada
 indeed waLLa
 India 'al-hind
 Indian (an-) hindi p. hunuud. f. hindiyya p. -aat
 Indian adj. hindi
 infant Tifl p. 'aTfaal
 inquire sa'al/yis'al
 insane majnuun p. majaanin
 inside adv.; prep. daaxil
 institute ma9had p. ma9aahid
 invite 9azam/yi9zim. He invited me to dinner. 9azamni 9ala l-9a/aa'.
 invoice faatuura p. fawaatiir
 Iran 'iiraan
 Iranian 'iiraani p. -yyiin
 Iraq 'al-9iraag
 Iraqi 9iraagi p. -yyiin. f. 9iraagiyya p. -aat
 iron kawwa/ykawwi
 iron kaawiya p. -aat

Italy 'iiTaalya
 Italian 'iiTaali p. -yyiin. f. 'iiTaaliyya p. -aat

J

jacket kuut p. 'akwaat
 Jadda jadda
 Jew(ish) yahuudi p. yahuud. f. yahuudiyya p. -aat
 jinn jinn (coll.). s. jinni f. jinniyya
 Jordan 'al-'urdun
 Jordanian 'urduni p. -yyiin. f. 'urduniyya p. -aat
 joy masarra p. -aat
 Judaism 'al-yahwada

K

kabob kabaab (meat roasted on a skewer)
 key miftaaH p. mafaatiiH
 Khartoum 'al-xarTuum
 kilogram kiilo p. -waat
 kilometer kiilomitr p. -aat
 kinfolk m.p. jamaa9a p. -aat; 'agaarib (p.)
 kitchen maTbax p. maTaabix. old Yemeni kitchen dayma p. diyam
 knife sikkiin p. sakaakiin
 know 9irif/yi9rif; dara/yidri
 Kuwait 'al-kuwayt
 Kuwaiti kuwayti p. -yyiin

L

Laborer See workman.
 lamb (meat) Tali (coll.)
 lamb (animal) Tali p. 'aTlu'
 landlord mu'ajjir p. -iin
 language luGa p. -aat
 last adj. maaḥi p. -yiin. last month a/-fah al-maaḥi
 later on ba9da
 laundromat Gassaala p. -aat
 learn ta9allam/yit9allam
 lease See contract.

- leave v.n. 'ijaaza. summer leave (vacation) 'ijaazat aS-Sayf
- leave tran.; intran. tarak/yutruk
- Lebanon lubnaan
- left adj.; adv. yasaar. opp. yamiin
- left fimaal, yasaar
- length Tuul. all night long Tuul al-layl
- lesson dars p. duruus
- let (with foll. inf.) xalla/yxalli
- letter (mail item) maktuub p. makaatiib, risaala p. rasaa'il
- lettuce salaTa (coll.). head of lettuce ra's salaTa
- Libya liibya
- lies v.n. kiðb. a lie kiðba
- lift See carry.
- light (electric, car-) siraaaj p. -aat
- light (neon-) miil p. -aat
- light (not heavy) xafiif p. -iin. elat. 'axaff
- light bulb gandiil p. ganaadiil
- like prep. miðl. like my father miðl 'abi
- line (telephone-, bus-) xaTT p. xuTuut
- little (with foll. adj.) fwayya. a little busy ma/Guul fwayya. (with foll. n.) fwayyat. a little sugar fwayyat sukkar
- live (in a place) sakan/yuskun
- living room diiwaan p. dawaawiin
- London landan
- long Tawiil p. Tiwaal, -iin
- look for dawwar/ydawwir 9ala
- lot kaθiir (invar.). There are a lot of people. bih naas kaθiir.
- Luftnansa 'al-'aLmaaniyya
- lunch Gadaa' p. -aat
- lying v.n. kiðb. a lie kiðba.

M

- mail coll. bariid
- make 9imil/yi9mal
- make (with foll. inf.) xalla/yxalli
- man rajjaal p. rijaal

manager	mudiriir p. -iin
Manakha	manaaxa (city in the Y.A.R.)
many	adj. kaθiir p. -iia. elat. 'akθar
market	suug p. 'aswaag
married	mutazawwaj p. -iin
marry	tazawwaj/yitzawwaj
mason	(construction worker) 9ammaar p. -iin
May Day	9iid al-9ummaal
maybe	yumkin
meat	laHm (coll.). un. laHma
mechanic(al)	adj. mikaaniiki p. -yyiin
medicine	dawaa' p. 'adwiya; 9ilaa9
meet s.o.	gaabal/ygaabii
mile	miil p. 'amyaal
military	jayf (m.s.) p. juyuu9
milk	Haliib (coll.)
minister	(cabinet-) waziir p. wuzaraa'
ministry	wazaara p. -aat. ministry of agriculture <u>wazaarat az-ziraa9a.</u> ministry of communications <u>wazaarat al-muwaaSalaat.</u> ministry of education <u>wazaarat at-tarbiya.</u> ministry of foreign affairs <u>wazaarat al-xaarijiyya.</u> ministry of the interior <u>wazaarat</u> <u>ad-daaxiliyya.</u> ministry of commerce <u>wazaarat at-tijaara.</u> mini- stry of justice <u>wazaarat al-9adl.</u> ministry of public works <u>wazaarat al-'a9Gaal</u>
mistaken	Gaalit p. -iin
Mocha	'al-maxa (city in the Y.A.R.)
Monday	'al-'iθnayn
money	fuluus, zalaT (f.s.)
month	fahr p. 'a/hir
morning	SabaaH. Good morning! <u>SabaaH al-xayr!</u> in the morning <u>fi S-SabaaH, 'aS-SubH</u>
Morocco	'al-maGrib
mosque	masjid p. masaajid, jaami9 p. jawaami9. The Grand Mosque <u>'al-jaami9 al-kabiir</u>
mother	'umm p. 'ummahaat
Mother's Day	9iid al-'umm

motor oil saliiT (coll.)
 movie film p. 'aflaam
 must laazim 9ala-. You must come. laazim 9alayk tiji.

N

name 'ism p. 'asmaa'
 namely (i.e.) ya9ni
 nationality jinsiyya p. -aat, taabi9iyya p. -aat
 nearby gariib (adj.) p. -iin
 necessary 9aruuri p. -yyiin
 neighbor jaar p. jiiraan
 neighborhood (quarter) Haara p. -aat
 neither ... nor maaf ... w-maaf
 new jadiid p. jiddad. elat. 'ajdad
 newspaper jariida p. jaraa'id
 next to prep. b-jamb
 night layla p. layaali. nighttime layl
 nine tis9a. nine men tis9at rijaal
 nine hundred tisa9miya
 nine thousand tis9a 'alf
 nineteen tisa9Ta9f/-ar
 ninety tis9iin
 ninth taasi9
 no maafi. opp. 'ii, na9am
 no one See nobody.
 nobody maHHad. Nobody came. maHHad jaa'.
 noon 9uhr. in the afternoon ba9d a9-9uhr
 north famaal. northeast famaal farg. northwest famaal Garb
 not (with foll. v.) ma ... f. (with foll. n. or adj.) maaf, Gayr.
 I did not go. ma ruHt f. not good maaf naahi, Gayr naahi
 notebook daftar p. dafaatir
 now 9alHiin
 number ragam p. 'argam
 nurse (m.) mumarri9 p. -iin

0

objection maani9 p. mawaani9
 obtain HaSal/yuHSul 9ala, HaSSal/yHaSSil
 of (pertaining to) Hagg
 of course Tab9an
 office maktab p. makaatib. the post office maktab al-bariid
 old (not new) gadiim p. gidaam. elat. 'agdam
 okra baamya (coll.). un. Habbat baamya
 on 9ala/9alay-
 once marra p. -aat. twice marratayn
 one-third 0ili0 p. 'a0laa0. var. 0il6
 on foot b-r-rijl
 onions (green-) baSal (coll.). un. ra's baSal. (yellow-) buSSaala (coll.).
 un. buSSaali
 only bass. Only one came. bass waaHid jaa'. He only chewed gat. bass
xazzan.
 open fataH/yiftaH
 or conj. 'aw
 orange adj. burtagaali p. -yyiin. f. burtagaaliyya
 oranges burtagaal (coll.). un. burtagaala
 orchard bustaan p. basaatiin
 ordinary 9aadi p. -yyiin
 other than neg. part. (with foll. n.) Gayr. other than these Gayr
haa0awlaa'
 ought to laazim 9ala-. See must.
 out of order mu9aTTal p. -iin
 outside prep.; adv. xaarij
 oven furn p. 'afraan. bread baking- tannuur p. tanaaniir
 over prep.; adv. fawg. over there hownaak
 overcoat dajla p. -aat
 owner (of) SaaHib p. 'aSHAab

P

package gafaS p. gifaaS. package of cigarettes gafaS figaayir
 packet kiis p. 'akyaas
 Pakistan 'al-baakistaan

- parcel (-post) Tard p. Turuud
 Paris baariis
 park muntazah p. -aat
 part gism p. 'agsaam
 party Hafla p. -aat. birthday party Haflat 9iid miilaad
 passport jawaaz p. -aat. the passports department 'al-jawaazaat
 pay dafa9/yidfa9
 peace salaam. Peace be upon you! 'as-salaamu 9alaykum!
 pen galam p. 'aglaam
 pencil galam p. 'aglaam
 people naas (m.p.). (group of-)jamaa9a p. -aat
 peppers (hot-) bisbaas (coll.). un. bisbaasi. (bell-) biibar (coll.).
 un. biibari
 perhaps mumkin
 perhaps yumkin
 period (-of time) mudda p. mudad
 permit See allow.
 Persia 'iiraan
 person faxS p. 'afxaaS
 petroleum batrool (coll.)
 pigeon Hamaami. coll. Hamaam
 pilgrim Hajj p. Hujjaaaj
 pink wardi p. -yyiin
 pipe fitter sabbaak p. -iin, samkari p. samaakira
 place makaan p. 'amaakin
 plate SaHn p. SuHuun
 play li9ib/yi19ab
 please 'i9jab/yi9jib
 policeman furTi p. furTa (m.)
 porter Hammaal p. -iin
 potatoes buTaaT (coll.). un. buTaaTa
 poor fagiir p. -iin, fugaraa'. elat. 'afgar
 powerful gawi p. -yyiin. elat. 'agwa
 praise v.n. Hamd. Praise be to God! 'al-Hamdu lillaah!
 pray Salla/'ySalli
 prayer Salaa (f.) p. Salawaat. the morning prayer Salaat aS-SubH

present gaddam/ygaddim
 price ʔaman p. 'aʔmaan; si9r p. 'as9aar
 primary 'ibtidaa'i p. -yyiin
 prince 'amiir p. 'umaraa'
 problem mi/kila p. mafaakil
 prophet nabi p. 'anbiyaa'
 protect sallam/ysallim
 proverb maʔal p. 'amʔaal
 put HaTT/yHuTT

Q

qat gaat (coll.). un. 9irg gaat, 9uudi gaat
 Qatar gaTar
 quarter (-of a city) Haara p. -aat, gaa9 p. gii9aan
 quarter (one-fourth) rub9 p. 'arbaa9
 question su'aal p. 'as'ila

R

Rabat 'ar-rabaaT
 rain maTar p. 'amTar
 raisin zabiiba p. -aat. coll. zabiib
 Ramadhan ramaʔaan
 Rawda 'ar-rawʔa
 read gara'/yigra'
 reasonable ma9guul p. -iin
 receipt waSl p. wuSuul
 reception hall mafraj p. mafaarij
 record See register.
 red 'aHmar p. Humr. f. Hamraa'
 refrigerator ʔallaaja p. -aat
 register sajjal/ysajjil
 registered musajjal p. -iin
 regular 9aadi p. -yyiin
 relative gariib p. 'agaarib
 relatives jamaa9a (m.p.)
 remain bigi/yibga

remainder baagi. The remainder is fifty. 'al-baagi xamsiin.
 rent sta'jar/yista'jir
 rent v.n. 'iijaar. for rent la-l-'iijaar
 rent (-money) kiraa'
 repeat 9aad/y9iid
 republican adj. jumhuuri p. -yyiin
 request Talab p. -aat
 reservoir taaniki p. tawaaniki. the water reservoir taaniki l-mee'
 response jawaab p. -aat
 restaurant maT9am p. maTaa9im
 restore (-good health to s.o.) 9aafa/y9aafi
 return riji9/yirja9. to back up, go in reverse riji9 ware
 revolution 0awra p. -aat
 rice rizz (coll.). grain of rice Habbat rizz
 rich Gan. p. -yyiin, 'aGniyaa'. elat. 'aGna
 right adj.; adv. yamiin. opp. yasaar
 right! tamaam!
 ring tran., intran. dagg/ydugg
 riyaal ryaal p. -aat. var. riyaal
 Riyadh 'ar-riyaa0
 road Tariig p. Turug
 roasted ma/wi p. -yyiin
 room Gurfa p. Guraf. syn. makaan p. -aat
 rooster diik p. 'adyaak
 roundabout daa'ira p. dawaa'ir
 Russia ruusiya
 Russian ruusi p. ruus. f. ruusiyya

S

safety v.n. 'amaan
 safety v.n. salaama
 salad salaTa
 salary ma9aa/ p. -aat
 same nafs. the same thing nafs af-/ay'
 Sanaa San9a
 sandals (pair of-) Sandal p. Sanaadil

Saturday 'as-sab̄t. last Saturday 'as-sab̄t al-ma'ad̄i
 Saudi Arabia 'as-su9uudiyya
 Saudia (Airline) 'as-su9uudiyya
 say gaal/yguul. tell, inform s.o. gaal l-
 saying gawl p. 'agwaal
 scholarship munHa p. munaH
 school madrasa p. madaaris
 sea baHr p. biHaar
 season faSl p. fuSuul
 second 0aani. f. 0aaniya
 secondary 0aanawi p. -yyiin. f. 0aanawiyya
 secret sirr p. 'asraar
 secretary (m.) sikirteer p. -iin
 section gism p. 'agsaam
 section (-of a city) gaa9 p. gi9aan, Haara p. -aat
 security v.n. 'amaan. There is no security. maabif 'amaan.
 see 'absar/yibsir, faaf/yfuuf
 seller bayyaa9 p. -iin
 send 'arsal/yirsil
 sender mursil p. -iin
 send out xarraaj/yxarrij
 September sabtambir
 seven sab9a. seven men sab9at rijaal
 seven hundred saba9miya
 seven thousand sab9a 'alf
 seventeen saba9Ta9f/-ar
 seventh saabi9
 seventy sab9iin
 Sharja 'af-faariga
 she hiy p. hin
 Sheba saba' (city in the Y.A.R.)
 sheet (bed-) millaaya p. -aat
 shirt famiiz p. summaz, sumzaan
 shoes (pair of-) gundara p. ganaadir
 shop dikkaan p. dakaakiin, Haanuut p. Hawaaniid̄
 short gaS'ir p. giSaar. elat. 'agSar

shortening dihn (coll.)
 show warra/ywarri
 shut Gallag/yGallig
 shut adj. uGallig p. -iin
 shutdown mu9aTTal p. -iin
 sick mariiḡ p. -iin
 side curl zunnaar p. zanaaniir
 similar to prep. miḡl
 sister 'uxt p. 'axawaat
 six sitta. six men sittat rijaal
 six hundred sitmiya
 six thousand sitta 'alf
 sixteen siTTa9/-ar
 sixth saadis
 sixty sittiin
 skin (-of fruit, seeds, etc.) gi/r
 skinny naHiif p. -iin. elat. 'anHaf
 sleep naam/ynuum, ragad/yurgud
 sleep v.n. nawm
 slippers (pair of-) Hiḡa p. 'aHḡi, fib/fib p. fabaafib
 slowly adv. dala dala, fwayya fwayya. opp. fiisaḡ
 small SaGiir p. SiGaar, -iin. elat. 'aSGar
 soap Saabuun (coll.) (bar of-) Saabuuna
 socks (pair of-) faraab p. -aat
 sofa mag9ad p. magaa9id
 soldier 9askari p. 9askar
 some See little.
 someone 'aHad, waaHid
 sometimes zaaratHiin
 son walad p. 'awlaad; 'ibn p. 'abnaa'
 Sorry! 9afwan!
 soup firba
 south (of) januub. southwest (of) januub Garb. southeast (of) januub farg
 southern part (of) januub
 speak takallam/yitkallam
 spitting container matfal p. mataafil

spoon	mal9aga	p.	malaa9ig
spring	(season)	'ar-rabi	i9
square	maydaan	p.	maydaan at-taHriir
stamp	(postage-)	Taabi	9 p. Tawaabi
start	v.n. bidaaya.	from start to finish	<u>min al-bidaaya 'ila n-nihaaya</u>
state	(region)	wilaaya	p. -aat
station	maHaTTa	p.	-aat
stay	bigi/yibga		
step	(pace, stride)	xaTwa	p. -aat
step-mother	xaala	p.	-aat
stipend	ma9aa/	p.	-aat
stockings	(pair of-)	faraab nisaa'i	p. -aat nisaa'iyya
stone	raajam/yraajim		
store	(shop)	dikkaan p. dakaakin,	Haanuut p. Hawaanit
storehouse	mir9aan	p.	maxaaziin
stove	furn	'afraan	
straight	adv.	saani	
street	faari	9 p. fawaari	9
strong	gawi	p. -yyiin. f. <u>gawiyya.</u>	elat. 'agwa
student	Taalib	p.	Tullaab
study	daras/yudrus		
submit	gaddam/ygaddim.	to submit an application	<u>gaddam Talab</u>
Sudan	'as-suudaan		
Sudanese	suudaani	p.	-yyiin
sugar	sukkar	(coll.)	
suitcase	See	<u>bag.</u>	
summer	'aS-Sayf		
Sunday	'al-'aHad		
sunset	maGrib.	sunset prayer	<u>Salaat al-maGrib</u>
sweep	(with a broom)	kannas/ykannis	
sweets	Halawiyyaat		
swim	sabaH/yisbaH		
synagogue	kaniis	(no known plural)	
Syria	suuriyya		
Syrian	suuri	p. -yyiin. f. <u>suuriyya</u>	p. -aat

T

T-shirt	faaniila p. -aat
table	maasa p. -aat
Taiz	ta9izz
take	'axaδ/ya'xuδ
talk	See <u>speak</u> .
tall	'lawiil p. Tiwaal. elat. <u>'aTwal</u>
tank	See <u>reservoir</u> .
tax	ḡariiba p. ḡaraayib
taxi(cab)	taksi p. tak'aasi
tea	ʃaahi
teach	darras/ydarris
teacher	mu9allim p. -iin, mudarris p. -iin
Tehran	Tahraan
telegram	bargiyya p. -aat
telephone	n. talafoon p. -aat. v. talfan/ytalfin, xaābar/yxaabir
temperature	Harāara
temple	kaniis (no known plural)
ten	9aʃara. ten men <u>9aʃarat rijaal</u>
ten thousand	9aʃara 'alf
tenant	musta'jir p. -iin
tenth	9aaʃir
test	(-s.th.) jarrab/yjarrib
Thanks!	ʃukran!
that	haḡaak, ḡaak. f. haḡiik. p. (m. or f.) haaḡawlaak
that	conj. 'inna. dem. pron. haḡaak, ḡaak p. haaḡawlaak. f. haḡiik, ḡiik p. haaḡawiaak
that	conj. 'inna, 'inn-/'in-
the	def. art. 'al/l-
there	adv. hownaak. there is; there are <u>fii</u> . there isn't; there aren't <u>maabiʃ</u>
therefore	'iḡan
these	(m. or f.) haaḡawla
they	hum. f. hin
thin	naHiif p. -iin. elat. <u>'anHaf</u>
thing	ʃay'. var. <u>ʃee'</u> . p. <u>'aʃyaa'</u> var. <u>'aʃyee</u>

third θaaliθ
 thirsty 9aaTi/ p. -iin
 thirteen θalaaθTa9f/-ar
 thirty θalaaθiin
 this m. haaða. f. haaði p. (m. or f.) haaðaawla
 three θalaaθa. three men θalaaθat rijaal
 three hundred θalaaθmiya
 three thousand θalaaθa 'alf
 those (m. or f.) haaðaawlaak. m.s. haðaak; f.s. haðiik
 thousand 'alf p. 'aalaaf. two thousand 'alfayn
 Thursday 'al-xamiis
 ticket (card) biTaaga p. -aat. (admission-, airolane-, etc.)
 taðkara p. taðaakir
 tied up (bound, shackled) mrabbaT p. -iin
 time marra p. -aat. five times xamsat marraat. twice marratayn
 time (period of-) wagt p. 'awgaat
 tire (car-) 9ajala p. 9ijiil
 tired taa9ib p. -iin
 to prep. 'ila. var. la-
 to (e.g., quarter to five) 'illa. 4:45 xamsa 'illa rub9
 today 'al-yawm
 tomato TumTusa p. -aat. TamaaTiis (coll.)
 tomorrow Gudwa. tomorrow morning Gudwa S-SubH. tomorrow night
 Gudwa l-9afi
 tonight 'al-yawm al-masaa', haaða l-masaa'
 too kamaan, ba9da
 toward prep. la-, 'ila
 towel fuuTa p. fuwaT, man/afa p. manaa'if
 trade tijaara
 travel saafar/ysaafir
 traveller musaafir p. -iin
 tree /ijara p. -aat. /ijar (coll.)
 trousers (pair of-) banTaloon p. -aat
 try (make an effort) Haawal/yHaawil
 try (try s.th., test s.th.) jarrab/yjarrib
 Tuesday 'aθ-θaluuθ

Tunisia tuunis. Tunisian tuunisi p. -yyiin
 turn (-left, right) laff/yliff
 turban 9imaama p. 9amaa'im
 twelve 'iθna9f/-ar
 twenty 9ifriin. for \$20.00 b-9ifriin duulaar
 two 'iθnayn. f. θintayn
 typist Tabbaa9 p. -iin

U

U.A.E. 'al-'imaaraat
 un- neg. part. (with foll. adj.) Gayr, maaf. unable Gayr gaadir,
maaf gaadir
 uncle (maternal-) xaal p. 'axwaal. (paternal-) 9amm p. 'a9maam
 under prep.; adv. taHt
 undershirt faaniila p. -aat
 undress xalas/yaxlis
 university jaami9a p. -aat
 upstairs adv. fawg
 use sta9mal/yista9mil
 usher mubaa'fir p. -iin

V

vacation 9uTla p. 9uTal; 'ijaaza p. -aat
 very adv. kaθiir; gawi
 via 9an Tariig. via Sanaa 9an Tariig San9a
 visa ta'fiira p. -aat
 visit zaar/yzuur

W

wage kiraa' p. -aat
 waiter mubaa'fir p. -iin
 walk mafa/yimfi, saar/ysiir
 wardrobe duulaab p. dawaaliib, kabat p. -aat
 wash Gasal/yiGsil. (-with soap)Sabban/ySabbin
 washing machine Gassaala p. -aat
 watch 'absar/yibsir, faaf/yfuuf
 water mee'. var. maa'

- watermelon HabHaba p. -aat. HabHab (coll.)
- way Tariig p. Turug
- this way (in this manner) haakaḍa
- we 'iHna. s. 'ana
- weak ḥa9iif p. -iin, ḥu9afaa'. elat. 'aḥ9af
- wear libis/yilbis
- weather jaww. The weather is nice. 'al-jaww Haali.
- Wednesday 'ar-rabuu9
- week 'usbuu9 ḥ. 'asaabii9
- weigh wazan/yuuzin
- well-being v.n. 9aafiya
- west Garb. northwest famaal Garb. southwest januub Garb
- Western 'ifranji p. -yyiin
- what? maa?, 'ayf? What's your name? maa 'ismak? What's the matter with you? maa lak?
- when? mata? f-ayy Hiin?
- when conj. lamman, 9indima, Hiin
- where? 'ayn?
- which? 'avy?
- white 'abyaḥ f. bayḥaa' p. biiḥ
- who? man?
- who relat. pron. man, 'allaḥi. var. 'ali, 'alli
- whole (the - of) kull (with foll. def. n.). the whole city kull al-madiina
- why? lilma?, layf?
- wife zawja p. -aat
- window Taaga p. Tiigaan
- winter 'af-fitaa'
- wise 9aagil p. -iin
- with prep. ma9
- withdraw (e.g., money) jarr/yjurr
- woman mara p. nisaa'
- work ftaGal/yiftaGil
- work fuGl p. 'afGaal, 9amal p. 'a9maal. ministry of public works wazaarat al-'afGaal
- workman faagi p. fugaa, 9aamil p. 9ummaal

workshop warfa p. -aat
 write katab/yuktub
 writer kaatib p. kuttaab
 wrong GalaT. wrong number ragam GalaT

Y

Yamaniya (-Airline) 'al-yamaniyya
 year sana p. -iin, -waat; 9aam p. 'a9waam. last year 'as-sana
al-maaḍiya, 'al-9aam al-maaḍi
 yellow 'aSfar f. Safraa' p. Sufr
 Yemen 'al-yaman
 yes na9am, 'ii
 yesterday 'ams. yesterday morning 'ams aS-SubH. last night 'ams
al-9afi
 yogurt yurt (coll.)
 you 'ant (m.s.). 'anti (f.s.). 'antu (m.p.) 'antayn (f.p.)
 young SaGiir p. SiGaar, iin. elat. 'aSGar

Z

zucchini dubbe (coll.). un. dubbaayi

INDEX OF GRAMMATICAL TERMS

The numbers refer to units and sections

Adjectives

- color 17 V 2
- elative 22 V 5, 23 V 1
- gender 3 V 3
- nisba 6 V 2

Article Prefix 3 V 4

Collectives (See Nouns)

Conditionals

- likely 40 V 1
- unlikely 40 V 1
- with imperative 40 V 1
- with imperfect tense 40 V 1
- with perfect tense 40 V 1

Conjunctions

- Hiin 23 V 2
- 'inna 33 V 3
- wa 1 V 3

Dual 13 V 3, 37 V 2

Equational Sentences 1 V 2, 4 V 1

fii 24 V 1

Imperatives 9 VI 1, 15 V 1, 17 V 5, 25 V 1, 28 V 1, 34 IV 2

Imperfect Tense (See Verbs)

Intensifiers

-- kaθiir 10 VI 3

laazim 9ala 22 V 2

Names

- of countries 6 V 1, 10 VI 1
- proper 6 V 1, 10 VI 1

Negative Commands 20 V 4

Negative Particles

- particle Gayr 27 V 1
- particle ma 16 V 3, 36 V 2
- particle maaf 10 VI 2

Noun-Adjective Concord 18 V 3

Nouns

- collective 16 V 2, 17 V 1
- construct 4 V 2
- dual 13 V 3, 37 V 2

Nouns (continued)

- gender 3 V 2
- unit 16 V 2, 17 V 1

Numerals

- cardinal 13 V 4, 15 V 3, 16 V 1
- ordinal 14 V 2

Particles

- future 17 V 3
- Hagg 20 V 3
- vocative 5 V 1

Perfect Tense (See Verbs)Phonology

- consonant G 4 IV 1
- consonant H 9 V 1, 10 V 1
- consonant L 3 IV 1
- consonant r 2 IV 1
- consonant S 6 IV 1
- consonant T 5 IV 1
- consonant x 2 IV 1, 4 IV 1, 10 V 1
- consonant ḡ 4 IV 1
- consonant 9 7 V 1, 8 V 1
- consonant clusters 18 V 1
- doubled consonants 3 IV 1
- helping vowel 13 V 1, 14 V 1
- pharyngealized consonants 4 IV 1,
5 IV 1, 6 IV 1,
9 V 1
- stress 1 IV 2, 2 IV 2

Phonology (continued)

- syllable structure 1 IV 2, 2 IV, 2
- vowels a-aa 1 IV 1
- vowels e-ee 1 IV 1
- vowels i-ii 1 IV 1
- vowels o-oo 2 IV 1
- vowels u-uu 2 IV 1

Plurals

- broken 18 V 2
- sound 18 V 2

Prepositions 7 VI 1, 8 VI 3, 27 V 4,
35 V 4

- ma9 8 VI 3
- tagriib 27 V 4
- 9ind 35 V 4

Pronouns

- antecedent 40 V 3, 41 V 1
- demonstrative 5 V 2, 18 V 5
- gender 3 V 2
- object 18 V 4
- personal 1 V 1, 4 V 1, 7 VI 1
- relative 40 V 3, 41 V 1
- suffixed 1 V 1, 3 V 1, 6 V 3
7 VI 1, 20 V 2, 32 IV 2

Relative Clauses 40 V 3

Special Constructions

-- <u>'ab and 'ax</u>	27 V 2
-- <u>f-ayy Hiin</u>	27 V 3
-- <u>'i9jab</u>	14 V 3, 32 IV 3
-- <u>kaan fii</u>	30 V 2
-- <u>kam lak haana</u>	14 V 3
-- <u>kull</u>	22 V 4
-- <u>maa l-</u>	33 V 1
-- <u>maHHad</u>	18 V 6
-- <u>SaHH</u>	33 V 2
-- <u>SaHiIH</u>	35 V 3
-- <u>ya9ni</u>	35 V 2
-- <u>θaani</u>	22 V 3

<u>Subject Markers</u>	12 V 1, 13 V 1, 14 V 1
------------------------	---------------------------

<u>Telling Ages</u>	24 V 2
---------------------	--------

<u>Telling Time</u>	8 VI 2, 9 VI 2, 15 V 2
---------------------	------------------------

<u>Topical Sentences</u>	10 VI 4
--------------------------	---------

Verbs

-- affixes	12 V 1, 14 V 1, 17 V 3, 18 V 1
-- defective verbs	32 V 1, 33 V 4, 37 V 1, 39 V 1, 40 V 2
-- double imperfect	13 V 2
-- double verbs	32 V 1
-- hollow verbs	30 V 1, 37 V 1, 40 V 2
-- imperatives	(See Imperatives)

Verbs (continued)

-- imperfect tense	12 V 1, 13 V 1, 14 V 1, 18 V 1, 19 V 1, 20 V 1, 22 V 1, 23 V 3
-- inflectional forms	29 V 1
-- negative	16 V 3, 20 V 4, 22 V 2, 30 V 2
-- perfect tense	12 V 1, 20 V 2, 29 V 1, 30 V 1, 32 IV 1, 33 V 4, 34 IV 1, 35 V 1, 36 V 1, 37 V 1, 38 V 1, 39 V 1, 40 V 2, 41 V 2
-- suffixes	20 V 2, 32 IV 2
-- triple imperfect	25 V 2
-- verb <u>'adda</u>	33 V 4
-- verb <u>'axaθ</u>	35 V 1
-- verb <u>bigi</u>	33 V 4
-- verb <u>daras</u>	29 V 1
-- verb <u>darras</u>	32 V 2
-- verb <u>faad</u>	41 V 2
-- verb <u>-gdai-</u>	17 V 4
-- verb <u>Hayya</u>	32 V 1
-- verb <u>jaa'</u>	29 V 1
-- verb <u>kaan</u>	30 V 1
-- verb <u>kawwa</u>	39 V 1
-- verb <u>laff</u>	34 IV 1
-- verb <u>libis</u>	36 V 1
-- verb <u>raa9a</u>	39 V 1
-- verb <u>riji9</u>	32 V 1
-- verb <u>saafar</u>	33 V 4

Verbs (continued)

-- verb	<u>saag</u>	38 V 1
-- verb	<u>Saar</u>	30 V 1
-- verb	<u>Salla</u>	37 V 1
-- verb	<u>faal</u>	38 V 1
-- verb	<u>fafa</u>	33 V 4
-- verb	<u>fall</u>	38 V 1
-- verb	<u>firib</u>	30 V 1
-- verb	<u>ftara</u>	36 V 1
-- verb	<u>ftka</u>	41 V 2
-- verb	<u>taGadda</u>	40 V 2
-- verb	<u>tamm</u>	32 V 1
-- verb	<u>ta9a/ffa</u>	40 V 2
-- verb	<u>warra</u>	34 IV 1
-- verb	<u>wazan</u>	38 V 1
-- verb	<u>wuSal</u>	38 V 1
-- verb	<u>xalla</u>	39 V 1
-- verb	<u>yif/ti</u>	36 V 1
-- verb	<u>9aad</u>	37 V 1
-- verb	<u>9aafa</u>	32 V 1
-- verb	<u>9add</u>	39 V 1
-- verb	stems	12 V 1, 13 V 1, 14 V 1, 15 V 1, 18 V 1, 19 V 1, 20 V 1, 22 V 1, 23 V 3, 25 V 1, 30 V 1, 38 V 2, 38 V 4
-- verb	strings	13 V 2, 17 V 4, 25 V 2, 36 V 1

Vowels (See Phonology)9ind- 8 VI 1